

ANSWERS

by Keith Piper

**A Series of Follow Up Bible Studies
On Life's Key Questions**

**PROOFS OF CHRIST,
THE BIBLE & GOD**



Are you “ABLE TO TEACH OTHERS ALSO”?

“And the things that thou hast heard of me
among many witnesses,
the same commit thou to faithful men,
who shall be able to teach others also.” II Timothy 2:2

Website: www.keithpiper.org

Proofs of Christ, the Bible and God

1.	Proof of Christ and the Bible.....	1
2.	Fulfilled Prophecy as Proof of the Bible	2
3.	Science as Proof of the Bible	13
4.	Proofs of the Existence of God	18
5.	Reasons for the Bible, Heaven, Resurrection, Deity, Creation, Baptism.....	20

General Bible Studies

6.	Heaven	24
7.	Hell	27
8.	Rewards	32
9.	The Feasts of Jehovah	35
10.	Historical Background of the Old Testament	36
11.	Bible Maps	38
12.	Miscellaneous Charts and Tables	42
13.	Some Challenging Thoughts	49
14.	The Parables of Jesus	59
15.	Events in the Life of Christ and Harmony of the Gospels.....	66
16.	Angels	73

Second Coming of Jesus Christ

46.	47 Signs of Christ's Return	171
47.	The Second Coming of Jesus Christ to Earth	184
48.	7 Dispensations	188
49.	The Rapture.....	190
50.	The Judgment Seat of Christ	192
51.	Judgments of the Tribulation.....	194
52.	The Russian and Muslim Invasion of Israel	195
53.	The Millennium or Rule of Christ on Earth – What will it be like?	208
54.	Christ will Personally Appear on Earth.....	212
55.	Daniel's 70 Week Prophecy.....	214
56.	9 Charts	226

1. PROOF OF CHRIST AND THE BIBLE

Every religion in the world says that they are right and other religions are wrong. How do we know which one is right? Most people have asked this question at some time. Just because you are born into a certain religion does not prove that religion to be the right one, even though you may want it to be. The rightness of any religion is determined by the **credentials of its founder** and by the **evidence of divine inspiration of its textbook**. Try to put aside any previously held ideas as we study the unique credentials of Jesus Christ and of the Bible. Ask yourself if any other religions match these claims.

Let us summarise the credentials of Christ and the Bible as follows:

1. Jesus Christ claimed to be God, the Truth and the only Way to eternal life because:

- i) Many details of His life were **predicted** in the Old Testament, many years before his birth.
- ii) He did many supernatural **miracles** during His three year ministry, showing his power to:
 - raise the dead
 - still storms
 - correctly predict the future
 - cast out demons from people
 - heal the sick
- iii) He **rose** from the dead after three days, never to die again. Nobody else has ever done this. This shows that those people who have Jesus Christ as their Saviour will rise from the dead also. He was seen by hundreds of people daily after His resurrection (I Corinthians 15:5-8).
- iv) He **solves the sin problem** by dying on the cross as our substitute to pay the penalty for our sins. Other religions say “be good, do your best, keep the rules, and you might make it, but you can never be sure, so keep trying hard”. Christ says, “Receive me as your Saviour, and I give to you eternal life, and you shall never perish” (John 10:28), because I have taken the punishment due for your sins. You may know that you have eternal life (1 John 5:13).
- v) Jesus Christ **claimed to be God** and had the credentials to prove it.
- vi) Jesus Christ's life when scrutinised shows Him to be **sinless** as He claimed. No other religious founder claimed to be God or to be sinless. Other religions just have nice teachings.

2. The Bible is the Word of God for these reasons:

- i) Its Unity.
- ii) Scientific accuracy.
- iii) Archaeology
- iv) Fulfilled prophecies.
- v) Jesus Christ called it the Word of God (John 10:35; Mark 7:13; Luke 8:11 “seed is the..”).
- vi) It has **infinitely superior teachings** over any other book.
 - The Bible has in it nothing but truth, while all other books have truth mixed with error, like jewels mixed with mud
 - The Bible contains all truth. Every proven moral truth is found in the Bible.
 - The Bible contains more truth than all other books put together.
- vii) Its victory over attack, and its **survival** for over 2000 years.
- viii) The **character** of those who accept and those who reject the Bible.
 - The people best acquainted with God, and who live the most unselfish, moral lives, say that the Bible is God's book.
 - The people least acquainted with God, and who live more for self, say that the Bible is not God's word. Who will you believe? The stronghold of the Bible is the pure, unselfish happy home. The stronghold of unbelief is the pub, brothel, and the casino.
- ix) The **influence** of the Bible to save, purify, gladden, beautify and lift men's lives up to God. The Bible has transformed millions of the worst sinners into humble, loving, unselfish, and caring saints.
- x) The **inexhaustible depth** of the Bible. Most man-written books can be thoroughly understood and mastered in one or two readings. You can read the Bible over 100 times and still discover new, fresh, exciting and amazing truths. It comes from the mind of God.

PROOF OF THE BIBLE TO BE THE WORD OF GOD.

Let us examine proof of the Bible from the viewpoints of unity, science, archaeology and prophecy. Our faith and understanding of God's Word can be greatly increased by studying Bible proofs available to us. This helps us to defend the faith and give good reasons to those who ask us why we believe in Christ and the Bible. (I Peter 3:15).

1. UNITY

The Bible was given by God to 40 writers, over a period of 1600 years, in 66 books. It contains history, prophecy, science, law, doctrine, morality, origins and human biographies, yet never do we see even the slightest disagreement between the writers on any subject. If you ask 40 of your friends to discuss their opinions on the past, the future, morality, origins, law, philosophy, etc. you will find a very great disagreement and difference of opinion. The Bible, however, agrees 100% on every subject it discusses, giving strong proof that it comes from the mind of God.

2. FULFILLED PROPHECY as proof of the Bible.

PROPHECY FULFILLED OF NATIONS, CITIES and INDIVIDUALS.

Aim: To study Bible prophecies as proof of God authoring the Bible.

Introduction: "Show the things that are to come hereafter that we may know that ye are gods..." Isaiah 41:23.

Here **God challenges all other religions** claiming to be the truth to prove that they are from God by predicting the future. Nobody can correctly predict the future on every guess. The Bible is the only book in the world that correctly predicts the future hundreds of times, without making any mistakes. No other book does this. The Buddhist, Hindu, Muslim writings contain no cases of clearly fulfilled prophecies. This proves that they are not from God. Any man can write a book with moral teachings. Only God can write a book that always correctly foretells the future, as the Bible does.

Four tests to prove that a prophecy is from God:

i) His message had to be **according to God and His Word.**

"If they speak not according to this word, it is because there is no light in them." Isaiah 8:20.

ii) His prediction **must come true.** "If the thing follow not, nor come to pass, that is the thing which the Lord has not spoken .." Deuteronomy 18:22.

iii) Was the prophecy **far enough** before the predicted event to exclude chances of human guesswork?

iv) Is the prediction **ambiguous, vague** or capable of **several explanations?**

What is the significance of predictive prophecy?

i) It proves God's existence, as the mind behind the Bible.

ii) It proves that the Bible is God's inspired word, without error.

iii) It proves that Jesus Christ is God, whom the Old Testament predicts.

iv) It proves all other Bible doctrines to be true, giving us a strong foundation to base our life on.

The true prophet presents a message of conviction and **repentance**, calling the people to **obedience** and **righteousness**.

Consider the following examples of fulfilled Bible prophecies under the headings of Nations, Cities and Individuals.

I. NATIONS.

Consider the following 44 correct predictions concerning **Israel, Edom, Babylon, Medo-Persia, Greece, Rome and Egypt** as proof of God authoring the Bible.

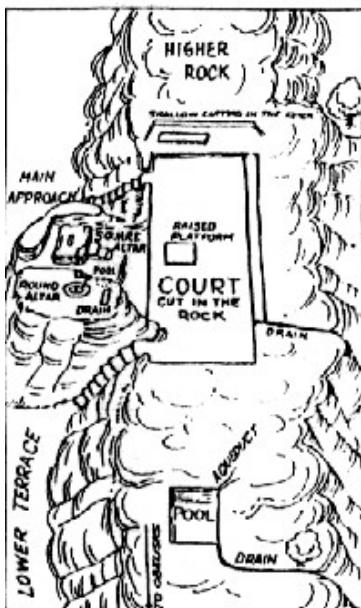
1. ISRAEL.

Date Prophecy Made	Date Prophecy Fulfilled	Prophecy
2000 BC	1948 AD	Israel would become a great nation . "I will make of thee a great nation." Genesis 12:1-3.
992 BC	975 BC	Israel would split into 10 tribes and 2 tribes . "I will rend the kingdom out of the hand of Solomon, and will give 10 tribes to thee (Jeroboam)". I Kings 11:31.
607 BC	536 BC	Israel would be captive in Babylon for 70 years . Jer. 25:11-14. "These nations shall serve the King of Babylon seventy years."
1451 BC	70 AD	Israel would be scattered among the nations of the world. "The Lord shall scatter thee from one end of the earth to the other." Deuteronomy 28:64. This was fulfilled in 70 AD when Titus the Roman General destroyed Jerusalem, killing one million Jews, and taking 100,000 Israelites as slaves.
1451 BC	100 AD	Israel would become a byword among all nations . "Thou shalt become an astonishment, a proverb, and a byword, among all nations where the Lord shall lead thee." Deuteronomy 28:37. People refer to someone who holds his money tightly as a Jew.
1451 BC 1939 AD	70 AD	Israel would be persecuted among the nations . Hitler killed six million Jews in World War II. "Thy life shall hang in doubt before thee, and thou shalt fear day and night, and shalt have none assurance of thy life." Deuteronomy 28:66.
1491 BC 607 BC	2004 AD	Israel would not be completely destroyed , but retain her identity. "I will not destroy them utterly...." Leviticus 26:44. "I will not make a full end of thee". Jeremiah 46:28.
712 BC	33 AD	Israel would reject her Messiah . "He was despised and rejected of men; we esteemed him not." Isaiah 53:3.
538 BC	33 AD	Israel would kill her Messiah . "...shall Messiah be cut off, but not for himself." Daniel 9:26.
538 BC	70 AD	Israel's city of Jerusalem and the Temple will be destroyed just after Israel rejects her Messiah. "The people of the prince that shall come shall destroy the city and the sanctuary." Daniel 9:26.
587 BC	1948 AD	Israel would return to Palestine in the latter years just before Christ's Second Coming. Ezekiel 37:11-14; 38:1-39:29. "I will gather you out of all countries, and bring you into your own land. Then will I sprinkle clean water on you " Ezekiel 36:24,25.
714 BC	1967 AD	Israel will be militarily superior to Egypt . "The land of Judah shall be a terror to the land of Egypt." Isaiah 19:17.

2. EDOM and its capital city, Petra.

Esau, Jacob's brother founded Edom in 1800 BC (Genesis 36:8). 350 years later in 1450 BC Edom refused to help Israel pass through her land (Numbers 20). Edom delighted in persecuting Israel. Isaiah, Jeremiah, Ezekiel, Joel, Amos and Obadiah condemned Edom. Petra was Edom's strongly fortified capital built into a rock cliff, accessible only by a very narrow entrance. This made them feel invincible. Mohammed captured Petra in 636 AD. It then became desolate. These events are prophesied for Edom.

Date	Prophecy
713 BC	Edom to become a desolation . "Thorns shall come up in her palaces" Isaiah 34:13
713 BC	Wild animals will inhabit Edom. "It shall be a habitation of dragons" Is.34:13-15
713 BC	Commerce will cease in Edom 'None shall pass through it for ever.' Isaiah 34:10
600 BC	Spectators will be astonished in Petra. "Edom shall be a desolation: every one that goes by it shall be astonished." Jeremiah 49:17.
600 BC	Never to be populated again. "No man shall abide there." Jeremiah 49:18.
590 BC	Israel would conquer Edom. "I will lay my vengeance upon Edom by the hand of my people Israel." Ezekiel 25:14. This seemed a crazy prediction because Israel was then captive in Babylon, yet 400 years later Judas Maccabeus invaded and killed thousands of Edomites.
587 BC	Edom to have a bloody history . "Blood shall pursue thee." Ezekiel 35:6.
590 BC	Edom to become desolate as far as the city of Teman . "I will make it desolate from Teman." Ezekiel 25:13.



The Great High Place at Petra

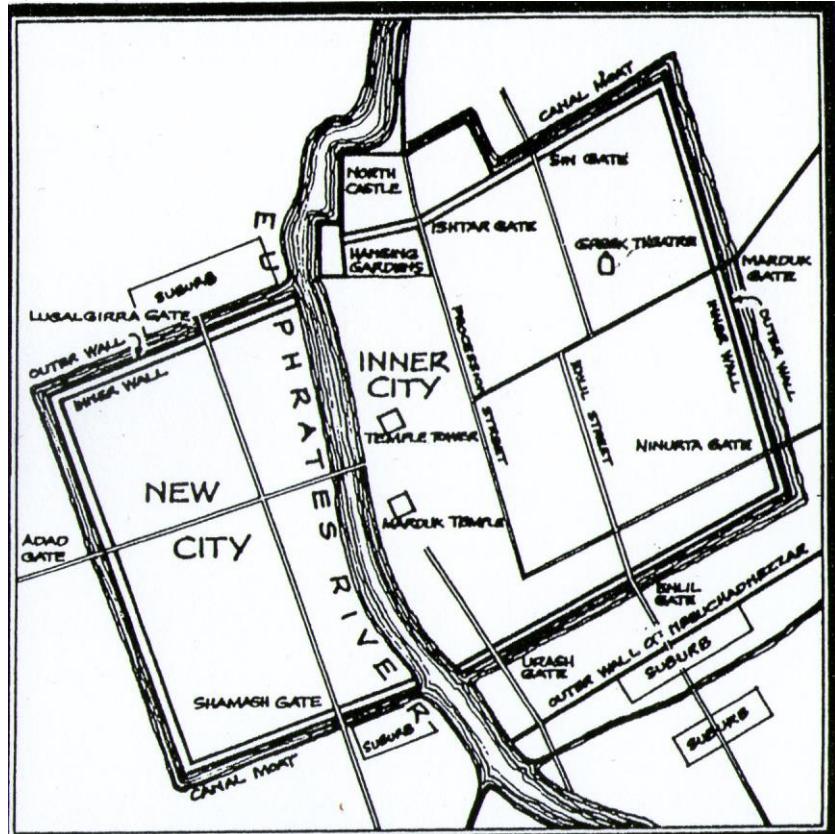
3. BABYLON

Babylon was the capital of the ancient world. It was a centre of trade, learning and culture. Babylon had four walls each 14 miles long, covering 196 square miles, surrounded by a 30 foot wide moat. The walls were 311 feet high, 87 feet wide, with 100 gates of solid brass. 250 watchtowers extended 100 feet higher than the walls. While the Babylonians were holding a drunken feast, Cyrus the Persian had diverted the Euphrates river away from its course underneath the walls of Babylon, and marched his troops along the dry riverbed. He then took the city in 536 BC.

Xerxes later plundered Babylon, as did Alexander the Great's troops. Trajan the Roman Emperor visited Babylon in 116 AD describing it as "mounds and legends of mounds." Layard writes of Babylon: "No Arab tents, no sheepfolds, and overrun by desert animals." Consider the following fulfilled prophecies concerning Babylon:

- i) These prophecies were given in 713 BC: Babylon will be like Sodom and Gomorrah. "Babylon shall be as when God overthrew Sodom and Gomorrah." Isaiah 13:19.
- ii) The **Medes and Persians** would conquer Babylon (536 BC). Isaiah 13:17; 45:1-4.
- iii) Babylon shall never be inhabited. Isaiah 13:20.
- iv) **Arab tents** will not be pitched there. Isaiah 13:20.
- v) **Sheepfolds** will not be there. Isaiah 13:20.
- vi) **Desert creatures** will infest the ruins. Isaiah 13:21.
- vii) Babylon will be covered with **swamps of water**. Isaiah 14:23.

Part of Babylon today lies under silt and under the water table.



- 4.** **MEDO-PERSIA**. Daniel 8:1-8, 20-22. These prophecies were given in 553BC. God tells Daniel of a series of battles that would occur 220 years later between Medo-Persia and Greece. **Alexander the Great** of Greece, pictured by a **He-goat** with a great horn (Alexander himself) severely crushes **Darius III** army of Medo-Persia (pictured by a **ram** with two horns). This occurred in three battles: Granicus (334BC), Issus (333BC) and Guagamela (331BC) which took place beside a river.

"**The ram** having two horns are the kings of **Media and Persia**." Daniel 8:20.

"**The rough goat** is the king of **Grecia**, and the great horn that is between his eyes is the **first king**." (Alexander). Daniel 8:21.

Notice the following aspects of this prophecy:

- i) **The Ram** (Medio-Persia) pushes west, north, south. Daniel 8:4.
This prediction defines the area of influence of Medo-Persia from 536-330BC.
- ii) One horn (**Persia**) was higher or stronger than the other (Medes). Daniel 8:3.
History proved Persia to be the stronger partner in the alliance.
- iii) The **He-goat** (Greece) came from the West. Daniel 8:5.
Greece is west of Medo-Persia.
- iv) The **He-goat** (Greece) crushed the Ram (Medo-Persia).
"He smote the ram, and brake his two horns." Daniel 8:6,7.
- v) The battle took place at a river. "He came to the ram which had two horns, which I had seen standing before the river ..." Daniel 8:6.

5. **GREECE**. Daniel 8:8,21,22.

These events were prophesied in 553BC and fulfilled in 331BC, 222 years later.

Notice these further accurate predictions:

- i) Alexander, after conquering Medo-Persia, went on to conquer all the ancient world across to India.
"The he-goat waxed **very great**." Daniel 8:22.
- ii) Alexander, at the age of 32 drank himself to **death** at the peak of his strength.
"When he was strong, the great horn was **broken**." Daniel 8:22.
- iii) After Alexander's death, the Greek empire was divided into four smaller powers, each ruled by one of his Generals.
"Now that being broken, whereas four stood up for it, **four kingdoms** shall stand up out of the nation, but not in his power." Daniel 8:22.
The four empires into which Alexander's empire was divided were Greece, Asia Minor, Syria and Egypt.
- iv) Alexander's kingdom was not given to his children but to his generals.
"A mighty king shall stand up.....his kingdom shall be broken, and shall be divided to the four winds of heaven, and not to his posterity..." Daniel 11:3,4.

6. **ROME** . Daniel 2:40,41.

"The fourth kingdom shall be strong as iron it shall break in pieces and bruise the kingdom shall be divided." Daniel 2:40,41.

Notice the following prophecies about Rome:

- i) Rome, the fourth kingdom was as strong as iron. Rome ruled from England to Babylon, bringing peace, roads and strong government like an iron rule.
- ii) Rome was the Empire ruling when Jesus Christ the **Messiah** first came,
"shall **Messiah** be cut off.....and the **people** (Romans)....." Daniel 9:26.
- iii) Rome destroyed Jerusalem and the Jewish Temple in 70AD.
".....shall Messiah be cut off..... and the **people** (Romans) of the **prince that shall come** (Antichrist) shall destroy the **city** (Jerusalem) and the **sanctuary** (Temple)." Daniel 9:26.
- iv) Rome was divided in **395AD** into the Western Empire ruled by Rome, and the Eastern Empire ruled by Byzantine (or Constantinople), pictured by the two legs of the image in Daniel 2. "The kingdom shall be divided." Daniel 2:41.

7. EGYPT. Ezekiel 29:1-15.

God promised that he would punish Pharaoh of Egypt because he claimed to be a god and to have created the Nile river. "Thus saith the Lord God: Behold I am against thee, Pharaoh king of Egypt which hath said: 'My river is mine own, and I have made it for myself.'" Ezekiel 29:2,9.

Notice these predictions that God made concerning Egypt

- i) Egypt would not be inhabited for 40 years but would be **desolate**.

"I will make Egypt utterly waste and desolate from the tower of Syene to the border of Ethiopia Neither shall it be inhabited **forty years.**" Ezekiel 29:10-12. This prediction was made in 588 BC. In 579 BC, Nebuchadnezzar conquered Egypt then deported the Egyptians to other nations from 576 BC until they returned in 536 BC.

- ii) Egyptians would return to Egypt after 40 years. "Egypt...shall be desolate **forty** years." 12 "Neither shall it be inhabited **forty** years." v.11.

"At the end of **forty** years will I gather the Egyptians from the people where they were scattered & will cause them to return to the land of Pathros (South Egypt)" Ezekiel 29:13,14

- iii) Egypt will be a base kingdom: "they shall be there a base kingdom." (Ezekiel 29:14) Egypt has been a base kingdom ever since 536 BC.

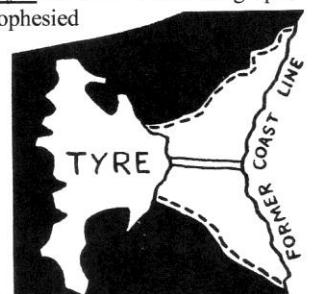
- iv) Egypt will be afraid of Israel. This is true today ever since Israel defeated Egypt in the six-day war in 1967. "The land of Judah shall be a terror to Egypt." Isaiah 19:17.

II. CITIES. Four main cities have 30 detailed prophetic predictions given about them:

1. TYRE. Destruction of TYRE was foretold in Ezekiel 26:1-14 in 590 BC.

Ezekiel 26 contains six prophecies for Tyre that have been fulfilled. If Ezekiel had looked at Tyre in his day and made these predictions in human wisdom, there would have been only one chance in 75,000,000 of them all coming true.

- i) Nebuchadnezzar will destroy the mainland city of Tyre. 26:7-11. "I will bring upon Tyrus Nebuchadnezzar King of Babylon." (27:7). This was prophesied in 590 BC. Nebuchadnezzar laid siege to Tyre four years after the prophecy was made. After a 13 year siege (586-573 BC), Nebuchadnezzar broke the gates down. He found the city empty. The people had fled to a 140 acre island 800 metres off the coast & fortified a city there. The mainland city was destroyed in 573 BC as foretold, but the island city of Tyre still remained.



- ii) "I will cause many nations to come against thee.....as waves." Ezekiel 26:3. Invaders who attacked Tyre were Nebuchadnezzar, Alexander, Moslems and Crusaders.

- iii) "I will scrape her dust from her like the top of a rock." 26:4.

When island Tyre refused to submit to Alexander, he demolished the old city on the mainland. He scraped the debris of the old city off the ground, pushing it into the water. He thus built a causeway 60 metres wide by 800 metres long out to the island of Tyre, where he laid siege to it, conquered it, and destroyed the island city in 332 BC, fulfilling a 258 year old prophecy. The **causeway** still remains and old Tyre is as **flat** as a **rock**.

- iv) "Fishermen will spread their nets over the site." Ezekiel 26:5,14.

Fishermen today dry their nets on the rocks of old mainland Tyre.

- v) "They shall throw the city debris into the water." When Alexander's engineers built the causeway, they laid the stone, timber and dust remains of old Tyre into the water. Ezek. 26:12.

- vi) The city will never be rebuilt. "Thou shalt be built no more." 26:14. Old Tyre has been bare for 2500 years, even though 10 million gallons of fresh water supply the site daily. It has not been rebuilt. Recently, the modern city up the coast began to spread threatening to build on top of old abandoned Tyre. So in 2006, UNESCO placed a "Heritage Alert" on old Tyre. No one lives there today, just as God said.

2. JERUSALEM

Jesus Christ made the following predictions about Jerusalem:

- i) **Not one stone of Herod's temple would be left standing on another.** "There shall not be left here one stone upon another, that shall not be thrown down." Matthew 24:1,2. The Roman army finally in September 70 AD stormed the walls of Jerusalem through the Antonia fortress. According to Josephus, they killed one million Jews and took 100,000 Jews captive as slaves. A soldier dropped a torch in the Temple setting it on fire. This melted the gold in the Temple, which flowed into the cracks in the Temple foundations. The Romans dug up the Temple's foundations thus destroying the Temple. The Roman soldiers fulfilled Christ's prophecy of not one stone of the Temple being left standing on another.
- ii) Jerusalem would be **surrounded by armies in a siege.** "When ye shall see Jerusalem compassed with armies, then know that the desolation thereof is nigh." Luke 21:20.
- iii) The **only way of safety was to flee Jerusalem when you see the armies.** "Then let them which are in Judea flee to the mountains; and let them which are in the midst of it depart out, and let not them that are in the countries enter thereinto." Luke 21:21. The Roman army surrounded Jerusalem for five days and its troops battered at the walls. Had not Luke in 53AD recorded Jesus' warning to leave Jerusalem when armies surrounded it? How could they escape if armies were all around the walls? Josephus the historian writes that "The Roman army retired from the city, without any reason in the world." Josephus continues: "The Jews were greatly encouraged by this, but many of the most eminent Jews then left the city." Hegessippus, another historian tells us that those leaving were Christians who knew Christ's command to flee in Luke 21:20,21. This proves that Luke wrote well before 66AD when the Roman army first came.
- iv) Many Jews in Jerusalem would be **killed by the sword.** Luke 21:24. "And they shall fall by the edge of the sword, and shall be led away captive into all nations".
- v) Many Jews would be **led away captive into all nations.** Luke 21:24.
- vi) In the starvation of the siege **women ate their children.** "He shall besiege thee thou shalt eat the fruit of thine own body, the flesh of thy sons and of thy daughters in the siege." Deuteronomy 28:52,57.
- vii) Jerusalem would be **under Gentile control until Christ returns.** "Jerusalem shall be trodden down of the Gentiles, until the times of the Gentiles be fulfilled." Luke 21:24. This occurred 40 years after it was predicted, when Titus the Roman General conquered Jerusalem in 70AD. Jerusalem has been under Gentile (non Jewish) control since 70AD as prophesied by Jesus Christ.
- viii) **Jerusalem shall be plowed as a field.** In 135AD the Jews rebelled against Rome again. Hadrian the Roman General, in a three-and-a-half year war killed 580,000 Jews and ran a plough over Jerusalem, thus fulfilling Micah's prophecy written in 730BC. "Therefore shall Zion for your sakes be plowed as a field, and Jerusalem shall become heaps." Micah 3:12.
- ix) **Jews will return to Jerusalem in the end days.** We all know that the Jews occupy part of Jerusalem and Israel today since 1948. "I will gather you out of all countries, and will bring you into your own land." (Ezekiel 36:24). God predicts that Jerusalem in the end days, being occupied by Jews, will be invaded by all nation's armies. Jesus Christ will then return to rescue the Jews, defeat the invading armies, and rule on earth in peace for 1000 years. "I will gather all nations against Jerusalem to battle" Zechariah 14:1-4.
- x) **Jerusalem's East Gate will be Shut.** Today if you visit Jerusalem's East Gate, you will notice that it is completely bricked up. Jesus Christ, Who is the God of Israel, entered it on a donkey on His way to be crucified. Ezekiel wrote: "Then he brought me back the way of the gate of the outward sanctuary which looketh toward the east and it was shut. Then the LORD (*Jehovah the Father*) said unto me: 'this gate shall be shut, it shall not be opened, and no man shall enter in by it; because the LORD (*Jehovah the Son*), the God of Israel, hath entered in by it, therefore it shall be shut." Ezekiel 44:1,2.

- xi) Jerusalem will be a **burdensome stone for all people.**

"In that day I will make Jerusalem a burdensome stone for all people." (Zechariah 12:3).

This prophecy has been fulfilled today because the Palestinian Muslim Arab conflict with Israel over Jerusalem is a very difficult problem to solve.

3. **JERICHO.**

Predicted in Joshua 6:26 (1451BC), and fulfilled in I Kings 16:34 (925BC). After the destruction of Jericho in Joshua's time, 1451BC, Joshua makes an amazing threefold prophecy about Jericho: "Cursed be the man that builds this city Jericho: he shall lay the **foundation** thereof in his **firstborn**, and in his **youngest son** shall he set up the **gates** of it." Joshua 6:26.

i) Jericho would be **rebuilt** by a man with at least two sons.

ii) The builder's **oldest son** would **die** when the city **foundations** were laid.

iii) The builder's **youngest son** would **die** when the city and its **gates** were finished.

I Kings 16:34 records that this prophecy was fulfilled in Hiel the Bethelite. No one would intend to fulfil this prophecy.

"In his (Ahab's) days did **Hiel the Bethelite** build Jericho: he laid the foundation in **Abiram** his firstborn, and set up the gates in his youngest son **Segub** according to the Word of the Lord which he spake by Joshua."

Unger writes: "The rebuilding of Jericho is confirmed by archaeological diggings there are no occupational levels from Joshua's time to Ahab's era, when small ruins from the 10th century BC point to Hiel's rebuilding the site." [Ungers Bible Handbook, p.220]

4. **NINEVEH.**

Predicted in Nahum (713BC) and fulfilled in 614BC.

God spared wicked Nineveh in 862BC at Jonah's preaching. At this time, archaeology reveals a change occurred from worshipping many gods to worshipping one god, called Nebo, the son in the Babylonian trinity.

Nineveh's wall was 100 feet tall, 50 feet thick, with 15 gates and 1200 towers each 200 feet high. Nineveh was 60 miles in circumference, with a 150 foot wide moat around it. Nahum in 3:8 writes just after Thebes (No) in Egypt was destroyed by King Ashurbanipal of Assyria in 663BC. Nineveh was destroyed in 612BC with ease after a three month siege. It fell like "first ripe figs falling if shaken." (3:12). Three times Nahum predicts that Nineveh will be destroyed with a flood:

1:8 "overrunning flood"

2:6 "gates of rivers"

2:8 "like a pool of water".

In 613BC the Assyrian army was away fighting Babylon, when heavy rains swelled the Euphrates River, flooding part of Nineveh and casting down four kilometres of wall length.

The King, believing an ancient prophecy of the river becoming their enemy, panicked and ordered he and his palace to be burned down. Babylonians, Medes and Scythians attacked through this four kilometre gap, thus conquering Nineveh in 612BC. Twelve predictions about the destruction of Nineveh are given in Nahum 1-3.

Nahum's Prophecies

1. The Assyrian fortresses around Nineveh would be easily captured. 3:12.
2. The besieged Ninevites would prepare bricks and mortar for emergency defence walls. 3:14.
3. The city gates would be destroyed. 3:13

Historical Fulfilments

Babylonian records state that the fortified towns around Nineveh began to fall in 614BC.

To the south of the gate, the moat is still filled with stone and mud bricks from the walls, heaped up when they were breached.

The main attack came on the north-west gate

- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>4. In the final hours of the attack, the Ninevites would be drunk. 1:10; 3:11</p> <p>5. Ninevites would be destroyed by a flood. 1:8; 2:6,8.</p> <p>6. Nineveh would be destroyed by fire. 1:10; 2:13; 3:15,13</p> <p>7. Many Ninevites would be massacred. 3:3.</p> <p>8. Plundering would follow the overthrow of Nineveh. 2:9-10.</p> <p>9. Its people would try to escape. 2:8.</p> <p>10. Ninevite officers would weaken and flee. 3:17.</p> <p>11. Nineveh's idols would be destroyed. 1:14.</p> <p>12. Nineveh would never be rebuilt. 1:9,14.</p> | <p>Siculus (20BC) wrote: "The Assyrian king gave much wine to his soldiers. Deserters told this to the enemy, who attacked that night."</p> <p>Diodorus: "In the third year of the siege heavy rains caused the river to flood part of the city and break part of the walls."</p> <p>The temple was burned as seen by a two inch layer of ash.</p> <p>So many were killed that the flowing stream became blood red for miles.</p> <p>They carried off much spoil, beyond counting.</p> <p>King Sardanapalus sent away his three sons and two daughters.</p> <p>The Assyrian army deserted the King (Babylonian Chronicle).</p> <p>The Ishtar goddess lay headless in Nineveh's ruins.</p> <p>Many cities were rebuilt, eg. Jerusalem, but not Nineveh.</p> |
|---|--|

III. INDIVIDUALS.

The Bible makes detailed predictions about five main individuals. Two are mentioned by name: Josiah was predicted 350 years before he lived, and Cyrus King of Persia was predicted 175 years before he lived. How can such detailed predictions be made? God wrote the Bible, is the only possible answer.

1. **JOSIAH**, King of Judah was prophesied by name in 975BC by an unnamed man of God in I Kings 13:1-3 that he would **burn idolatrous priests' bones** on the altar at Bethel. "Behold, a child shall be born unto the house of David, **Josiah** by name; and upon thee (*the altar*) shall he offer the priests of the high places that burn incense upon thee, and men's bones shall be burnt upon thee." Those idolatrous priests burned incense on the same altar under evil King Jeroboam I of Israel.

350 years later in 624BC **Josiah**, a King of Judah, while cleansing Israel of pagan practices, broke down the altar and high place of King Jeroboam at Bethel. "Josiah turned himself, he spied the sepulchres that were in the mount, and sent, and took the bones out of the sepulchres, and **burned them upon the altar** and polluted it, according to the Word of the Lord, which the man of God proclaimed." II Kings 23:15,16.

The two main predictions here are that:

- i) **Josiah's name** is given 350 years before the event. I Kings 13:2.
- ii) Josiah's **action** of **burning** the false prophets' bones is given.

Question: What is the probability of guessing these 2 prophesies? How did the Bible know them?

2. **CYRUS**, King of Persia, was predicted by name and action in Isaiah 44:28-45:4 in 712BC, that he would conquer Babylon. "That saith of **Cyrus**. He is my shepherd, and shall perform all my pleasure: even saying to Jerusalem, thou shalt be built, and to the Temple, thy foundation shall be laid." Isaiah 44:28. "Thus saith the Lord to his anointed, to **Cyrus**, whose right hand I have holden, to subdue nations before him to open before him the two-leaved gates: and the gates shall not be shut." Isaiah 45:1.

Notice the following prophecies that have been fulfilled about Cyrus:

- i) **Cyrus** of Persia is named as the man who would conquer Babylon. Isaiah 45:1. This prophecy was made 176 years before the event occurred.
- ii) The **two leaved gates** of Babylon shall not be shut. According to Heroditus (1:191), the double gates of Babylon were carelessly left open during the night of revelry when the city was taken.
- iii) Cyrus gave permission for Jerusalem to be rebuilt and for the **Temple foundation to be laid**. II Chronicles 36:22,23; Ezra 1:1-4.
- iv) "I will give thee the **treasures of darkness** and the hidden riches of secret places." 45:3. God gave Cyrus possession of the treasures of darkness, which was the wealth of conquered nations. Valuables taken from nations were hidden in dark, secretly concealed, subterranean vaults. These prophecies given in 712BC were fulfilled in 536BC, 176 years later.

Question: What is the probability of guessing the exact name "Cyrus" of the man who would conquer Babylon?

Answer: It could not be guessed. This proves that the Bible is the Word of the all-knowing, all-powerful Creator/God.

3. **ALEXANDER THE GREAT**. Daniel 8:1-8, 20-22 and 11:1-4.

Although Daniel does not mention Alexander by name, he is clearly referred to in Daniel 8:21 as "the **great horn** that is between the He-goat's eyes is the **first king**." (Alexander). Alexander crushed the Persians at the Battle of Issus in 333BC. Josephus the historian who lived from 37 to 100AD, states that when Alexander approached Jerusalem to conquer it, he was met at the gates by Jaddua the High Priest who showed him in Daniel 8:1-8, 20-22 that he as the first king of the Greek empire, would conquer the Persians. This was prophesied in 553BC, and was fulfilled in 333BC, 220 years later. Alexander was so impressed at this prophecy of a Greek conquering the Persians, that he worshipped the God of the Bible, offered sacrifices to God and spared Jerusalem.

Note: Unbelieving critics who won't accept the Bible predicting the future, say that Daniel was written around 200BC which would make it after the events, as history not prophecy. This is clearly disproven by Josephus quoting Jaddua who quotes Daniel 8:1-8,20-22 to Alexander in 340BC. This proves that Daniel was written well before 340BC and is truly predictive prophecy of the supernatural God. (Antiquities of the Jews, Josephus, Book XI, Chap.8, p.244).

4. **JOHN THE BAPTIST**.

"The voice of him that crieth in the wilderness, prepare ye the way of Jehovah, make straight in the desert a highway for our God." Isaiah 40:3. John the Baptist is the one referred to here who prepared the way of Jesus Christ who is Jehovah God. This prophecy was made in 712BC and fulfilled around 30AD.

5. **JESUS CHRIST FORETOLD IN THE OLD TESTAMENT**.

So much is predicted about Jesus Christ in the Old Testament that we can only give here a brief summary. We know that the Bible is the Word of God because it predicts so many details of Jesus Christ's life. Consider the following prophecies on the next two pages:

Conclusion:

If we assign a probability of guessing each of these predictions correctly, we see that from a human viewpoint it is impossible to predict these events as the Bible has. Not one prediction failed. All are correctly fulfilled. This proves that the Bible is not humanly authored, but authored by God who ALONE knows the future.

PROPHECY	OT REFERENCE	NT REFERENCE
1. Born of a virgin	Isaiah 7:14	Matthew 1:18,24,25
2. Tribe of Judah	Genesis 49:10	Luke 3:23,33
3. House of David	Jeremiah 23:5	Luke 3:23
4. Born at Bethlehem	Micah 5:1,2	Matthew 2:1
5. Visited by wise men with gifts.	Isaiah 60:3,6,9	Matthew 2:1-12
6. Given Gold and Incense .	Isaiah 60:6	Matthew 2:11
7. Would be in Egypt for a time.	Hosea 11:1	Matthew 2:13-15
8. Infants killed at His birthplace.	Jeremiah 31:15	Matthew 2:16-18
9. Preceded by messenger (John the Baptist)	Isaiah 40:3	Matthew 3:1-3
10. Ministry to begin in Galilee	Isaiah 9:1	Matthew 4:12-18
11. Suddenly come to His Temple	Malachi 3:1;Psalm 69:9	John 2:13-21
12. Perform Miracles	Isaiah 35:5,6	Matthew 9:35
13. Teacher of Parables	Psalm 78:2	Matthew 13:34,35
14. Heal many.	Isaiah 42:7,16	Matthew 8:16,17;15:30
15. His miracles not believed .	Isaiah 53:1	John 12:37
16. Enter Jerusalem's East Gate . Later shut.	Ezekiel 44:1,2.	Mark 11:1-11.
17. Enter Jerusalem on a donkey	Zechariah 9:9	Matthew 21:6-11
18. Betrayed by a friend	Psalm 41:9	Matthew 10:4; 26:48
19. Sold for 30 pieces of silver	Zechariah 11:12	Matthew 26:15
20. Money to be thrown on the Temple Floor	Zechariah 11:13	Matthew 27:5
21. Money used to buy a potter's field	Zechariah 11:13	Matthew 27:7
22. Forsaken by His disciples	Zechariah 13:7	Matthew 26:56
23. False witnesses accuse Him	Psalm 35:11	Matthew 26:59,60
24. Silent before His accusers	Isaiah 53:7	Matthew 27:12
25. Beaten , scourged and spat on.	Isaiah 50:6	Matthew 26:67
26. Crucified with thieves	Isaiah 53:12	Matthew 27:38
27. Mocked by onlookers.	Psalm 22:7,8; 109:25	Matthew 27:39-43.
28. Hands and feet pierced	Psalm 22:16	Luke 23:33
29. His side pierced	Zechariah 12:10	John 19:34
30. Prayed for His enemies.	Isaiah 53:12.	Luke 23:34.
31. Gall and vinegar offered Him to drink	Psalm 69:21	Matthew 27:34,48
32. Garments parted and lots cast	Psalm 22:18	John 19:23,24
33. No bones broken	Psalm 34:20	John 19:33
34. His forsaken cry	Psalm 22:1	Matthew 27:46
35. Darkness over land from midday	Amos 8:9	Matthew 27:45
36. Buried in rich man's tomb	Isaiah 53:9	Matthew 27:57-60
37. In grave 3 days and 3 nights .	Jonah 1:17	Matthew 12:38-40
38. Rise from the dead	Psalm 16:10	Matt 28:6; Acts 2:31
39. Ascend to Heaven	Psalm 68:18	Acts 1:9
40. Rejected by His own nation, Israel.	Isaiah 53:3	Mark 8:31; Luke 17:25
41. Gentile Nations to believe on Him	Isaiah 60:3	Acts 13:47,48
42. Messiah offer Himself as Prince to Israel 173,880 days after 10pm March 4, 444 BC	Daniel 9:25	Luke 19:37-44
43. Messiah comes and is cut off (dies).	Daniel 9:26	John 19:33-35
44. Jerusalem, Temple destroyed after J death	Daniel 9:26	by Titus in 70 AD
45. Jews to lose power to pass death sentence 23 years before the trial of Christ.	Genesis 49:10	11 AD (Josephus, Antiquities, 17:13:1-5)

1. Born of a virgin. Isaiah 7:14; Genesis 3:15. “A virgin shall conceive, and bear a son”.
2. Tribe of Judah. Genesis 49:10. “The sceptre shall not depart from Judah..till Shiloh”
3. House of David. Jeremiah 23:5. “I will raise unto David a righteous Branch, and a King”
4. Born at Bethlehem. Micah 5:2. “Thou, Bethlehem..Judah, yet out of thee shall come..”
5. Visited by wise men with gifts. Isaiah 60:3,6,9. “Gentiles shall come...and kings”.
6. Given Gold and Incense. Isaiah 60:6 “They shall bring gold and incense”.
7. Would be in Egypt for a time. Hosea 11:1. “called my son out of Egypt”.
8. Infants killed at His birthplace. Jeremiah 31:15. “Rachel weeping for her children”.
9. Preceded by a messenger (John the Baptist). Isaiah 40:3. “Prepare ye the way of the Lord”.
10. Ministry to begin in Galilee. Isaiah 9:1. “Zebulun, & Naphtali.. have seen a great light”
11. Suddenly come to His Temple. Malachi 3:1 “Lord whom ye seek shall suddenly come”
12. Perform miracles. Isaiah 35:5,6. “blind,..deaf,..lame,..dumb sing”.
13. Teach parables. Psalm 78:2. “I will open my mouth in a parable,..”
14. Heal many. Isaiah 42:7,16; Matthew 8:16,17. “To open the blind eyes..”
15. His miracles not believed. Isaiah 53:1. “Who hath believed our report?”
16. Enter Jerusalem’s East Gate. Later shut. Ezekiel 44:2 “Lord, the God of Israel hath entered”
17. Enter Jerusalem on a donkey. Zechariah 9:9. “thy King cometh...riding upon an ass.”
18. Betrayed by a friend. Psalm 69:9 “Mine own familiar friend,... hath lifted up his heel”
19. Sold for 30 pieces of silver. Zechariah 11:12. ‘they weighed for my price 30 pieces of silver’
20. Money thrown on the Temple floor. Zechariah 11:13. “cast them...in the house of the Lord”
21. Money then used to buy a potter's field. Zechariah 11:13. “cast them to the potter..”
22. Forsaken by His disciples. Zechariah 13:7. “Smite the Shepherd, & sheep shall be scattered”
23. False witnesses accuse Him. Psalm 35:11. “False witnesses did rise up:”
24. Silent before His accusers. Isaiah 53:7. “He was oppressed,..., yet he opened not his mouth.”
25. Be scourged and spat on. Isaiah 50:6. “I hid not my face from shame and spitting.”
26. Crucified between two thieves. Isaiah 53:9. “He made his grave with the wicked..”
27. Mocked by onlookers. Psalm 22:7,8 “He trusted on the Lord that he would deliver him”
28. Hands and feet pierced. Psalm 22:16. “they pierced my hands and my feet”.
29. His side pierced. Zechariah 12:10. “they shall look upon me whom they have pierced”.
30. Prayed for His enemies. Isaiah 53:12 “He made intercession for the transgressors.”
31. Given vinegar to drink. Psalm 69:21. “in my thirst they gave me vinegar to drink.”
32. Garments gambled for. Psalm 22:18. “They part my garments among them, cast lots on my..”
33. No bones broken. Psalm 34:20. “He keepeth all his bones: not one of them is broken.”
34. His forsaken cry. Psalm 22:1. “My God, my God, why hast thou forsaken me?”
35. Darkness over the land from noon. Amos 8:9. “I will darken the earth in the clear day.”
36. Buried in a rich man's tomb. Isaiah 53:9. “His grave ... with the rich in his death.”
37. In grave 3 days and 3 nights. Jonah 1:17 “Jonah was in the belly of the fish 3 days & 3 night”
38. Raised from the dead. Psalm 16:10. “thou wilt not..suffer thine Holy One to see corruption”
39. Ascend to heaven. Psalm 68:18. “Thou hast ascended on high..”
40. Rejected by His own nation, Israel. Isaiah 53:3 ‘He is..rejected of men. We esteemed him not’
41. Gentile Nations believe on him. Isaiah 60:3. “Gentiles shall come to thy light.”
42. Messiah would offer Himself as Prince to Israel 173,880 days after 10pm 4 March, 444BC. Daniel 9:25; Luke 19:41-44. “From the going forth of the commandment to restore & build Jerusalem to Messiah the Prince shall be 69 weeks. 1 wk=7yr x 360days
43. Messiah comes and is killed. Daniel 9:26. “shall Messiah be cut off,..
44. Jerusalem and Temple are destroyed (fulfilled in 70AD). “people..destroy city & sanctuary”.
45. Jews to lose power to pass the death sentence 23 years before the trial of Christ. Genesis 49:10. “The sceptre shall not depart from Judah, nor a lawgiver from between his feet, until Shiloh come;” This was confirmed by Josephus describing the Romans taking this power away from the Jews in 11AD. (Josephus, Antiquities, 17:13:1-5)

3. SCIENCE AS PROOF OF THE BIBLE

Whenever the Bible makes a scientific statement, it is always proven correct after man has discovered all the relevant facts. In the Library of the Louvre in Paris there are 3.5 miles of obsolete science books on the shelves. In 1861 the French Academy of Science published a list of 51 "scientific facts" which supposedly contradicted the Bible. Today all 51 of these "facts" are unacceptable to modern scientists. Do other religious books contain scientifically accurate information? Consider the Vedas, the Hindu Scriptures of India, in the following quote. This shows them to be very unscientific, hence disproving Eastern religions and modern New Age thinking which are based on the Vedas.

"The moon is 50,000 leagues higher than the sun (?), and shines by its own light (?); night is caused by the sun's setting behind a huge mountain (?) several thousand feet high, located in the centre of the earth (?), that this world, flat (?) and triangular (?) is composed of 7 states (?) - one of honey, another of sugar, a third of butter, and still another of wine, (?) and the whole mass is borne on the heads of countless elephants (?) which in shaking produce earthquakes."

As you can see, there are at least nine clear scientific errors in this short passage of the Vedas. The Bible on the other hand contains no scientific errors in its 66 books.

Key: The Bible contains scientific information that was not known by man at the time of writing. In many cases it was only discovered recently.

Question: How did the Bible possess knowledge not yet discovered by man?

Answer: God authored the Bible, and revealed information not yet known to man, so that the world would know that the Bible is God's Word, coming from a mind much greater than man's.

Question: Why did no other religious book reveal new scientific information?

Answer: Because other religious books are man made, are limited by man's then current state of knowledge, and have not come from the all-knowing Creator, but are counterfeits seeking to claim authority over us. Hence we reject them.

What examples of scientific facts revealed in the Bible, were unknown to man at the time of writing?

1. The Earth Hangs in Space.

"He hangs the earth upon nothing." Job 26:7 stated 1500BC.

Until modern times "experts" believed ideas such as the earth sat on four elephants, who stood on a giant turtle, who swam in the ocean. Man could not imagine how the earth could hang in space on nothing. Yet this is what happens due to gravitational attraction between the earth and the sun, giving the appearance that the earth hangs on nothing.

2. Earth at any time is part day-time and part night.

When the moment of Christ's second coming to earth is discussed in Luke 17:31-36, Christ's return interrupts people sleeping **at night** on one part of the earth, and interrupts others **in the daytime** grinding at the mill or working in the field. How did Jesus Christ know that the earth at any point of time is half dark and half light? Because He is the all-knowing God. "...in the day when the Son of Man is revealed. (v.30). **In that day** he that is in the field. (v.31). **In that night** there shall be two in one bed, one shall be taken, the other left. (v.34). Two women shall be grinding together; one shall be taken, and the other left (v.35). Two men shall be in the field; the one shall be taken, and the other left." (v.36).

3. Cloud Balancing. "Dost thou know the **balancing of the clouds?**" Job 37:16.

Clouds are floating in the air, balanced by two forces: gravity pulling them downwards, and warm air pushing them upwards. How did Job know about this in 1500 BC? God told him.

4. Telephone Communication.

"Canst thou send lightnings, that they may go, and say unto thee, **here we are??**" Job 38:35. When we dial a telephone number, an electric current (lightnings or electricity as we know it) moves through a wire to our friend's telephone, which rings a bell. He answers it and says "Hello, it's here." We then both have a conversation over long distance. The telephone works exactly as Job 38:35 says, yet man did not invent it until 1876. God revealed the telephone to Job in 1520BC, 3400 years before AG Bell invented it.

5. Very Great Number of Stars.

"As the host of heaven cannot be numbered." Jeremiah 33:22 in 590 BC.

"He (God) telleth the number of stars; he calleth them all by their names." Psalm 147:4.

Ptolemy in 150AD dogmatically said that 1056 stars existed.

Scientists now estimate that there are around $10^{11} \times 10^{11} = 10^{22}$ stars, and this is only a guess.

6. The Height of Stars.

"Behold the height of the stars, how high they are." Job 22:12.

Man did not realise how high and far the stars are until Bessel in 1838 measured the distances of stars using the parallax method. Alpha Centauri, earth's nearest star is 4×10^{13} kms (40,000 billion kms) away. It would take you 10 million years to get there if you could travel there in your motor car at 100 km per hour.

7. Pleiades Constellation is a Bound cluster, not breaking up.

"Canst thou bind the sweet influences (cluster) of Pleiades?" Job 38:31.

In 1520 BC, God said that the Pleiades star cluster is **bound** together in a highly stable group.

Today using high powered telescopes, this has been shown to be true. It is a bound cluster of about 500 stars, 50 light years across and 410 light years away from earth.

The individual stars cannot overcome the "chains" of gravity and allow them to break away from the cluster. The cluster is not expanding, nor breaking up, but is **bound** together. This situation is very uncommon as the reverse is usually true of all open or galactic clusters. Also, photographs reveal that some of its stars are veiled in a faint transparent blue haze of gas and dust, which beautifully reflect the glory of the stars in the cluster with their various colours. The cluster is indeed "**sweet**" in colour as God said in Job 38:31.

Question: How did the Bible know these two details which are not observable to the naked eye?

Answer: The all-knowing God Who created the stars, authored the Bible.

8. Orion's Bands are loosed.

"Canst thou loose the bands of Orion?" Job 38:31

The constellation of Orion is a star system that is steadily **expanding outwards**. The gravitational "**bands**" holding the constellation together have indeed been loosed, just as God told Job. Orion is 350 light years across and 1600 light years from earth. This expansion is not observable to the naked eye.

Question: How could the Bible tell the difference between two star systems in 1600 BC, Pleiades being bound and Orion being loosed?

Answer: God authored the Bible. "Canst thou bind the sweet influences (cluster) of **Pleiades** or loose the bands of **Orion**?" Job 38:31. God can and has done it.

9. Spherical Earth.

"It is he that sitteth upon the **circle** of the **earth**." Isaiah 40:22.

"..when he set a **compass** upon the face of the **depth**." Proverbs 8:27.

Circle 2329 = Compass 2329 in Hebrew is "Khoog" = to describe a circle, or circuit, meaning the horizon which is circular.

In 712 BC, when Isaiah wrote this, people thought that the earth was flat, and that you could sail over the edge of it and fall off. Columbus and Magellan proved that the earth was circular by sailing around it in a circle from East to West and then returning to the point of departure.

Question: How did the Bible know that the earth was spherical?

Answer: God wrote it.

10. Treasures of the Snow.

"Hast thou entered into the treasures of the snow?" Job 38:22.

Snow crystals are invisible to the naked eye, but under a microscope every snow crystal is different. No two snow crystals are the same. They are all beautiful 6-sided patterns, just like exquisite treasures. How did the Bible know this 3300 years before the microscope was invented? God wrote it.

11. All Mankind came from One Woman.

"Adam called his wife's name Eve: because she was the mother of all living." Genesis 3:20. DNA is found in every cell, in both the nucleus and the mitochondrion (energy station). Mitochondrial DNA is **always** and **only** inherited from the mother. Analysis of this DNA in humans from all over the world shows unmistakably that all humans have inherited it from **one woman**. This research was done by Wilson, Cann, and Stoneking from the University of California, Berkeley. (Creation Ex Nihilo, Vol.12, No.2, March 1990).

12. The Bloodstream Carries Life.

"The life of the flesh is in the blood." Leviticus 17:11.

From 400 BC to 1900 AD, a procedure called "blood letting" was popular. Sick people had blood drained from their bloodstream as a supposed therapeutic measure. It was responsible for killing millions of people, such as George Washington. People thought that blood carried **disease** instead of **life**. By draining the blood, the patient died of blood loss. Now we give blood to some sick patients. The Bible was right again.

13. Diseases Caused by Pigs.

"And the swine...is unclean to you. Of **their flesh** shall ye **not eat** and their carcass shall ye **not touch**". Leviticus 11:7,8.

Forbidding to eat pigs was because of:

- lack of refrigeration, and
- roasting pork over an open flame does not destroy the parasites.

Parasites are obtained by handling fresh pork.

Some diseases are caused by eating pork that is not properly cooked. For example, **Trichinosis** larvae attach to the intestine when eaten. They then bore through the intestine into the blood stream, and the larvae are carried to all parts of the body. They develop and grow in a person's striated muscle.

Pork Tapeworm may feed off the intestine and grow to 12 foot long. It may be fatal in 10-20 years.

God, by forbidding people to eat or touch pork, shows His care for us.

Question: How did the Bible know about the dangers of pork in 1500 BC?

Answer: God wrote the Bible.

14. Leprosy to be Quarantined.

"he (the leper) shall **dwell alone**; outside the camp shall his habitation be. Thou shalt **burn** that wherein the plague is by fire." Leviticus 13:46,57. Moses laid down the rules to recognise and to quarantine the infected leper as contagious, lest other people catch leprosy.

15. Sanitation.

"Thou shalt have a place outside the camp when you will ease yourself, you shall dig (with a paddle) and shall turn back and cover that which cometh from thee." Deuteronomy 23:12,13.

Up until 1800 AD, human excrement was dumped onto the unpaved, filthy streets. Powerful stenches gripped villages and cities. Flies bred in the filth, spreading intestinal diseases that killed millions of people. Such deaths by diseases like typhoid, cholera and dysentery could have been avoided if they had obeyed the Bible.

Question: How did the Bible know this, when man couldn't understand it until 1800?

Answer: God wrote the Bible.

Moses never learned this information from Egypt, because Egypt's standard medical textbook was the "Papyrus Ebers." It contained quack cures like "lizards blood, pigs teeth, stinking fat and meat, pig's ear wax, excreta from humans, dogs, flies, cats, etc.!" Moses never referred to these false cures in his writings.

16. Hands and Clothes Washing.

Until 1900 AD, many hospital patients died due to infections caused by doctors not washing their hands or clothing after contact with infectious patients. The Bible required repeated washing in running water with time allowed for drying and exposure to the sun to kill the bacteria.

17. Fountains Under the Sea. "Hast thou entered into the springs of the sea?" Job 38:16.

"When he strengthened the fountains of the deep." Proverbs 8:28.

There are at least 10,000 known underwater volcanoes, adding 430 million tons of extra water to the oceans each year. **Question:** How did the Bible know what took place on the deep ocean floor? **Answer:** God wrote it.

18. The Water Cycle.

"All the rivers run into the sea; yet the sea is not full; unto the place from where the rivers come, there they return again." Ecclesiastes 1:7.

Rain falls on the coast, runs down the rivers into the oceans, evaporates into clouds, and is blown back to land. It then rains, thus repeating what is known as the water cycle.

19. The Sun is the Source of the Earth's Wind Systems.

"By what way is the **light** parted, which scatters the **east wind** upon the earth?" Job 38:24.

Wind is caused by the uneven heating of the **air** around the earth by the **sun**. The sun also heats the **surface of the earth** unevenly. Air above hot areas (such as land) expands and rises. Air from cooler areas then flows in to take the place of heated air. This is called circulation.

20. Light can be Parted or Dispersed into a Rainbow Spectrum.

"By what way is the **light** parted (Heb.2505)?" Job 38:24. "Parted" in Hebrew is "*chalaq*" which means "separated".

White light can be separated into 7 colours of the spectrum which are red, orange, yellow, green, blue, indigo and violet. This was not understood until experiments with light were performed in the 1600's.

Note: Light is like Jesus Christ: "I am the light of the world." John 9:5. As light has seven colours, so Christ has the seven spirits of God. See Isaiah 11:1,2.

21. Winds blow in Circuits.

"The wind goes toward the south, and turns about unto the north, it **whirls about continually** and the **wind turns again** according to his **circuits**." Ecclesiastes 1:6.

At the equator, the sun heats the air causing it to rise. In the upper atmosphere this air flows away from the equator. When the air returns to the earth's surface, it flows across the surface. This moving surface air produces the six belts of prevailing winds around the earth.

22. Winds have Weight and hence Air Pressure.

"To make the **weight** for the **winds**." Job 28:25.

Galileo in 1600 AD noted that a suction pump would not raise water more than 34 feet. Torricelli suggested that if air could support a column of water 34 feet high, then air should support a column of mercury about 2.5 feet high, because mercury is 13 times as heavy as water. Torricelli made a mercury barometer and proved that air has **pressure** and hence **weight** as the Bible says. God revealed that air has weight 3200 years earlier.

23. Sea Paths or Ocean Currents.

"Whatsoever passes through the **paths of the sea**". Psalm 8:8. "Paths" in Hebrew means "customary roads." Matthew Maury is the father of Oceanography. A statue of him exists in Virginia with charts of the sea in one hand and a **Bible** in the other. Until Maury's work there were no charts of sailing lanes. One day during a temporary illness, his son read from Psalm 8:8. Maury stopped him, asking him to read it again. Maury then said: "It is enough. If the Word of God says that there are paths in the sea, they must be there, and I am going to find them." Within a few years he had charted the sea lanes and ocean currents. **Question:** How did the Bible know about sea paths or ocean currents? **Answer:** God wrote it.

24. Shadows are caused by the earth turning on its axis with respect to the sun.

"Every good gift and every perfect gift is from above, and cometh down from the Father of lights, with whom is no variableness, neither shadow of turning." James 1:17. This shows knowledge of a spherical earth turning on its axis when written in 45AD. This was unknown until Copernicus in 1543 wrote that every planet, including earth, revolves around the sun, and that the earth spun upon its axis once a day.

25. Laws of Physics control matter, energy and motion.

God asked Job: "Knowest thou the ordinances (laws) of heaven?" Job 38:33. Ordinances are physical laws that govern the movement of heavenly bodies, stars, planets, comets, meteors etc. Examples include: i) Kepler's laws of equal areas of orbits ii) Solar Physics

- iii) Newton's law of universal gravitation iv) Quantum mechanics
- v) Newton's three laws of motion vi) Radioactive decay
- vii) The first and second laws of thermodynamics
- viii) Sub atomic particle laws ix) Laws governing blackholes, quasars, pulsars

The more that man learns about science, the more he realises that there is to learn.

Question: How did the Bible know that science operates on laws in 1500 BC? **Answer:** God wrote it

26. The First Law of Thermodynamics states that no new matter or energy is being created in the known universe; it is only being interconverted from one form to another.

"On the seventh day **God ended his work** which He had **made.**" Genesis 2:2.

27. The Second Law of Thermodynamics states that the disorder of the universe is increasing. Systems are running from a high to a low state of energy.

"They (the **earth** and **heavens**) all shall **wax old** as doth a garment. And as a vesture shalt thou fold them up, and they shall be changed: but thou art the same, and thy years shall not fail." Hebrews 1:11,12. Scientists admit that with all the energy that the sun burns up, it must become cold one day in the distant future. The same must happen to all stars. This is called the "heat death of the universe." Without solar heat, life on earth could not exist. Jesus Christ will create a new, perfect universe after the millennium.

28. Can a Whale swallow Jonah

"Now the Lord had prepared a **great fish** to **swallow up Jonah**. And Jonah was in the belly of the fish three days and three nights." Jonah 1:17. Many people use this as their reason for doubting the Bible's truthfulness. How can a fish swallow a man?

Several cases in modern times have been reported of a whale swallowing a man who survived. One is reported by Francis Fox in "Sixty-three years of Engineering" p.298-300 and confirmed by two scientists, one being M. DeParville, the scientific editor of "Journal Des Debats" in Paris.

In February 1891, the whaling ship, "Star of the East" was near the Falkland Islands, where they sighted a large sperm whale. Two boats were sent out after the whale. One boat harpooned the whale, but the whale upset the other boat, drowning one man and the other sailor James Bartley, disappearing without a trace. After the whale was killed and cut open two days later, James Bartley was found unconscious and doubled up inside the whale. He had lost his senses through fright and not through lack of air. His skin was bleached white from stomach acid. He fully recovered. If a man can survive two days in a whale in 1891, surely Jonah could have survived three days in a great fish in 862 BC.

29. The Universe consists of Space, Mass and Time as stated in Genesis 1:1

"In the beginning (time) God created the heaven (space) and the earth (mass)."

Each has 3 components showing the Trinity as Creator of time (past, present, future), space (length, breadth, height), and mass (solid, liquid, gas). Only the Bible states God as creating time.

30. Space is stretched as seen by the movement of galaxies, and the **earth has foundations** of core, mantle and crust. "And forgettest the LORD thy maker, that hath stretched forth the heavens, and laid the foundations of the earth." (Isaiah 51:13).

CONCLUSION:

The Bible not only includes that which is scientifically correct, but also totally avoids that which is scientific nonsense as found in the books of many other religions. The ancient Egyptians believed that the world was hatched from a great cosmic egg which had wings.

Because the Bible avoids scientific nonsense, and because the Bible contains scientific information that was not known until recently, we conclude that the all-knowing Creator God authored the Bible. This is a strong argument for our complete confidence in the Bible's truth & reliability on every other issue of life.

4. PROOFS OF THE EXISTENCE OF GOD

The Bible never attempts to prove the existence of God, but simply declares His existence as a settled fact. The Bible commences: "In the beginning God....." Genesis 1:1.

Belief in God's existence is fundamental to life, otherwise man is not accountable to anybody.

Belief in God's existence is a pre-requisite to being saved by faith in Christ.

"He that cometh to God must believe that he is, and that he is a rewarder of them that diligently seek him." Hebrews 11:6. "The fool hath said in his heart, there is no God". Psalm 53:1.

Consider these proofs or arguments for God's existence:

1. CAUSE AND EFFECT (Cosmological)

Every effect has a cause. The cause is greater than the effect.

"For every house is built by some man; but he that built all things is God". Hebrews 3:4.

The world and the universe are here. This raises the question: "How did it all come into existence?"

We know of nothing in this world that has no cause. Thus we must recognise that there is a cause behind this world and the universe.

If the pieces of a watch were shaken up in a can forever, they would never produce a working watch by accident. The fact of a watch's existence demands that there was a watchmaker who made the watch. Hence there must be an intelligent First Cause (God).

2. DESIGN PROVES THE EXISTENCE OF A DESIGNER (Teleological)

Not only does the world and universe exist (with a cause), but it also has a perfect design and purpose. Everything has a purpose. For example, every part of your body has a useful purpose.

Order and useful arrangement imply that the Cause has intelligence and purpose.

The intelligence, purpose and harmony in the universe prove the existence of a master architect.

"The heavens declare the glory of God; and the firmament showeth his handiwork". Psalm 19:1.

God's purpose, design, harmony and intelligence is seen in:

- i) The earth is the right distance from the sun to provide a life sustaining climate on earth.
- ii) The moon is the right distance from earth to provide tides at a proper level.
- iii) Without a moon, we would have no light at night.
- iv) Every plant, animal and bacteria has a useful purpose.
- v) Every part of your body is in the right place (eg: eyes, nose, ears), is the right size and shape (eg: thumb, fingers), and works perfectly to achieve a useful purpose.
- vi) **Flowers** are colourful. **Trees** provide oxygen, shade, and timber for building and heating, they prevent soil erosion, and they support many life forms.

How can these be explained? A benevolent Designer has given us all of these blessings because He loves and cares for us. Do you love and care for Him?

viii) The **human body** functions so perfectly in every way.

"I will praise thee; for I am fearfully and wonderfully made". Psalm 139:14.

3. The UNIQUENESS and INTELLIGENCE OF MAN (Anthropological)

Man is vastly superior to animals, because of his intelligence, his engineering skill, his moral awareness and his awareness of God and eternity.

"So God created man in his own image". Genesis 1:27.

4. MAN'S UNIVERSAL INTUITIVE BELIEF IN GOD (Ontological)

Man everywhere is born with an intuitive belief in God. This manifests itself in a desire to worship God. If man does not find the true God, he worships a God of his own making. Belief in God is intuitive. It is not the result of cultural conditioning.

5. THE MORAL ARGUMENT (Conscience)

Man everywhere has a moral awareness of right and wrong. He feels responsible to do what is right, and to avoid what is wrong.

Question: Where did this sense of moral justice come from?

If man is only a bunch of chemicals, why does he have a sense of moral obligation?

Do chemicals have morality?

Answer: The Bible states that moral awareness is God given. Such innate moral standards cannot be due to evolution from unintelligent matter. Romans 2:14,15 states that Gentiles who don't know the 10 Commandments have an inner, moral witness placed there by God. When a man violates his conscience he feels guilt and a fear of punishment. Man's moral awareness can be traced back to the moral values of his Creator. Man's conscience witnesses to the existence of a supreme Law-Giver and Judge who built this sense of right and wrong into man.

6. THE BIOLOGICAL ARGUMENT

Only life can produce life. The theory of spontaneous generation of life has been proven false by science. (Louis Pasteur 1870). Unintelligent matter cannot produce intelligent life. The eternal, intelligent life source is God. "For with thee is the fountain of life". Psalm 36:9.

7. THE HISTORICAL ARGUMENT

Human history points to the unseen Hand of God. God controls, guides and governs the affairs of nations. Examples of God intervening in history are:

- i) When Hitler and Napoleon invaded Russia, winter came early, and was so severe that it led to their defeat. Job 38:22,23.
- ii) When Hitler had crippled England's airforce, he could have easily invaded and conquered Britain. But he delayed and was distracted to bombing English cities. He lost his moment of opportunity due to the prayer answering God.
- iii) When the Spanish Armada set out to invade England in 1588 with 130 ships, God sent a devastating storm which was timed perfectly to destroy most of the ships. God spared England for Protestantism, publishing of the King James Bible in 1611, and sending gospel preaching missionaries all over the world.
- iv) The allies and the United States developed the atomic bomb before Hitler in World War II.
- v) Roman peace had removed pirates from the seas allowing Paul and early missionaries to plant churches all over the world.
- vi) In 1453 the Moslems captured Constantinople. Just before it fell, all the precious New Testament manuscripts had been taken to Europe where printing had just been invented in 1440 by Gutenberg. Hence God preserved the New Testament manuscripts from Islamic destruction, and to be printed 10 years after printing was invented.
- vii) La Perouse was a French explorer who sailed into Botany Bay only 6 days after Arthur Phillip arrived there with the First Fleet. God wanted England to colonise Australia rather than France.
- viii) Men blasphemed God in 1912 by saying that "Not even God could sink the Titanic ocean liner." God judged their sin by sinking the Titanic on its maiden voyage from England to New York on April 15, 1912 when it struck an iceberg.

8. THE CHRISTOLOGICAL ARGUMENT

We cannot explain the Christ of history without the existence of God. Christ's life is affirmed by the Bible and by secular literature. Christ's virgin birth, sinless life, miracles, teachings, prophecies fulfilled at His death, His bodily resurrection and ascension can only be explained by God's existence. "Never man spake like this man". John 7:46.

How Christ transforms lives for good, and continues to answer prayers is proof of God's existence. Millions of Christians world wide know Christ as God personally.

9. THE BIBLICAL ARGUMENT

Man could not have authored the Bible. We know that the Bible is authored by God because it foretells the future with 100% accuracy everytime. No other book in the world has 100% fulfilled prophecy. This shows that it comes from the mind of God. Man would not write a book about how his God whom he loves and worships gets crucified. Man would teach that we get to God by our good works. The Bible is accurate from Science, Archaeology, Prophecy, Unity and Morality.

10. MILLIONS OF PEOPLE KNOW GOD PERSONALLY THROUGH JESUS CHRIST

Jesus Christ has answered millions of people's prayers and transformed millions of lives from misery, sin and despair to love, joy, peace, hope and victory. Do not be like the fool who says that there is no God. Receive Jesus Christ as your God and Saviour from sin today. Then you too will know God personally.

5. REASONS FOR BIBLE, HEAVEN, RESURRECTION, DEITY, CREATION and BAPTISM.

What Key Questions Need We Be Able To Answer?

Question 1: How do we know the **Bible is God's Word?**

1. **Fulfilled prophecy** regarding nations, Christ, individuals and second coming.
2. **Archaeology** - No archaeology discoveries contradict the Bible.
3. **Science** - The Bible contains scientific facts that were not known when the Bible was written.
4. **Unity** of the Bible written by 40 men over 1600 years agree without any contradiction.
5. **It contains all truth** and no error.
6. Bible principles for living all work when applied.
7. The Bible when printed, **delivered** man from the dark ages and brought blessing to the world. It freed men from superstitions.

Question 2: Why **Creation Is Right** and **Evolution Is Wrong**.

1. God said "In the beginning God created the heaven and the earth. So **GOD CREATED MAN** in his own image..." Genesis 1:27.
2. **JESUS** said that God created man:
"From the beginning of creation God made them male and female." Mark 10:6.
"For in those days shall be affliction, such as was not from the beginning of the creation which God created unto this time, neither shall be." Mark 13:19.
3. **SUDDEN APPEARANCE** of complex life in early Cambrian fossil layers.
4. **MAN'S RECORDED HISTORY** only goes back to about 3,000 BC, the first dynasty of Egypt and China, agreeing with the Bible's flood date of 2418 BC.
5. **SECOND LAW OF THERMODYNAMICS** says that systems go from order to disorder, yet evolution contradicts this by claiming systems go from "disorder to order".
6. **DATING METHODS** are greatly in error, giving an apparent age greater than the true age. This is due to unproven assumptions in the dating methods.
7. **220 EVIDENCES** for a young earth of about 6,000 years old.
8. **ABSENCE OF TRANSITIONAL** fossil forms between species as predicted by evolution.
9. **Misplaced fossils.** For example:
 - i) Human shoe print on trilobite fossil.
 - ii) Cave painting of brontosaurus in Zimbabwe.
 - iii) Polystrate tree trunks over many strata layers.
 - iv) Human and Dinosaur footprints in Turkmenia.
10. **No beneficial mutations** have given a new species.
There is no way to change the number of chromosomes in all the cells of an organism to change it to another species. For example, man has 46 chromosomes in every cell.
11. **Complexity** of sexual reproduction and eyes, can't be explained by evolution's random processes.
12. **Bad social effects of evolution**
 - a) "Survival of the fittest" of evolution justifies cunning, deceit, cruelty, animal behaviour and massacres, instead of **God's law of love and service**.
 - b) **Militarism** of Germany starting World War I and World War II came from them applying evolution to encourage survival of the "fittest" nation Germany. This allowed the massacre of 6 million Jews and the destruction of other countries. This was just an evolutionary conflict.
 - c) Spread of **atheism**.
 - d) Spread of **Communism** and the arms race.
 - e) Spread of **immorality and divorce**. People acting like animals is just evolutionary behaviour.
 - f) **No idea of right or wrong** because there is no authority of God to be accountable to.
 - g) **Abortion**. Evolutionists say, "Don't worry, the foetus is only in the fish stage."

Question 3: How do we know that Jesus rose from the dead?

1. Jesus after He rose, said that he had **flesh and bones**. Luke 24:39.
2. The **empty tomb** & the **ordered grave clothes** when the disciples examined the tomb. Mark 16:6.
3. Christ **ate food** with His disciples after He rose. Luke 24:41-45.
4. People **recognised Him** after His resurrection, even the nail prints. John 20:25.
5. Christ **predicted that He would rise** bodily. John 2:19,22.
6. The mass psychological **change** of the disciples from being cowards at Christ's death, to become bold preachers after the resurrection. How else can this mass psychological change be explained?
7. Over **500 people saw Christ** after He had risen from the dead over a 40 day period (I Cor 15:6). So convinced were they that they were willing to die as martyrs than to deny Christ's resurrection. Would you die for an event that you were not sure about? These witnesses have a high credibility having given the world it's highest moral code.
8. The **change from Saturday to Sunday** as the main day of worship (I Cor 16:1,2). The Sabbath being so important to the Jews would not have been dropped by the Jews except for an immensely important event, the resurrection of Jesus Christ.
9. The **church's** existence can only be explained by the miracle of Christ's resurrection.
10. **Angels** in the tomb declared that He had risen from the dead as He said. Luke 24:6-8.
11. Women who met Christ on this morning held Christ's feet. Matthew 28:9.

Question 4: Why do we believe that we are going to heaven?

1. Jesus told us of heaven and how to get there through Him (John 14:1-6).
2. The Old Testament tells us of heaven as the land that is very far off. (Isaiah 33:17).
3. We have the Holy Spirit indwelling us, telling us of heaven.
4. We have the promises of God's Word. 'absent from the body, be present with the Lord' 2Cor 5:8
5. Testimony of Godly people dying and going to heaven, such as Stephen (Acts 7:55,56).

Question 5: Why do we believe that Jesus is God?

1. **Jesus claimed to be God.** "if ye believe not that I am he, ye shall die in your sins." John 8:24.
"I AM" is a name for "God", because;
 - i) To God, no event is beyond Him in the future, and no event is out of His control in past.
 - ii) Only God is the eternal "**I AM**" in Exodus 3:14,15. "**I AM**" is **God's name forever**.
 - iii) The **Jews rightly concluded** that Jesus was claiming to be God in John 8:58,59.
 - iv) The Septuagint translates Exodus 3:14 as "**I AM**" not as in the NWT (JW) version.
2. The Old Testament says that **JESUS IS GOD**. "For unto us a child is born, unto us a son is given:...and his name shall be called...The mighty God, The everlasting Father." Isaiah 9:6.
3. Jesus Christ has the **CREDENTIALS OF GOD**.
 - i) He **ROSE** from the dead.
 - ii) He **DID MANY MIRACLES** showing His power over nature.
- stilling storms, casting out demons, healing the blind, the lame and raising Lazarus.
 - iii) He **PROPHESIED THE FUTURE** correctly. Eg: Rome destroying Jerusalem (70 AD).
 - iv) He entered Jerusalem to proclaim himself King 173,880 days after 10pm March 4, 444 BC. This was the exact day (Sunday 29 March 33AD) that Daniel prophesied in Daniel 9:24-26.
 - v) He **solves the sin problem** by dying as our substitute, thus satisfying the law's demands.
4. **The Bible Declares that Jesus Christ is God** in these places:
 - i) "The Word was God". John 1:1.
 - ii) Thomas called Him "My Lord and my God". John 20:28.
 - iii) "The glorious appearing of our Great God and Saviour Jesus Christ". Titus 2:13.
 - iv) "God was manifest in the flesh". 1 Timothy 3:16.
 - v) "In Him dwelleth all the fullness of the Godhead bodily". Colossians 2:9.
 - vi) "But unto the Son, he saith, 'Thy Throne, O God, is forever and ever'." Hebrews 1:8.
 - vii) "There are three that bear record in heaven, the Father, the Word, and the Holy Ghost: and these three are one." 1 John 5:7.
5. **The Old Testament predicted 45 details of Jesus Christ's life.** 45 examples are on page 12-13:

Jesus Christ and the Bible make the following 8 prophecies about Jerusalem.

1. Not one stone in Herod's Temple would be left standing upon another. Matthew 24:1,2.
2. Jerusalem would be surrounded by armies in a seige. Luke 21:20.
3. The only way of safety was to flee Jerusalem when you see the armies. Luke 21:21.
4. Many Jews in Jerusalem would be killed by the sword. Luke 21:24.
5. Many Jews would be led away captive into all nations. Luke 21:24.
6. Women would eat their children because of starvation in the seige. Deuteronomy 28:52,57.
7. Jerusalem would be under Gentile control until Christ returns. Luke 21:24.
8. Jerusalem shall be plowed as a field. Micah 3:12. This was fulfilled by Hadrian in 135AD.

Conclusion: If we assign a probability of guessing each of these **53 prophecies** correctly, it is impossible to predict these events as the Bible has. No prophecy failed. All are correctly fulfilled. This proves that the Bible is not authored by man, but by God who ALONE knows the future.

6. Josephus the Jewish /Roman Historian who lived from 37 to 100 AD, wrote that people then regarded Jesus Christ as God ("if it be lawful to call him a man").

"Now, there was about this time, Jesus, a wise man, if it be lawful to call him a man, for he was a doer of wonderful works, - a teacher of such men as receive the truth with pleasure. He drew over to him both many of the Jews, and many of the Gentiles. He was (the) Christ; and when Pilate, at the suggestion of the principal men amongst us, had condemned him to the cross, those that loved him at the first did not forsake him, for he appeared to them alive again the third day, as the divine prophets had foretold these and ten thousand other wonderful things concerning him; and the tribe of Christians, so named from him, are not extinct at this day." (Josephus' "Antiquities of the Jews", p.379).

This confirms the Bible's account of Jesus Christ's: i) Historical existence. ii) Deity. iii) Miracles. iv) Teacher. v) Pharisees suggesting that Pilate kill Jesus. vi) Resurrection after three days. vii) Fulfilled Old Testament prophecies. viii) Followers known as the Christian Church.

Question 6: Why we should believe in Baptism by immersion.

1. '**Baptizo**' in Greek always means "immersion", never sprinkle. Sprinkle is "rantizo" in Greek.
2. **Everyone baptized** in the New Testament was a saved adult who could say "I believe that Jesus Christ is the Son of God." Acts 8:37.
3. **Only immersion pictures** the death of Jesus Christ for our sins, burial of our old sinful ways, and us rising to a new life with Jesus Christ.
4. **Only baptism by immersion** is the answer of a **good conscience towards God**. 1 Peter 3:21.
5. **Jesus** was baptized by immersion, and so should we. Mark 1:9-11. The Catholic Church changed it.
6. Immersion was the **method of baptism up to 300 AD** as recorded by the Church Fathers.

WHY SHOULD WE GIVE A REASON? 1. **Not to be ashamed** before men. (II Timothy 2:15). 2. **To be approved by God.** 3. **To deliver people for error**, sin and false doctrine. 4. **To teach** answers to Christians. 5. **To strengthen** our faith.

HOW SHOULD WE ANSWER? With meekness and fear, means with modesty and gentleness.

Questions may sometimes be asked in an insulting manner. Don't retort in anger or in a revengeful manner, but in a calm and gentle spirit, stating the reason for our hope. Let us give clear, intelligent and factual answers to establish the truth of God's Word satisfactorily in people's minds.

"But sanctify the Lord God in your hearts: and be ready always to give an answer to every man that asketh you a reason of the hope that is in you with meekness and fear." 1 Peter 3:15.

CONCLUSION: The probability of only eight prophecies about Jesus Christ coming true by guesswork is 1 chance in 100,000,000,000,000,000. What about the rest? Since the Bible is right in predicting the future, we conclude that: a) Jesus Christ is the only way to God.

- b) The Bible is 100% accurate on issues that we have no normal knowledge on (such as the future). It therefore qualifies for our trust in it as God's only Word to man.
- c) It is therefore the right foundation for our thinking and our life. We conclude that,
THE BIBLE = TRUTH = REALITY = OUR LIFE'S FOUNDATION.

6. HEAVEN

In Colossians 3:2 we are told to: "Set your affection on things above, not on things on the earth."

Too many people and Christians are so earthly-minded that they are of no heavenly good.

Jesus told to us to "lay up for yourselves treasures in heaven." Matthew 6:20.

In view of the difficulties of this world and of the treasures of heaven, we do well to focus constantly on heaven.

- Aim:**
1. To show us what great things await us in heaven.
 2. To comfort us concerning those who have gone to heaven.
 3. To motivate us to tell people how they may get to heaven.

1. THE BIBLE TEACHES US THAT THERE ARE THREE HEAVENS

The first heaven is earth's atmosphere, "the heaven gave rain". James 5:18.

The second heaven is outer space, "the stars shall fall from heaven". Matthew 24:29.

The third heaven is the throne of God, "New Jerusalem which cometh down out of heaven from my God." Revelation 3:12.

Paul says in II Corinthians 12:2-4, "I knew a man in Christ...caught up to the third heaven."

2. NAMES OF HEAVEN

- i) "Thine eyes shall behold the king in his beauty: they shall behold the **land that is very far off.**" Isaiah 33:17.
- ii) "Ye have in heaven a **better** and an **enduring substance.**" Hebrews 10:34.
- iii) "The **city** of the **living God, the heavenly Jerusalem.**" Hebrews 12:22.
- iv) "Receive the promise of **eternal inheritance.**" Hebrews 9:15.
- v) "In my Father's house are **many mansions**:...I go to prepare a place for you." John 14:2.
- vi) "Far more exceeding and eternal weight of **glory.**" II Corinthians 4:17.
- vii) "Lay up for yourselves treasures in **heaven.**" Matthew 6:20.
- viii) "...a better...**heavenly country**...for he hath prepared for them a city." Hebrews 11:16
- ix) "He was caught up into **paradise.**" II Corinthians 12:4.

3. WHEN WE DIE WHERE DO WE GO?

- i) At death, the **spirits and souls** of believers **go immediately to heaven**, and the body "sleeps" in the earth until Christ's second coming when we will be caught up to rejoin our spirits and souls.
"To be absent from the body, and to be **present with the Lord.**" II Corinthians 5:8.
"Them also which sleep in Jesus will God **bring with him.**" I Thessalonians 4:14.
"For the hope which is laid up for you **in heaven.**" Colossians 1:5.
"But ye are come unto Mt Zion, the **heavenly** Jerusalem." Hebrews 12:22.
"But now they desire a better country, that is, an **heavenly.**" Hebrews 11:16.
"Knowing in yourselves that ye have **in heaven** a better and an enduring substance" Heb. 10:34
"To an inheritance.....reserved **in heaven** for you." I Peter 1:4.
"I heard a great voice of much people **in heaven.**" Revelation 19:1.
"Lay up for yourselves treasures **in heaven.**" Matthew 6:20.
Where I am (heaven), **there** shall also my servant be." John 12:26.
"I go and prepare **a place** for you.....that **where I am** (heaven), there **ye** may be also" John 14:3
"We know that if our earthly house of this tabernacle were dissolved (physical death), we have a building of God, an house not made with hands, eternal in the **heavens.**" II Corinthians 5:1.
- ii) At Christ's return to earth in glory, believers will return to earth with Christ.
"The Lord my God shall come, and **all the saints with thee.**" Zechariah 14:5.
- iii) After the 1000 years of Christ's rule on earth, God will destroy this first earth with fire. He will create a new heavens, new earth and a **new Jerusalem city** which will be 1500 miles wide, 1500 miles long and 1500 miles high.

This is where our home with God will be forever. Revelation 21:1-3.

4. DESCRIPTION OF HEAVEN.

- i) Heaven is where **God's Throne is.** "Our Father which art in heaven." Matthew 6:9.
- ii) It is a sinless **Holy Place.**

"He will hear him from his holy heaven." Revelation 21:27; Psalm 20:6.

- iii) **Beautiful and clean.** "The street of the city was pure gold, as it were transparent glass." Revelation 21:21.
 - iv) **River of Life and tree of life.** Revelation 22:1,2.
 - v) **Angels** reside there. "The voice of many angels about the throne in heaven." Revelation 5:11
 - vi) **Father, Son and Holy Spirit** reside there. "They shall see his face." Revelation 22:4.
 - vii) Place of **reward.** "Rejoice and be exceeding glad: for great is your reward in heaven."
- Matthew 5:12; Revelation 22:12.
- viii) Place of **separation** from the **wicked.** I Corinthians 6:9-11; Galatians 5:19-21; Rev.22:14,15
 - ix) **Believers** reside there. "...an house not made with hands, **eternal in the heavens.**" 2 Cor. 5:1.
 - x) We **return** to the **days of our youth**, in resurrected, youthful and immortal bodies. Job 33:25.
"This mortal must put on immortality." I Corinthians 15:53.
 - xi) Place of **joy and happiness.**
"Enter thou into the **joy** of thy Lord." Isaiah 35:10; Matthew 25:21.
 - xii) All **good earthly gifts** come from **God in heaven.**
"A man can receive nothing, except it be given him from heaven." John 3:27.
"Every good gift and every perfect gift is from above, and cometh down from the Father of lights..." James 1:17.
- Question:** Do you acknowledge God as having given you everything good?
- xiii) God assigns **angels** in heaven to **each child** who is born in order to bring that person to hear the gospel, so that they will receive Christ as Saviour and have eternal life. Matthew 18:10.
 - xiv) **God's Word** which we have in our hands is settled forever in heaven. It is heavenly and without error. We can confidently build our life on it.
"For ever, O Lord, thy word is settled in heaven." Psalm 119:89.
 - xv) The **permanence of our heavenly possessions** comfort us when we lose our earthly possessions. Hebrews 10:34.
 - xvi) An **inheritance** reserved in heaven for you, that fadeth not away. I Peter 1:4,5.
 - xvii) **Saved people** from every kindred, tongue, people and nation will be there. Revelation 5:9.
We will be **reunited** with saved friends and relatives, children who have died, Jesus Christ and angels.
 - xviii) We shall have a **glorified body like Christ.** "We shall be like him." I John 3:2. This is **Christ likeness.** Our new bodies will not be subject to the laws of gravity, time or ageing.
John 20:19
 - xix) Heaven is **eternal.** "an eternal inheritance." Hebrews 9:15.
 - xx) A place of **memory.** **Question:** Will we know one another in heaven? Yes, David will meet his son. II Samuel 12:22,23. We shall sit down with Abraham, Isaac and Jacob in the kingdom of heaven. Matthew 8:11.
 - xxi) **Satisfaction** of all our needs. Revelation 7:16,17.
 - xxii) **Sharing in Christ's glory.** "When Christ who is our life shall appear, then shall ye also appear with him in **glory**". Colossians 3:4.

5. ACTIVITIES IN HEAVEN:

- i) Intimate **fellowship** with God for all eternity. "They shall see his face." Revelation 22:4.
"That where I am there ye may be also." John 14:3.
- ii) **Rest** from hard labour.
"They may rest from their labours." Revelation 22:4.
One of the results of sin was the curse of toil and the sweat of hard work.
When we arrive in heaven, we will continue to work, but the agony of labour will be gone.
- iii) **Exciting service.** "His servants shall serve Him." Revelation 22:3.
"He that is faithful in that which is least is faithful also in much." Luke 16:10.
- iv) **Ruling.** "We shall **reign** on the earth." Revelation 5:10.
"Because thou hast been faithful in a very little, have thou **authority** over ten cities." Luke 19:17. "If we suffer, we shall also **reign** with him. II Timothy 2:12.

- v) **Worship.** "The 24 elders.....worship him that lives forever and ever." Revelation 4:9-11.
"The Father seeketh such to worship him." John 4:23. We will be so amazed with the greatness of God, heaven and eternity that we will respond in worship.
- vi) **Singing.** "They sung a new song, saying, "Thou art worthy." Revelation 5:9.
"The ransomed of the Lord shall return, and come to Zion with songs and everlasting joy shall be upon their heads." Isaiah 35:10.
- vii) **Eating.** "To him that overcometh will I give to eat of the hidden manna". Revelation 2:17.
- viii) **Marriage supper** of the lamb. "Blessed are they which are called unto the marriage supper of the lamb." Revelation 19:9.

6. THINGS ABSENT FROM HEAVEN. The "no-mores" in heaven are:

- i) "No more sea." Revelation 21:1.
- ii) "The first heaven and the first earth were passed away." Revelation 21:1.
- iii) No more tears. Revelation 21:4.
- iv) No more death.
- v) No more sorrow.
- vi) No more crying.
- vii) No more pain.
- viii) No more sun or moon. Revelation 21:23.
- ix) No temple for the Lord God Almighty and the Lamb are the temple of it." Revelation 21:22
- x) No more insecurity. "The gates of it shall not be shut at all by day" Revelation 21:25.
- xi) "No night there." Revelation 21:25.
- xii) No sin will enter. "There shall in no wise enter into it anything that defiles, or works abomination, or makes a lie..." Revelation 21:27.
- xiii) No more sickness. "Leaves of the tree were for the healing of the nations." Revelation 22:2
- xv) "No candle or light of the sun, for the Lord God giveth them light: and they shall reign forever and ever." Revelation 7:16.
- xvi) No more thirst, hunger or heat. Revelation 7:16.
- xvii) No one who **adds** or **takes away** from the Bible. Revelation 22:18,19.
- xviii) Outside are dogs, sorcerers, whoremongers, murderers, idolaters, and liars. Revelation 22:15

7. WHAT WILL BE THERE?

- i) Behold I make **ALL THINGS NEW.** Revelation 21:5.
This means that everything will be new. It will be a new universe.
- ii) "He that overcometh shall **inherit ALL THINGS.**" Revelation 21:7.
- iii) "The **Kings of the earth** do bring their glory and honour into it." Revelation 21:24.
This means that there will be a new population on the new earth who will worship the Lord.
- iv) **Mansions.** "In my Father's house are many mansions." John 14:2.

Question: How may we enter heaven?

We must humble ourselves as little children, and **ask** Christ to be our Saviour.Matthew 18:1-

6 "Thou would have **asked** of him, and he would have given thee living water". John 4:10.

Are you really sure of going to heaven?

Are you really living for Christ and for eternity?

Are you working to get lost people saved and into heaven?

7. HELL

In the New Testament, 162 passages speak about unrepentant people going to hell, and 70 of these were described by Jesus, as he warned people to avoid it.

When the unsaved die, they go immediately to hell. Later, at the end of Christ's 1,000 year reign on earth, the unsaved will leave hell, receive their resurrected bodies, go to the Great White Throne Judgment and will then be cast into the Lake of Fire, where they remain forever (Revelation 20:11-15).

I. FOUR BIBLE WORDS THAT DESCRIBE HELL:

1. GEHENNA¹⁰⁶⁷ referred to the continually burning rubbish dump on the south west side of Jerusalem, known as the valley of the sons of Hinnom (or Tophet). Jesus used the word "Gehenna" to describe the place of everlasting punishment because hell is a place of filth and stink, a place of smoke and pain, a place of everlasting fire and suffering. This garbage dump was likened to hell. It is used as a name for the place of everlasting punishment of the lost. It occurs twelve times in the New Testament. It is the ultimate hell of fire. It is the same as the lake of fire. (Revelation 20:14,15).

Matthew 5:22 "whosoever shall say, "Thou fool", shall be in danger of hell fire" (gehenna of the fire).

Matthew 5:29 "And if thy right eye offend thee ... and not that thy whole body should be cast into hell" (gehenna).

Matthew 5:30 "And if thy right hand offend thee ... and not that thy whole body should be cast into hell" (gehenna).

Matthew 10:28 "...fear him which is able to destroy both soul and body in hell" (gehenna).

Matthew 18:9 "And if thine eye offend thee, ... rather than having two eyes to be cast into hell fire" (gehenna).

Matthew 23:15 "Pharisees, ... ye make him twofold more the child of hell (gehenna) than yourselves."

Matthew 23:33 "Ye serpents,... how can ye escape the damnation of hell?" (gehenna).

Mark 9:43 "And if thy hand offend thee, ... two hands to go into hell (gehenna), into the fire that never shall be quenched."

Mark 9:45 "And if thy foot offend thee, ... two feet to be cast into hell (gehenna), into the fire that never shall be quenched."

Mark 9:47 "And if thine eye offend thee, ... two eyes to be cast into hell fire" (gehenna of fire).

Luke 12:5 "Fear him, which after he hath killed hath power to cast into hell" (gehenna).

James 3:6 "the tongue is ... set on fire of hell" (set on fire by gehenna).

2. HADES⁸⁶ is the intermediate state between death and the ultimate hell (gehenna), the Lake of Fire. It is where unsaved departed spirits reside. Luke 16:23. Hades never denotes the physical grave, nor is it the permanent region of the lost. Hades occurs 10 times in the New Testament, and Sheol, the Old Testament equivalent occurs 59 times. Hades is associated with privation, detention and just punishment of the unsaved dead.

Matthew 11:23 "Thou, Capernaum...shalt be brought down to hell" (hades).

Luke 10:15 Hades here expresses Capernaum's absolute overthrow, from pride to humiliation.

Matthew 16:18 "The gates of hell (hades) shall not prevail against it" (the churches' attack).

Luke 16:19-31 "And in hell (hades) he lifted up his eyes, being in torments⁹³¹ (punishment)" v.23.

Hades here has two compartments, close to each other, yet different.

Acts 2:27 "Thou wilt not leave my soul in hell (hades)."

Acts 2:31 "That his (Christ's) soul was not left in hell (hades)."

Christ here descended into the underworld of the departed (Ephesians 4:9,10), to take the believers in it (eg: thief on the cross) up to heaven. Believers now go to heaven at death, while unbelievers still go to hades at death, a place of punishment.

Revelation 1:18 "I (Christ) ... have the keys of hell (hades) and of death."

- Revelation 6:8 “a pale horse: and his name that sat on him was Death, and hell (hades) followed with him.” Hades here is personified as the temporary destiny of the unsaved.
- Revelation 20:13 “death and hell (hades) delivered up the dead which were in them.”
- Revelation 20:14 “death and hell (hades) were cast into the lake of fire.”
- Note: Fire is used 27 times** in the New Testament to describe the after-death punishment of unbelievers and of demons.
- 2 Thessalonians 1:8 “In flaming **fire** taking vengeance on them that know not God, and obey not the gospel of our Lord Jesus Christ.”
- Matthew 13:42, 50 “And shall cast them into a furnace of fire.”
- Matthew 5:22; 18:9; Mark 9:43,45,47 “cast into fire unquenchable, hell fire.”
- Isaiah 66:24 “... look upon the carcasses of the men that have transgressed against me, for their worm shall not die, neither shall their **fire** be quenched.” Mark 9:44,46,48.
- Isaiah 33:14 “Who among us shall dwell with the devouring fire?
Who among us shall dwell with the everlasting burnings?”
- Matthew 18:8 “Two hands or two feet be cast into everlasting fire.”
- Matthew 25:41 “Depart from me ye cursed into everlasting fire, prepared for the devil and his angels.”
- Jude 7 “Sodom and Gomorrah ... an example suffering the vengeance of eternal fire.”
(Literally: of fire eternal, the penalty undergoing).
- Revelation 19:20 “Beast, .. false prophet, ... and them that worshipped his image. These were cast alive into a lake of **fire** burning with brimstone.”
- Revelation 20:10 “the devil ... shall be tormented day and night for ever and ever” (for the ages of the ages).
- Revelation 20:14,15 and Rev. 21:8 “death and hell were cast into the lake of fire.”
- Revelation 14:10,11 “tormented with **fire** and brimstone ... the **smoke** of their torment ascends up for ever and ever (for ages of ages), and they have no rest (respite) day nor night...”

3. SHEOL⁷⁵⁸⁵ is hades of the Old Testament. In Hebrew, it means the depth, abyss, pit, world of the dead, underworld. It occurs 66 times in the Old Testament (grave 31 times, hell 30 times, pit 3 times). As all Old Testament people went to the grave, the souls of some will receive punishment in sheol.

Numbers 16:30 “Korah, Dathan and Abiram went down into the pit.”

Psalm 9:17 “The wicked shall be turned into hell (sheol).”

4. TARTARUS⁵⁰²⁰ is the deepest abyss of Hades; a place where evil angels are imprisoned in torment, awaiting judgment and everlasting punishment.

2 Peter 2:4 is its **only** reference in the Bible.

“If God spared not the angels that sinned, but cast them down to hell (tartarus), and delivered them into chains of darkness, to be reserved unto judgment.”

II. WHAT IS HELL (GEHENNA and HADES) LIKE?

1. UNQUENCHABLE FIRE: “He will burn up the chaff with unquenchable fire.” Matthew 3:12.

Hell “fire” is real “fire” because the same Greek word (pur) for fire is used for both.

“It rained fire and brimstone...” Matthew 17:15 and Luke 17:29.

The rich man in hades said: “I am tormented in this flame.” Luke 16:24.

2. MEMORY AND REGRET. Abraham said to the rich man in hades “remember” in Luke 16:25. Lost people will remember their sins and the times that they rejected the Holy Spirit convicting them of their sins and their need for Jesus Christ to be their Saviour. They will remember how Christians told them the plan of salvation.

3. THIRST. The rich man in hell begged Abraham to “send Lazarus that he may dip the tip of his finger in water, and cool my tongue” (Luke 16:24), yet this was refused. Imagine going without water for one day, let alone for eternity without water.

Jesus Christ offers in John 7:37, “If any man thirst, let him come unto me and drink.”

4. SEPARATION. People in hell will experience a “great gulf” (Luke 16:26) between them and God. They took all the good things of life for granted when they were on earth. They will be forever separated from all the good gifts of God. Many unbelievers joke that “I won’t be lonely in hell, as all my friends will be there.” Friendship means nothing under everlasting torment.

5. INJUSTICE AND FILTHINESS OF SIN are in hell. Revelation 22:11. “He that is unjust, let him be unjust still: and he which is filthy let him be filthy still.” No one likes people treating them unjustly, nor do people like being abused in a filthy manner. The unsaved will experience these conditions forever in hell.

6. HOPELESSNESS FOR ALL ETERNITY. Hell is the everlasting dwelling place of the unsaved. Sooner or later they will realise that they are in hell to stay there forever, with no escape. In Luke 16:26, Abraham told the rich man in hell: “They which would pass from here to you cannot; neither can they pass to us.”

7. STINK OF SULPHUR. “But the fearful, and unbelieving, and abominable, and murderers, and whoremongers, and sorcerers, and idolaters, and all liars, shall have their part in the lake which burneth with fire and **brimstone** (sulphur); which is the second death.” Revelation 21:8.

8. EYESIGHT, HEARING, TOUCH, TASTE AND SMELL are senses that people possess in hell. The rich man in Luke 16:19-31 could “see” Abraham, “hear” his voice, “touch” the flames, desire to “taste” water, and “smell” the sulphur. Revelation 21:8.

9. THE DEVIL and DEMON ANGELS will accompany the Christ rejecters forever.

10. UNSATISFIED DESIRES. Both of the rich man’s requests were denied in Luke 16:19-31. He requested a drop of water to cool his tongue, and for Lazarus to return to tell his five unsaved brothers how to be saved and avoid hell. Both requests were denied. How many times a day do you want something and get it? In hell, no one ever gets what they want.

11. PLACE OF WORMS. “Where their worm dieth not...” Mark 9:44,46,48.

Worm means maggot. If the maggots do not die, and the people own the maggots, then neither do the people die or get annihilated in hell.

12. TORMENT and PUNISHMENT. “In hell, he lift up his eyes being in torments.” Luke 16:23.

13. SHAME and HATRED. “Many of them that sleep in the dust of the earth shall awake, some to everlasting life, and some to shame and everlasting contempt.” Daniel 12:2. People suffering in hell will get a resurrection body. They will be judged, and sent to the lake of fire in shame at their sins. They will experience everlasting contempt, hating their situation forever.

14. DEGREES OF PUNISHMENT IN HELL. “It shall be more tolerable for Sodom and Gomorrah in the day of judgement, than for that city.” Mark 6:11.

Those who reject Christ most often, will receive greater punishment. Matthew 10:15.

15. WEEPING, WAILING, GNASHING OF TEETH. “So shall it be at the end of the world: the angels shall come forth and sever the wicked from among the just, and shall cast them into the furnace of fire: there shall be wailing and gnashing of teeth.” Matthew 8:12 and 13:49,50. People who today are arrogant, proud Christ-rejecters will be wailing and gnashing their teeth in hell.

16. HADES IS IN THE EARTH. Amos 9:2 “though they dig into hell ...”,
Isaiah 14:9 “hell from beneath”, Ephesians 4:9 “descended into lower parts of earth”,
Numbers 16:33 “they went down alive into the pit”,
Psalm 63:9 “those that seek my soul, to destroy it, shall go into the lower parts of the earth.”

17. HELL IS ORIGINALLY PREPARED FOR THE DEVIL AND HIS ANGELS

“Depart from me, ye cursed into everlasting fire, prepared for the devil and his angels.” Matthew 25:41.

How does one get to hell? By neglecting to receive Christ as Saviour.

Hebrews 2:3 “How shall we escape, if we neglect so great salvation?”

How does one avoid hell? By receiving Christ as their Saviour. John 1:12.

Christians should work harder to rescue people from hell, and seek to build their church to better achieve this task, both at home and overseas.

Question 1: Does “hell” mean “grave” where good and bad must go?

Answer: No, because in Luke 16:19-31 both men went to the grave, but the soul of Lazarus was comforted, and the soul of the rich man was tormented.

Question 2: How can a loving God send people to hell?

Answer: People send themselves to hell by rejecting Christ. God is loving in sending Christ to die for our sins, but God is just in punishing sin.

III. JESUS' STORY OF THE RICH MAN AND LAZARUS in Luke 16:19-31.

An unbelieving rich man who had abundant material possessions and food in this life, died and went to hell. A believing poor man named Lazarus who had nothing in this life but sickness and poverty, died and was carried by the angels into the comfort of paradise. The suffering rich man in hell made two requests of Abraham in paradise:

i) To send Lazarus to put one drop of water on his tongue to relieve his suffering. The rich man, who refused to show mercy to Lazarus in need, now begged that Lazarus might show mercy to him in his need (v.24). The rich man declares the greatness of his torment saying: “I am in torment (agony) in this fire (or flame).” v.24.

Lesson: Material things have only temporary, not eternal value. Luke 16:25.

Abraham responded by calling him “son”. This means that he was a son of Abraham by flesh, not by faith. The rich man trusted his **wealth** and his **physical** descent from Abraham for his salvation. Christ showed that neither reason was sufficient for salvation. At death, one's eternal destiny is settled. “Between us and you there is a great gulf fixed” (v.26). The rich man could remember his false confidence in wealth, and his wrong devotion to it. This story refutes “**soul-sleep**”, because the rich man and Lazarus were conscious, one enjoying comfort, and the other suffering **torment**.

Note: Hades had two sections: paradise and hell punishment. Jesus emptied the paradise section when He rose from the dead and took the Old Testament believers’ souls to heaven. Eph. 4:8-10; John 20:17. “Torment” is used four times and means sorrow and grief.

Abraham gave two reasons why Lazarus could not comfort the rich man:

- a)The rich man had received his reward (Matthew 6:2,5,16), and he had left God out of his life.
- b)The great gulf separated them.

ii) To send Lazarus back to warn his five brothers. Luke 16:27-31.

The rich man did not say: “I'm glad my brothers will come here, we'll have a wonderful time together.” People sometimes say: “I want to go to hell. All my friends will be there.”

Answer: There is no friendship in hell. Hell is a place of torment and loneliness.

Lesson: People in hell have a concern for the lost, but they cannot do anything about it, **BUT WE CAN!** What are you doing?

v.29-31: Abraham said that the only thing that could prevent his five brothers from coming to hell was:

Hearing the Word of God, and **responding** to it by faith in Christ as Saviour.

A man named Lazarus did come back from the dead, and some of the Pharisees wanted to kill him (John 11:43-57; 12:10).

God had spoken many times to the rich man while on earth:

1. God permitted him to have riches, but not attributing his riches to God’s goodness, he did not repent.

“The goodness of God leadeth thee to repentance.” Romans 2:4-5.

2. Lazarus would have witnessed to him, but his pride rejected Lazarus’ message.

3. Old Testament scriptures spoke to him.

4. Lazarus dying first, should have reminded him how he would also die. In hell he was still self-centred, praying for his comfort and for the safety of his family. He was not concerned about other lost sinners. C.S. Lewis says: “The safest road to hell is the gradual one - the gentle slope, soft underfoot, without sudden turnings, without milestones, without signposts.”

Lessons from the rich man and Lazarus:

1. The souls of men **do not die** with their bodies.
2. The souls of men are **conscious** after death, not asleep until resurrected.
3. The righteous at death are taken immediately to a place of happiness and the wicked are sent to a place of misery and torment.
4. Wealth does not protect us from death.
5. We **should not envy the rich**, as riches can blind us to the reality of eternity.
6. We should seek a better inheritance than this life can give.
7. The sufferings of the wicked in hell will be indescribably great of torment, burning flame, and insatiable thirst, forever.
8. Hell is a place of suffering beyond the grave. If not, this story has no meaning.
9. There will never be any escape from hell. The gulf is fixed.
10. God warns us to prepare for death through:

His Word.

His Holy Spirit pleading with sinners.

His servants.

His goodness leading us to repentance.

Pleadings of friends.

Heaven.

If all that would not move sinners, then what would? He threatens hell.

11. God will give us nothing more to warn us. No dead man will return to tell us what he has seen. If he did, no one would believe him. If you will not hear Christ or the Bible, there is nothing you will hear. You will never be persuaded, and you will never escape the place of torment.
12. We see the amazing folly of those wanting to go to hell. They have been deceived.

IV. THE IMPLICATIONS OF HELL FOR US TODAY

1. **Soul winning** is important. When people get angry at a preacher preaching on soul winning, they are doing the devil's work.
2. We need to become **fishers of men**. Matthew 4:19.
3. If we are **busy** pulling souls out of the fire, we will **not waste our time** fighting other Christians. We will seek to maintain unity in our church.
4. We see **our Church** as of **great importance** in rescuing people from hell. Rescuing people from hell is a major purpose of churches.
5. Hell focuses our attention on **eternity**, taking our attention off petty present things like latest worldly fashions which pale into insignificance in the light of lost people going to an eternal hell.
6. Hell makes us **train workers** to be soul winners.
7. It gives us a **love for people** to win to Christ and to train in the Bible.
8. It makes us **use our time wisely** so that **all we do** helps in some way to rescue people from hell.
9. Hell makes us **mission minded** so that we try to win lost people to Christ overseas. For example, Roman Catholics in Africa grew from 52 million in 1980 to 92 million in 1993.
10. Hell and eternal judgment is the **sixth principle of the Doctrine of Christ**, so it must be emphasised in our doctrinal teaching. "the foundation ofeternal judgment." Hebrews 6:1,2.
11. Hell will give us a **better testimony** as Christians. If we sin, people will go to hell.
12. Hell will **stop us backsliding** because we will realise that our job is important to accomplish in rescuing people from hell. "For what shall it profit a man if he gains the whole world, and lose his own soul?" Mark 8:36. What is your answer to this question?

Conclusion

Are you really saved?

Have you received Jesus Christ as your Saviour, trusting Him alone to save you, not your religion or your good works?

If you are saved, then what are you doing to tell people how Jesus Christ can save them from hell?

8. REWARDS

God's Word teaches us that salvation is a free gift given to us by God. We do not work for it (Ephesians 2:8,9,10), we just receive it, and it becomes ours. Once we have received it, we cannot lose it. (John 10:28).

Question: Does this mean that I can go out and sin, now that I'm saved, without any bad consequences?

Answer: No, because:

- a) God will discipline us now, and we will be sorry.
- b) We will lose our rewards later on in heaven.

I. STATEMENTS OF REWARDS IN HEAVEN

- "And, behold, I come quickly: and **my reward** is with me, to **give** every man **according** as his work shall be". Revelation 22:12.
- "And whatsoever ye do, do it heartily, as to the Lord, and not to men; knowing that of the Lord **ye shall receive the reward** of the inheritance: for ye serve the Lord Christ.
But he that doeth wrong shall **receive** for the **wrong** which he hath done". Colossians 3:23-25.
- "For we must all appear before the judgment seat of Christ; that every one may **receive** the things done in his body, **according** to that he hath done, whether it be **good** or **bad**". II Corinthians 5:10.
- "Knowing that whatsoever **good thing** any man doeth, the same shall he **receive** of the Lord". Ephesians 6:8.
- "I press toward the mark for the **prize** of the high calling of God in Christ Jesus". Philippians 3:14.
- "Moses... had respect unto the recompense of the **reward**". Hebrews 11:26.
- "Lay up for yourselves **treasures in heaven..**". Matthew 6:19,20.
- "To have an **abundant entrance** into the everlasting kingdom". II Peter 1:11.
- "So then everyone of us shall **give account** of **himself** to God". Romans 14:12.

Christ will come to judge the works of believers and to distribute rewards. The believer will not be judged with regard to his sins (John 5:24). Christ received that judgment on our behalf on the cross (II Corinthians 5:21) and we will not again be called to account for them at Christ's return. During this life, however the believer is disciplined for the sins that he commits (Hebrews 12:7-11). But when Christ returns, believers will be judged as to how well we have used the **talents** (Matthew 25:14-30), the **pounds** (Luke 19:11-27), and the **opportunities** (Matthew 20:1-16) that God has entrusted to us. Salvation is a free gift of God (Romans 6:23) and comes from the grace of God (Ephesians 2:8). When James says that we are saved by works (James 2:24), he means by faith that produces works (2:22,26). Paul says that while we are saved by grace, we are saved to do good works (Ephesians 2:8-10). The Lord has given believers an opportunity to lay up treasures in heaven (Matthew 6:20), and so to have an abundant entrance into God's everlasting kingdom (II Peter 1:11).

II. FOR WHAT WILL WE BE REWARDED IN HEAVEN?

- (1) **Faithfulness** to **God** and to his **work** in using our talents, pounds and opportunities will be rewarded. If we sow sparingly, we reap sparingly. If we sow bountifully, we reap bountifully. "It is required in stewards that a man be found faithful." I Corinthians 4:2.
- (2) **Reaping the harvest of souls** for Jesus Christ. "He that reappeth receives wages". John 4:35-37.
- (3) **Patiently enduring suffering** and affliction brings heavenly rewards.
"Our light affliction which is but for a moment, works for us a far more exceeding and eternal weight of glory." II Corinthians 4:17.
- (4) They that **turn many to righteousness** will shine as the stars forever and ever. Daniel 12:3.
- (5) In **keeping of them** (God's commandments) there is a **great reward**. Psalm 19:11.
- (6) When we are **persecuted** for righteousness sake. Matthew 5:10.
When people revile you and **say all manner of evil against you falsely** for Jesus Christ's sake. Rejoice and be exceeding glad, for **great** is your **reward** in heaven. Matthew 5:10-12.
- (7) Giving **money** secretly. Matthew 6:4.

- (8) **Praying** secretly. Matthew 6:6.
- (9) **Fasting** secretly. Matthew 6:18.
- (10) **Hospitality**. Receiving, helping or welcoming a prophet or a righteous man. Matthew 10:41. If you receive or help a prophet or righteous man, you get a prophet or righteous man's reward.
- (11) If you give a **cup of cold water** to a disciple, you will not lose your reward. Matthew 10:42. God notices all the little acts of kindness that we do, and promises to reward us for each of them.
- (12) If people **hate** you, and **separate** you from their company, and shall **reproach** you, and shall **cast out** your name as evil for the Son of man's sake. Rejoice, and leap for joy, for your **reward is great in heaven**. Luke 6:22,23.
- (13) Your **reward** shall be **great** if you do as in: Luke 6:27-31,35.
- a) Love your enemies.
 - b) Do good to them that hate you.
 - c) Bless them that curse you.
 - d) Pray for them that despitefully use you.
 - e) To him that smites thee on the cheek, offer the other.
 - f) If he takes your cloak, offer your coat.
 - g) Give to every one that asks thee.
 - h) Of him that takes away thy goods, ask them not again.
 - i) Do to men as ye would have them do to you.
 - j) Lend, hoping for nothing again. As sufferers in an evil world, we will be rewarded for endurance. "If we suffer with him, we shall also **reign** with him". II Timothy 2:12.
- (14) If we **plant the gospel** and **water it** in people's lives. "He that plants (Paul) and he that waters (Apollos) are one: and every man shall **receive** his **own reward** according to his own **labour**". I Corinthians 3:8.
- (15) If we have **eternal values**. If we build on the foundation of Christ, by using gold, silver, precious stone type **works** of eternal value. I Corinthians 3:11-15.
If our work abides, we will receive a **reward**. 3:14.
If any man's life work shall be burned, he shall suffer **loss**, but he himself shall be saved; yet so as by fire. v.15. The quality of our life's work will be rewarded at the Judgment Seat of Christ.
- (16) If I **preach the gospel willingly**, I have a **reward**. I Corinthians 9:16,17.
- (17) **Meekness** in serving Christ. Blessed are the meek for they shall inherit the earth. (Matthew 5:5)
The reward is real estate ownership in the Millennium.
- (18) Cast not away your **confidence** which hath great recompence of reward. Hebrews 10:35.
- (19) How we **treat other believers**. "God is not unrighteous to forget your work and labour of love, which ye have showed to His name in that ye have ministered to the saints and do minister". Hebrews 6:10.
- (20) How we exercise our **Pastoral ministry** to others. "Obey them that have the rule over you, and submit yourselves: for they watch for your souls, as they that **must give account**, that they may do it with joy, and not with grief: for that is unprofitable for you". Hebrews 13:17.
- (21) How we **use our God-given abilities**. "Thou hast been faithful over a very little, have thou authority over ten cities". Luke 19:17.
- (22) How we **use our money**. "Charge them that are rich in this world. that they be ready to distribute...." I Timothy 6:17-19.
- "**Laying up in store for themselves a good foundation** against the **time to come**". 2 Cor 9:6,7
- (23) How much we **suffer** for Jesus Christ.
"For our light affliction, which is but for a moment, works for us a far more exceeding and eternal weight of glory". II Corinthian 4:17; Romans 8:18; I Peter 4:12,13; II Timothy 2:12.
- (24) How we **run the race** that God has **chosen** for us."So run that ye may obtain". I Corinthian 9:24
- (25) How well we **control sin**."Every man that striveth for the mastery is temperate in all things. Now they do it to obtain a corruptible crown; but we an incorruptible crown." I Cor. 9:25-27.
- (26) How we react to **temptation**. "Be thou faithful unto death, and I will give thee a crown of life". Revelation 2:10.

- (27) How much we **love the Lord's appearing**. "Henceforth there is laid up for me a **crown of righteousness**, which the Lord, the righteous judge, shall give me at that day; and not to me only, but unto all them also that **love His appearing**". II Timothy 4:8.
- (28) How **faithful** we are to the **Word of God**, and to **feed the flock** of God. "Feed the flock of God ... When the Chief Shepherd shall appear, ye shall receive a **crown of glory** that fades not away". I Peter 5:2-4.
- (29) **Doing everything heartily**, as unto the **Lord**. "Knowing that of the Lord ye shall receive the reward of the inheritance: for ye serve the Lord Christ." Colossians 3:23,24.

III . WHAT WILL OUR REWARDS BE ?

The Christians' reward is sometimes mentioned as a "prize" (I Corinthian 9:24), and sometimes as a "crown" (I Corinthians 9:25). Five Crowns may be won:

- (1) **Incorruptible** crown - for those who discipline the body, as an athlete to achieve great things for God. I Corinthians 9:25-27.
- (2) **Rejoicing** - for those who win people to Christ. I Thessalonians 2:19,20.
- (3) **Life** - for those who love Christ enough to endure temptation. James 1:12; Revelation 2:10.
- (4) **Righteousness** - for those who love Christ's second coming. II Timothy 4:8.
- (5) **Glory** - for pastors and teachers who faithfully feed the flock of God. I Peter 5:2-4.

Other rewards available are :

- (1) Our Lord's **approval** - "Well done thou good and faithful servant: thou hast been faithful over a few things, I will make thee ruler over many things." Matthew 25:21.
- (2) **Ruler over many things**. "If we suffer with him, we shall reign with him." II Timothy 2:12. "They shall reign for ever and ever." Revelation 22:5.
- (3) **Authority over 10 cities, 5 cities** etc. "Thou hast been faithful in a very little, have thou authority over 10 cities." Luke 19:17.
- (4) **Inherit all things**. "He that overcometh shall inherit all things". Revelation 21:7.
We may sit with Christ in His Throne. Revelation 3:21.
He has made us unto our God Kings and priests:and we shall reign on the earth. Revelation 5:10
- (5) His servants shall **Serve Him**. "They shall see his face". Revelation 22:3,4.

IV. HOW MAY WE LOSE OUR REWARDS ?

Is it possible for someone who has earned certain rewards to lose them through sinful living? These verses imply "yes":

- (1) By **Backsliding**, not holding fast which thou hast.
"Hold that fast which thou hast, that no man take thy crown". Revelation 3:11.
- (2) By **following Deceivers**. "For many deceivers are entered into the world". II John 7.
- (3) By **not looking to ourselves**, to check our behaviour. "Look to yourselves, that we lose not those things which we have wrought, but that we **receive a full reward**". II John 8.
- (4) By **Worshipping angels**. "Let no man beguile you of your reward in a voluntary humility and worshipping of angels, and not holding the Head...". Colossians 2:18.
- (5) By **not expecting Christ's return**. "Say in his heart: My lord delays his coming". Matt. 24:48.
- (6) By **doing wrong**. "He that doeth wrong **shall receive** for the wrong which he hath done" Col.3:25
- (7) By **not abiding in Christ**. Faithfulness in our service here to Christ will result in privileged service in eternity. Our works from salvation to the grave will be on display as a painting, so that all believers and angels can see the results of our life's work for Christ. "And now, little children, abide in him; that, when he shall appear, we may have **confidence**, and **not be ashamed** before Him at His coming". I John 2:28.

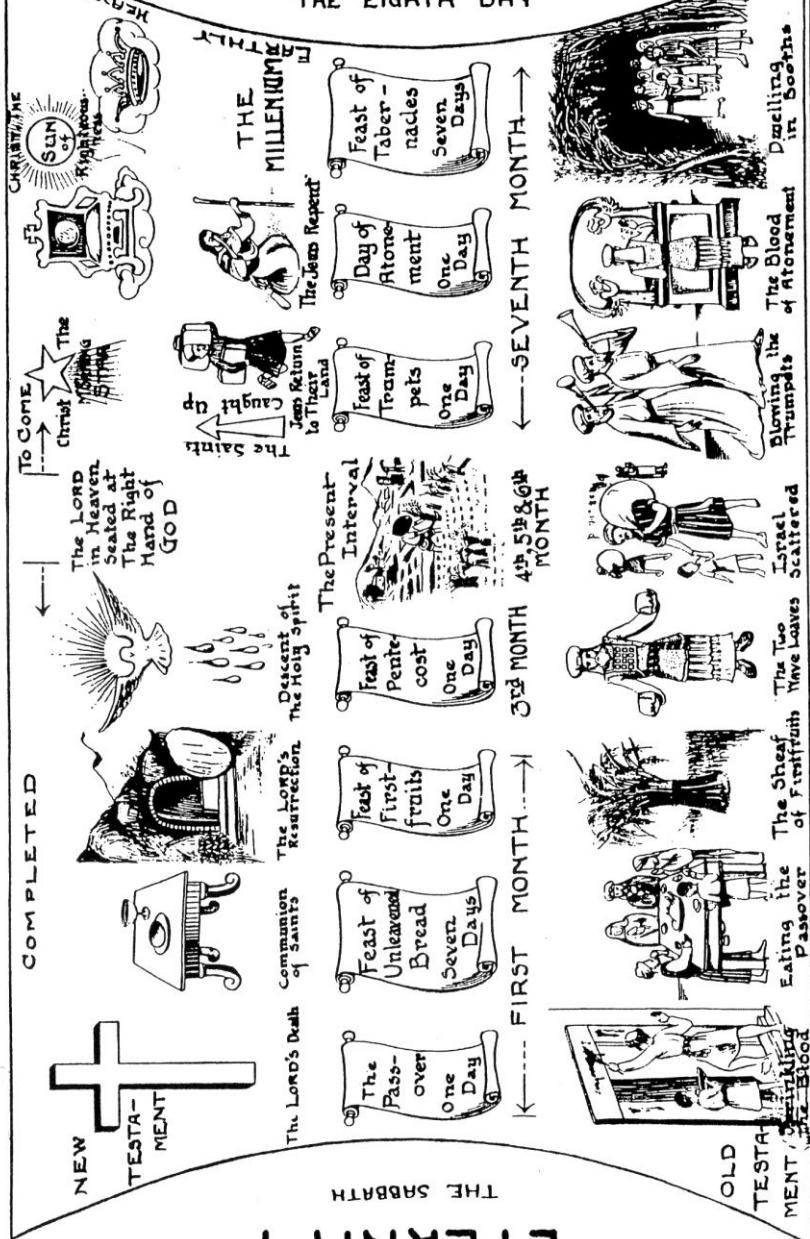
Question: Will you have **confidence or be ashamed at Christ's coming?**

9. - THE FEASTS OF JEHOVAH -

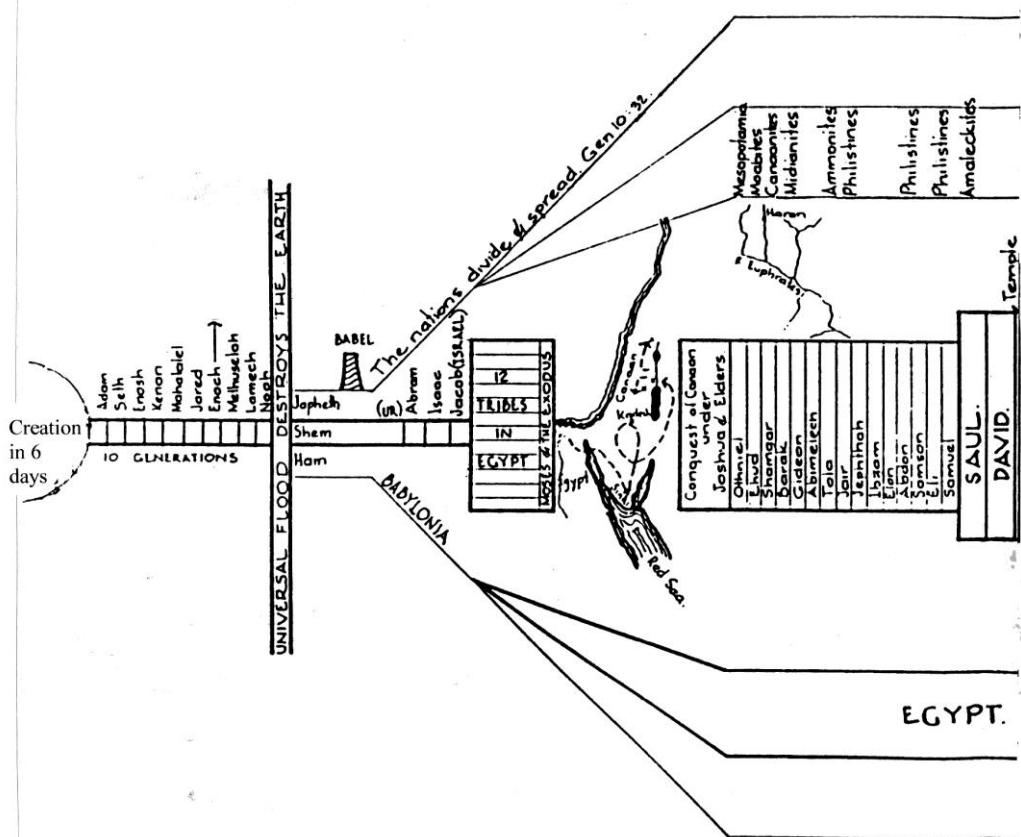
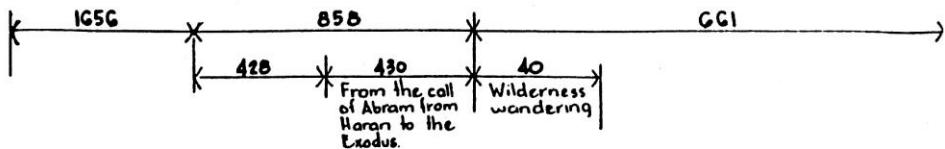
Leviticus 23

ETERNITY

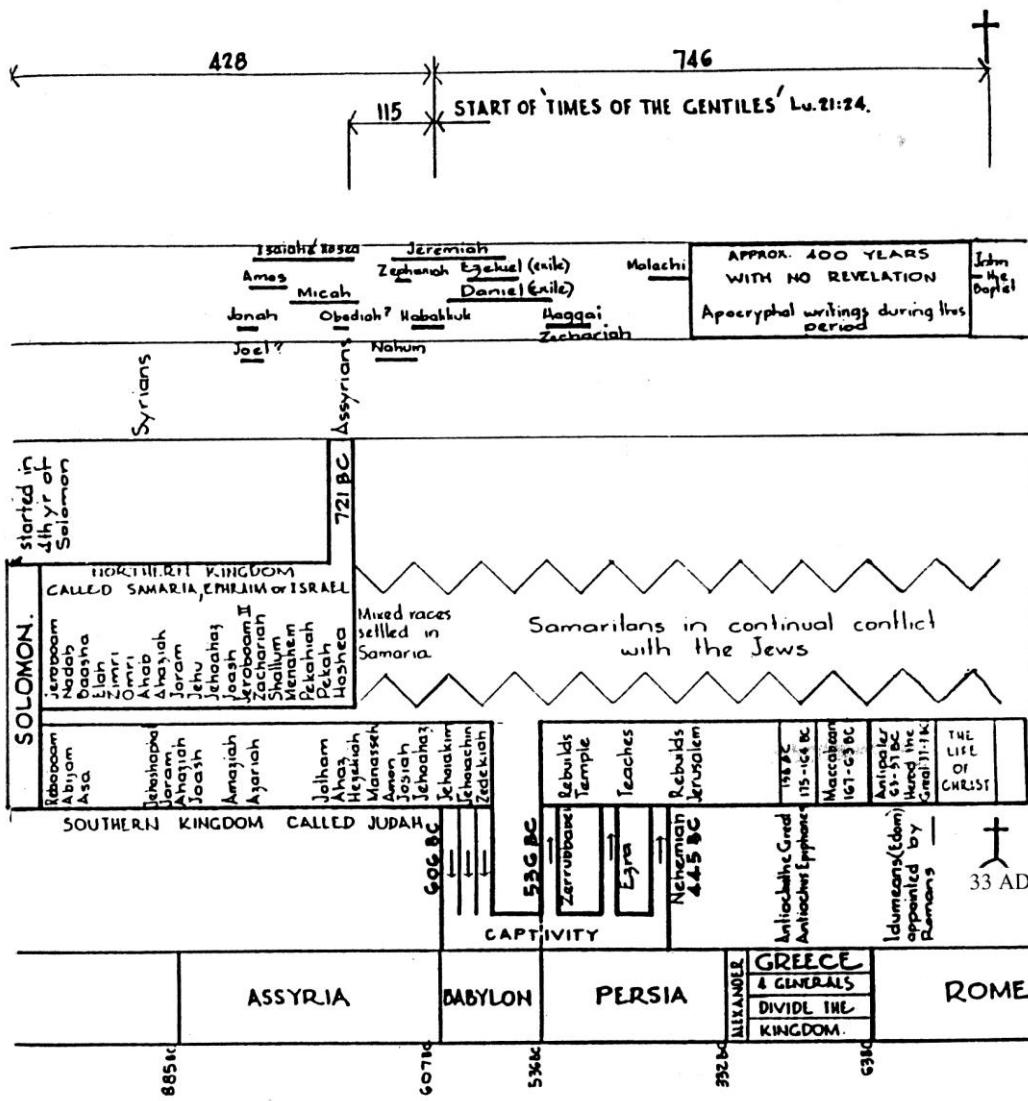
THE EIGHTH DAY



Used by permission 'Bible Light Publishers' Hong Kong.



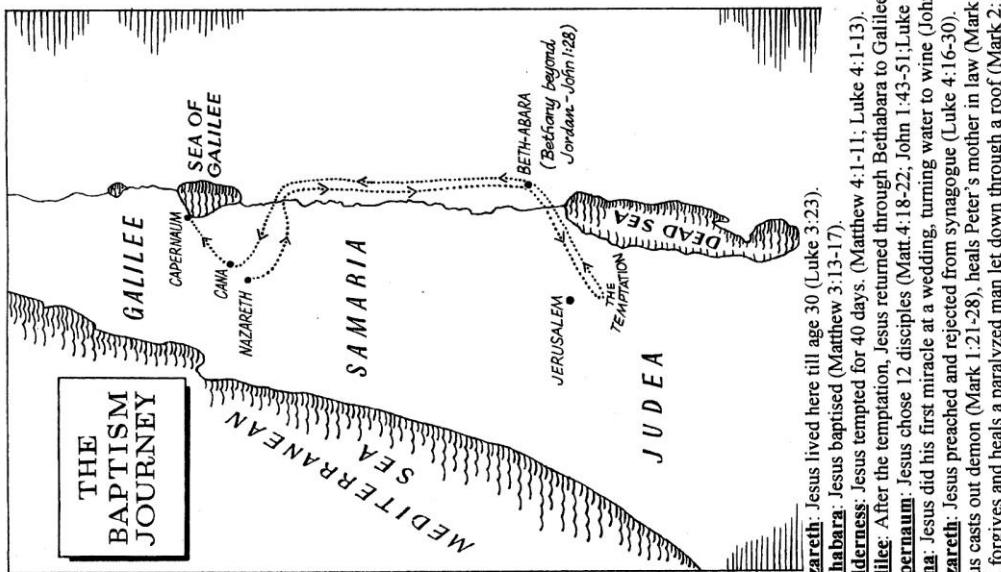
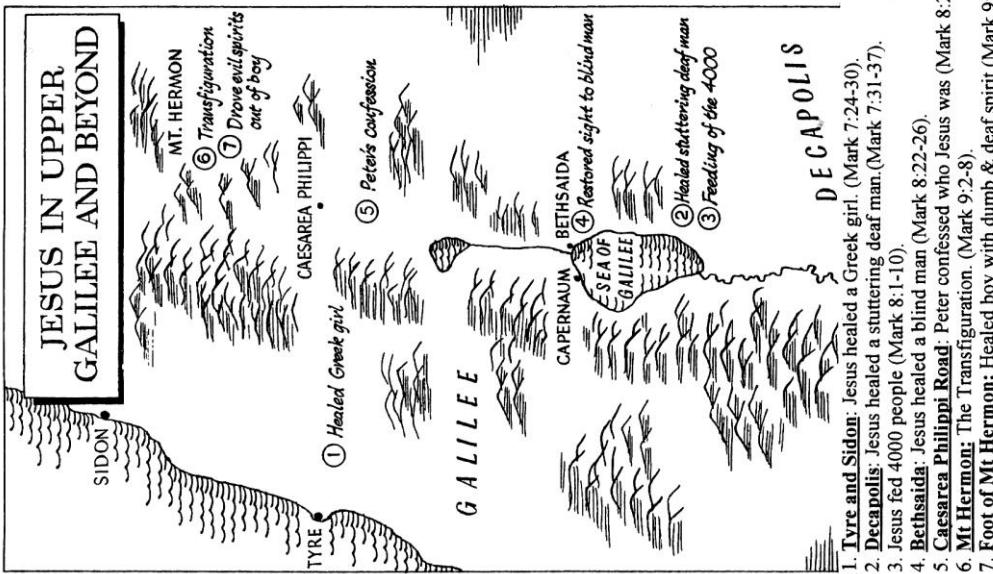
10. HISTORICAL BACKGROUND OF THE OLD TESTAMENT



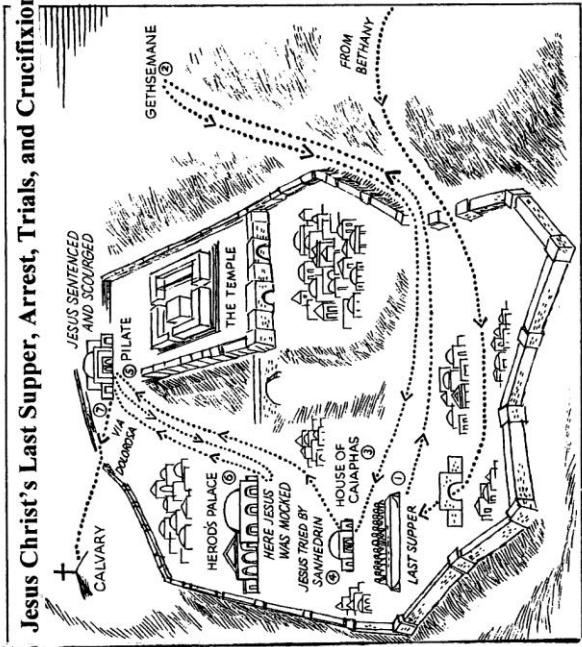
UND TO THE OLD TESTAMENT.

© 1983 J.E.COB

11. MAPS OF JESUS CHRIST and PAUL



Jesus Christ's Last Supper, Arrest, Trials, and Crucifixion.



Jesus' Last Journey to Jerusalem.

Jericho: Jesus heals a blind man. (Luke 18:35-43).

Jericho: Zaccheus repents and Jesus saves him. (Luke 19:1-10).

Bethany: Two disciples bring a colt to Jesus. (Luke 19:28-35).

Bethany: Jesus' triumphal entry as Messiah the Prince. (19:36-44).

Jerusalem: Jesus cleanses the temple of money changers & animal sellers. (v 45-48).

1. The Last Supper in an upper room. (Luke 22:7-23).

2. The Garden of Gethsemane prayer, betrayal and arrest. (Luke 22:39-53).

3. Jesus mocked before Caiphas the High Priest. (22:54-62; Matt 26:57-75).

4. Jesus before the sanhedrin (70 scribes, Pharisees, elders). (Luke 22:66-71).

5. Jesus before Pilate. (Luke 23:1-6).

6. Jesus mocked before Herod and sent to Pilate. (Luke 23:7-12).

7. Jesus before Pilate, scourged & sentenced to die. (Luke 23:13-25; John 18:28-19:16).

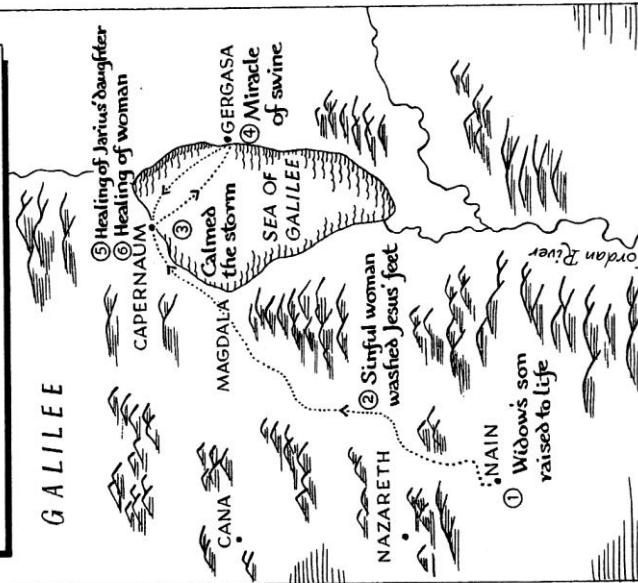
Calvary: Jesus crucified with two thieves. (Luke 23:26-56).

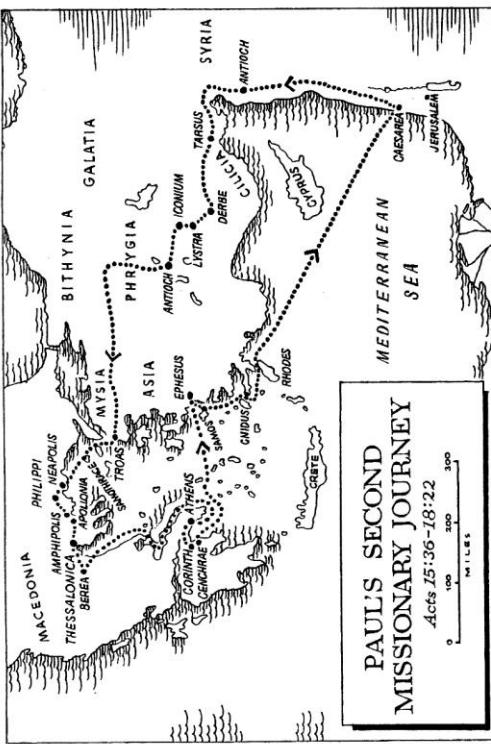
Jesus buried and rose from the dead 3 days later. (Luke 24:1-12).

Jesus appeared 40 days to over 500 believers. (Luke 24:13-50).

Bethany: Jesus ascended from Mt of Olives to heaven. (Luke 24:50-53; Acts 1:1-12).

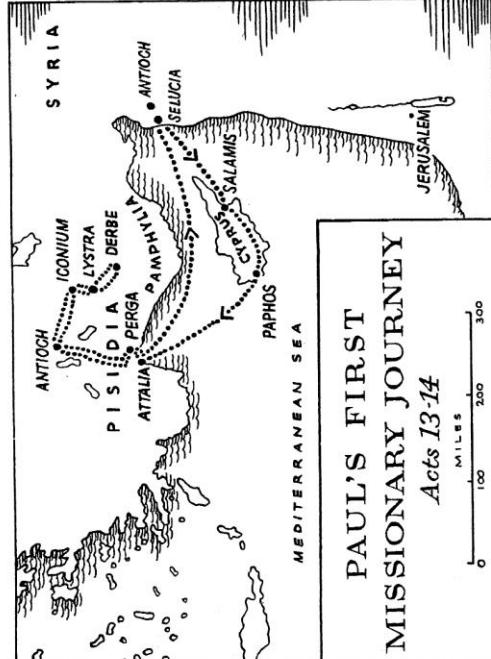
JESUS' MINISTRY AROUND SEA OF GALILEE





PAUL'S FIRST MISSIONARY JOURNEY Acts 13-14

First Missionary Journey (Acts 13:1-14:28).
Miles 0 100 200 300



40

Second Missionary Journey (Acts 15:36-18:22).
Miles 0 100 200 300

Antioch in Syria: Saul, Barnabas, Mark sent on a church planting journey (13:1-3). Seleucia seaport 16 miles from Antioch. Sailed to Cyprus, Barnabas' home. (4:36).

Salamis: on east coast of Cyprus. Preached in Jewish synagogues (13:5). **Paphos** (100 miles SW). Elymas the sorcerer was blinded for trying to turn Sergius Paulus, the Roman Proconsul from Christ. Paul took the lead from here. (13:6-12).

Perga: John Mark left and returned to Jerusalem (13:3). **Antioch in Pisidia:** Paul preached in their synagogue. Next Sabbath, envious Jews contradicted, blasphemed, persecuted & expelled them from the city. (13:14-50).

Iconium: Many Jews/Greeks believed. Paul & Barnabas expelled (13:51-14:5). **Lystra:** Paul healed a cripple. Jews from Antioch and Iconium stoned Paul (19).

Derbe: Paul and Barnabas preached the gospel and taught many (14:20-21). **Lystra, Iconium, Antioch:** Paul and Barnabas retraced their steps exhorting the disciples (21:22) and ordained elders in every church (14:23).

Perga: Paul preached there (25).

Attalia: Paul sailed to Antioch in Syria (26).

Antioch in Syria: Paul & Barnabas told sending church all God did. (14:26-28). **Antioch:** Paul rejoined Paul. Crispus believed. Paul taught here for 18 months. (18:1-17).

Cyrene: (18:19) Paul reasoned with Jews in synagogue. Set sail for Syria (18:19-21). **Caesarea:** (18:22) Paul landed here, greeted the church. Traveled north to Antioch.

Antioch in Syria: Paul and Silas leave to visit the churches Paul started (15:36-41) strengthening churches in Syria and Cilicia.

Derbe, Lystra, Iconium, Antioch: Timothy, a young man, joined up. (16:1-5).

Phrygia, Galatia, Mysia: The Holy Spirit forbade them preaching in Asia. (16:6-8).

Troas: Paul's vision of a man of Macedonia praying, "Come over into Macedonia, and help us." (v.9). The "we" section commences with Luke joining the team.

Samothracia and Neapolis (v.11). **Philippi** (16:12) chief city of Macedonia. Lydia saved and baptized (16:14-15). Paul and Silas beaten and imprisoned for casting demons out of a girl (16:16-24).

Philipian jailer and household saved and baptized (16:25-40).

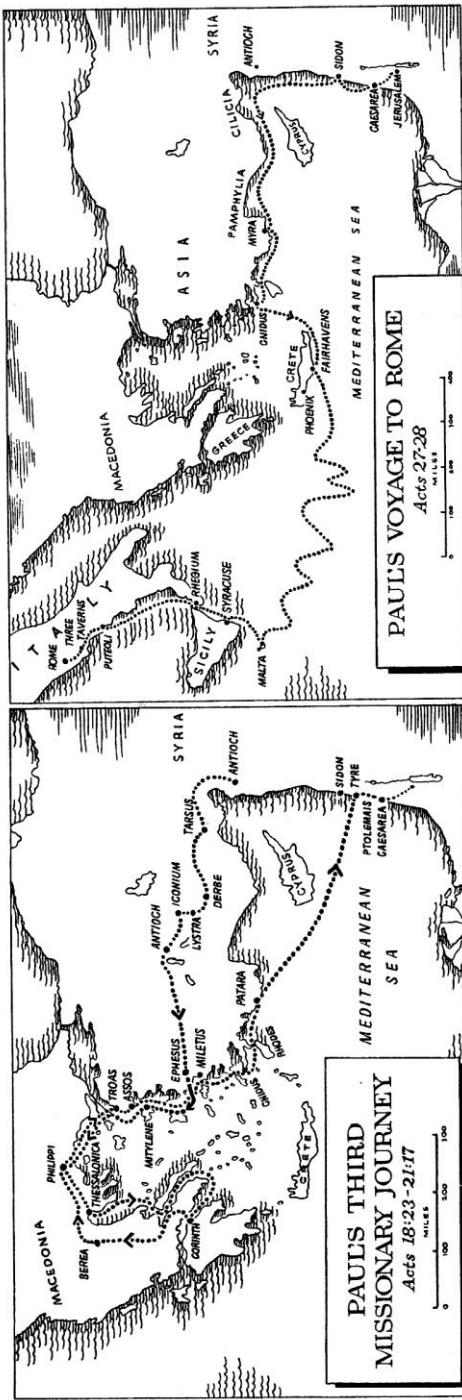
Amphipolis and Apollonia passed through (17:1). **Thessalonica:** (17:1) Paul preached in synagogue for 3 sabbaths despite Jewish riots.

Berea: (17:10) Paul preached in synagogue. Many believed. Thessalonian Jews opposed them. Paul left for Athens. Silas and Timothy remained there. (17:10-14).

Athens: (17:15) Paul disputed & preached on Mars Hill. Some believed (17:15-34).

Corinth: (18:1) Paul found Aquila, Priscilla. He persuaded Jews/Greeks in synagogue. Silas/Timothy rejoin Paul. Crispus believed. Paul taught here for 18 months. (18:1-17).

Ephesus: (18:19) Paul reasoned with Jews in synagogue. Set sail for Syria (18:19-21).



Third Missionary Journey (Acts 18:23-21:17).

Antioch in Syria: Paul departed from Antioch (18:23).

Derbe, Lystra, Iconium, Antioch: Paul revisited, strengthened these churches (18:23). John's disciples believe on (18:24-28). Apollos met and instructed (18:24-28).

Ephesus: (18:24-28) Paul preached in synagogue for 3 months. Vagabond Jews (19:11-20). Silversmith riot (19:23-41). I and II Corinthians written during 2-year stay.

Macedonia: (20:1) Paul sailed for Macedonia. Encouraged churches. (Romans written).

Greece: (20:2) Stayed 3 months, then headed home, passing through Macedonia.

Philippi: (20:6) Stayed here several days, then sailed for Troas.

Irons: (20:6-12) Before Paul left Troas, he preached in upper room. Eutychus fell out.

Assos, Mitylene, Samos, Troygium, Miletus: (20:13-15).

Miletus: (20:15-38) Paul sent for the Ephesian elders and preached to them (20:17-38).

Cos, Rhodes, Patara, Cyprus: (21:1-3).

Tyre: (21:4-7) Stayed 7 days.

Ptolemais: (21:7) Greeted the believers and stayed one day.

Caesarea: (21:7-14) Stayed Philip. Agabus prophesied Paul's binding at Jerusalem.

Jerusalem: (21:15-40) Paul reported to the Jerusalem church elders. Paul arrested.

Paul's Voyage to Rome (Acts 27:28).

Caesarea: (23:23-35) Paul taken from Jerusalem to Caesarea by 470 soldiers.

Sidon: (27:1-3) Ship stopped here. Julius (centurion) allowed Paul to visit his friends.

Myra: (27:5-6) Ship terminated here. They boarded another ship sailing to Italy.

Fair Havens: Island of Crete: (27:8-44) Paul warned voyage would end in disaster.

Malta: (28:1-7) Shipwrecked on Malta. After 3 months, they left in another ship.

Syracuse: on Sicily (28:12). They stayed for 3 days.

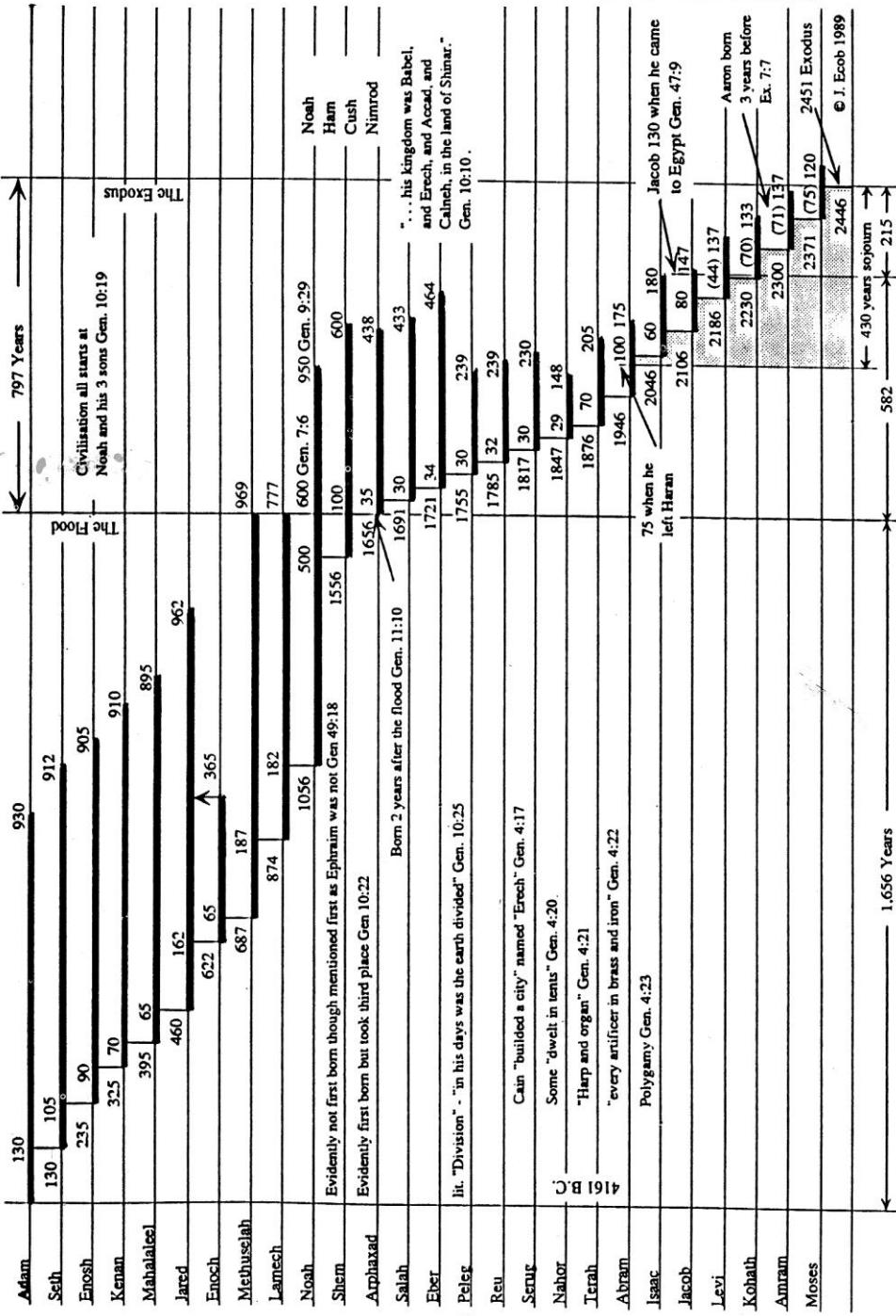
Rhegium: was the first port on Italy's mainland. They stayed one day (28:13).

Puteoli: (28:13, 14). Paul was permitted to stay 7 days with some Christians.

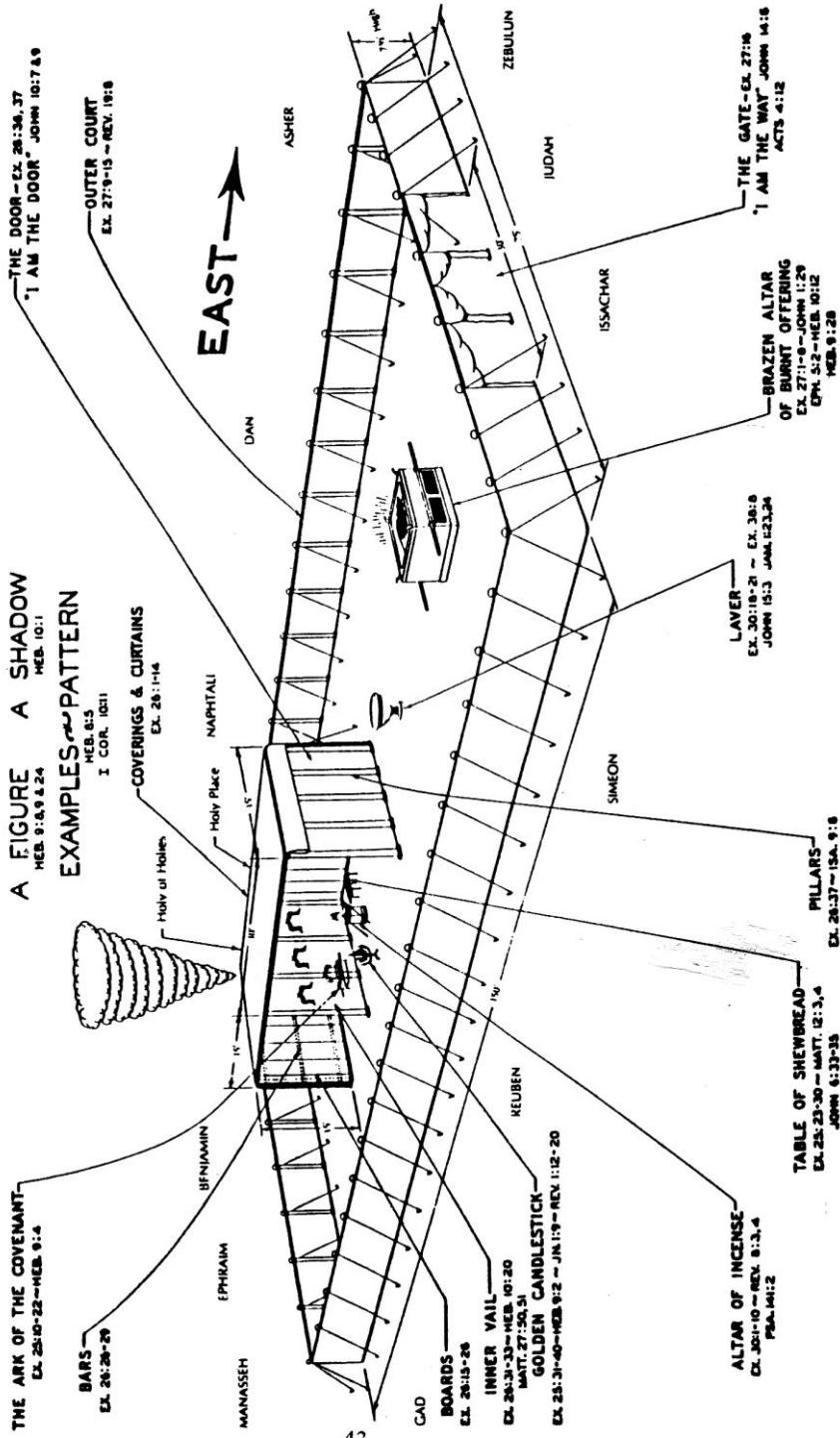
Rome: (28:15-31) Paul stayed for 2 years, preached, sent letters. Executed by Nero.

12. MISCELLANEOUS CHARTS and TABLES

Genealogy From Adam to the Exodus



► THE TABERNACLE ►



These 200 Omissions are in the Greek Textus

Griesbach, Lachmann, Tischendorf, Tregelles, Alford, Wordsworth, Westcott and Hort; in foot-notes omissions in our modern Bibles. Words omitted, in brackets, parentheses, or italics are counted as not occur in your Bible and be surprised. *Interlinear Greek Textus Receptus.* . . . Postpaid \$11.95

MATTHEW

- 1:25 – (FIRSTBORN) is out. Speaking of the Lord Jesus.
5:44 – (BLESS THEM THAT CURSE YOU) is out.
6:13 – (KINGDOM, POWER, GLORY) is out.
6:27 – (STATUTE) is changed to span of life.
6:33 – (OF GOD) is out. Referring to the kingdom–
8:29 – (JESUS) is out. As Son of God.
9:13 – (TO REPENTENCE) is out. Calling sinners–
12:35 – (OF THE HEART) is out. Good treasure–
12:47 – (VERSE IS OUT) About Christ's mother.
13:51 – (JESUS SAID UNTO THEM and LORD) is out.
15:8 – (DRAWETH UNTO ME WITH THEIR MOUTH) is out.
16:3 – (O YE HYPOCRITES) is out.
16:20 – (JESUS) is out.
17:21 – (VERSE IS OUT) About prayer and fasting.
18:11 – (VERSE IS OUT) Tells Jesus came to save.
19:9 – (LAST 11 WORDS ARE OUT) About adultery.
19:17 – (GOD) is out. None good but (God)
20:7 – (WHATSOEVER IS RIGHT RECEIVE) is out.
20:16 – (MANY BE CALLED BUT FEW CHOSEN) is out.
20:22 – (BAPTIZED WITH CHRIST'S BAPTISM) is out.
21:44 – (VERSE IS OUT) About Christ the stone.
23:14 – (VERSE IS OUT) Wo Scribes and hypocrites.
25:13 – (WHEREIN THE SON OF MAN COMETH) is out.
27:35 – (FULFILLED SPOKEN BY THE PROPHET) is out.
27:54 – (THE SON OF GOD) is a son of God.
28:2 – (FROM THE DOOR) is out.
28:9 – (THEY WENT TO TELL HIS DISCIPLES) is out.

MARK

- 1:1 – (SON OF GOD) is out in Williams, Goodspeed, Panin, Nestle, New World, Westcott & Hort.
1:14 – (OF THE KINGDOM) is out. Jesus gospel–
1:31 – (IMMEDIATELY) is out. The fever left–
2:17 – (TO REPENTENCE) is out. Call sinners–
6:11 – (MORE TOLERABLE FOR SODOM & GOMORRAH) is out.
6:16 – (FROM THE DEAD) is out. John is risen–
6:33 – (HIM) is changed to them.
7:8 – (WASHING OF POTS AND CUPS) is out.
7:16 – (VERSE IS OUT) About having an ear to hear.
9:24 – (LORD) is out. A believer called Him Lord.
9:42 – (IN ME) is out. Little ones that believe–
9:44 – (VERSE IS OUT) About fire not quenched.
9:46 – (VERSE IS OUT) Where worm dieth not.
9:49 – (EVERY SACRIFICE SHALL BE SALTED) is out.
0:21 – (TAKE UP THE CROSS) is out. Jesus said–
0:24 – (FOR THEM THAT TRUST IN RICHES) is out.
11:10 – (IN THE NAME OF THE LORD) is out.
11:26 – (VERSE IS OUT) If ye do not forgive, etc.
13:14 – (SPOKEN BY DANIEL THE PROPHET) is out.
13:33 – (AND PRAY) is out, or in italics.
14:68 – (AND THE COCK CREW) is out.
15:28 – (VERSE IS OUT) Scripture was fulfilled, etc.
15:39 – (THE SON OF GOD) is a son of God.
16:9–20 (12 VERSES ARE OUT) in some Bibles.

LUKE

- 1:28 – (BLESSED ART THOU AMONG WOMEN) is out.
2:33 – (JOSEPH) is changed to father.
2:43 – (JOSEPH AND HIS MOTHER) is changed to parents.
4:4 – (BUT BY EVERY WORD OF GOD) is out.
4:8 – (GET THEE BEHIND ME SATAN) is out.
4:41 – (THE CHRIST) is out. The Son of God.
6:48 – (FOUNDED UPON A ROCK) is well built.
7:31 – (AND THE LORD SAID) is out.
9:54 – (EVEN AS ELIJAH DID) is out.

LUKE Continued

- 9:55 – (YE KNOW NOT WHAT MANNER OF SPIRIT) is out.
9:56 – (SON OF MAN IS COME TO SAVE LIVES) is out.
11:2–4 (MUCH IS OMITTED FROM THE LORD'S PRAYER) is out.
11:29 – (THE PROPHET) is out. About Jonah.
17:36 – (VERSE IS OUT) One taken, another left.
21:4 – (CAST IN UNTO THE OFFERINGS OF GOD) is out.
22:20 – (VERSE IS OUT) Out in NEB. and RSV.
22:31 – (AND THE LORD SAID) is out.
22:64 – (THEY STRUCK HIM ON THE FACE) is out.
23:17 – (WHOLE VERSE IS OUT) in many Bibles.
23:38 – (LETTERS OF GREEK, LATIN, HEBREW) is out.
23:42 – (LORD) is out. Remember me, etc.
23:45 – (SUN WAS ECLIPSED) in Moffatt and NEB.
24:3 – (OF THE LORD JESUS) is out.
24:6 – (HE IS HERE, BUT IS RISEN) is out.
24:12 – (VERSE IS OUT) Peter's testimony.
24:40 – (VERSE IS OUT) Christ showed them hands, feet.
24:49 – (OF JERUSALEM) is out.
24:51 – (CARRIED UP INTO HEAVEN) is out.

JOHN

- 1:14 – (BEGOTTEN) is out in 1:18, 3:16, 3:18.
1:27 – (PREFERRED BEFORE ME) is out. Jesus is–
3:13 – (WHICH IS IN HEAVEN) is out.
3:15 – (SHOULD NOT PERISH) is out.
4:42 – (THE CHRIST) is out.
5:3 – (WAITING FOR MOVING OF THE WATER) is out.
5:4 – (VERSE IS OUT) Pool of Bethesda.
6:47 – (ON ME) is out. He that believes–
6:69 – (THAT CHRIST THE SON) is out.
7:53 – (TO 8:11) is out, in brackets or italics.
8:16 – (FATHER) is out. Changed to He.
9:35 – (SON OF GOD) is out. Is Son of Man.
11:41 – (WHERE THE DEAD WAS LAID) is out.
16:16 – (BECAUSE I GO TO THE FATHER) is out.
17:12 – (IN THE WORLD) is out.
20:29 – (THOMAS) is out.

ACTS

- 2:30 – (ACCORDING TO FLESH RAISE UP CHRIST) is out.
7:30 – (OF THE LORD) is out. An angel–
7:37 – (HIM SHALL YE HEAR) is out. Christ–
8:37 – (VERSE IS OUT) or in brackets, or italics.
9:5–6 (MUCH IS OMITTED) Concerning God's will.
10:6 – (WHAT THOU OUGHTEST TO DO) More is out.
15:18 – (KNOWN UNTO GOD HIS WORKS) More is out.
16:31 – (CHRIST) is out.
17:26 – (BLOOD) is out.
20:25 – (OF GOD) is out. The kingdom–
20:32 – (BRETHREN) is out.
23:9 – (LET US NOT FIGHT AGAINST GOD) is out.
24:6–8 (MUCH IS OMITTED) or in brackets or italics.
24:15 – (OF THE DEAD) is out. Resurrection–
28:16 – (HALF OF VERSE IS OUT) in italics or brackets.
28:29 – (VERSE IS OUT) in italics or brackets.

ROMANS

- 1:16 – (OF CHRIST) is out or in italics, brackets.
1:29 – (FORNICATION) is out.
5:2 – (BY FAITH) out in Moffatt, RSV, and NEB.
8:1 – (LAST 10 WORDS ARE OUT) or in italics.
9:28 – (IN RIGHTEOUSNESS) is out.
10:15 – (OF PEACE) is out. Gospel of–
10:17 – (OF GOD) is out. Christ is substituted.
11:6 – (LAST 18 WORDS ARE OMITTED)

Receptus from which the King James Bible Came

and translations, have changed the Greek Textus Receptus in about 6,000 places. This is why we have so many authentic according to BRAIN-WASHED modern scholarship. With a red pencil, mark all these omissions which

ROMANS Continued

- 13:9 . – (SHALL NOT BEAR FALSE WITNESS) is out.
14:6 . – (15 WORDS ARE OUT) Regarding the day.
14:21 – (OFFENDED, MADE WEAK) is out.
15:29 – (OF THE GOSPEL) is out.
16:24 – (WHOLE VERSE IS OUT) in italics or brackets.

1 CORINTHIANS

- 1:14 – (I THANK GOD) is out in many Bibles.
5:7 – (FOR US) is out. Christ sacrificed–
6:20 – (LAST 7 WORDS ARE OUT) Your spirit, etc.
7:5 – (FASTING) is out. Joined with prayer.
7:39 – (BY THE LAW) is out. The wife is bound–
10:28 – (THE EARTH IS THE LORD'S) is out, and more.
11:24 – (TAKE EAT) is out. This is my body–
11:29 – (LORD'S) is out, referring to the body.
15:47 – (THE LORD) is out. Lord from heaven.
16:22 – (JESUS CHRIST) is out.
16:23 – (CHRIST) is out.

2 CORINTHIANS

- 4:6 – (JESUS) is out.
4:10 – (THE LORD) is out.
5:18 – (JESUS) is out, or in italics.
11:31 – (CHRIST) is out, or in italics.

GALATIANS

- 1:15 – (GOD) is out.
3:1 – (THAT YE SHOULD NOT OBEY TRUTH) is out.
3:17 – (IN CHRIST) is out.
4:7 – (THROUGH CHRIST) is out.
6:15 – (IN CHRIST JESUS) is out.
6:17 – (LORD) is out.

EPHESIANS

- 3:9 – (BY JESUS CHRIST) is out. God created–
3:14 – (OF OUR LORD JESUS CHRIST) is out.
5:30 – (OF HIS FLESH AND OF HIS BONES) is out.
6:1 – (IN THE LORD) is out. Obey parents–
6:10 – (MY BRETHREN) is out.

PHILIPPIANS

- 3:16 – (LET US MIND THE SAME THING) is out.

COLOSSIANS

- 1:2 – (THE LORD JESUS CHRIST) is out.
1:14 – (THROUGH HIS BLOOD) is out, or in italics.
1:28 – (JESUS) is out.
2:11 – (OF THE SINS OF) is out.
3:6 – (SONS OF DISOBEDIENCE) is out.

1 THESSALONIANS

- 1:1 – (FROM GOD OUR FATHER AND LORD JESUS) is out.
2:19 – (CHRIST) is out.
3:11 – (CHRIST) is out, or in italics.
3:13 – (CHRIST) is out, or in italics.

2 THESSALONIANS

- 1:8 – (CHRIST) is out, or in italics.

1 TIMOTHY

- 1:17 – (WISE) is out. The only wise God.
2:7 – (IN CHRIST) is out, or in italics.
3:16 – (GOD) is out. Manifest in the flesh.
4:12 – (IN SPIRIT) is out.
6:5 – (FROM SUCH WITHDRAW THYSELF) is out.

2 TIMOTHY

- 1:11 – (OF THE GENTILES) is out.
4:1 – (LORD) is out.
4:22 – (JESUS CHRIST) is out, or in italics.

TITUS

- 1:4 – (THE LORD) is out, or in italics.

PHILEMON

- 1:6 – (JESUS) is out.
1:12 – (RECEIVE HIM) is out.

HEBREWS

- 1:3 – (BY HIMSELF) is out. Purged our sins–
2:7 – (SET HIM OVER THE WORKS OF THY HANDS) is out.
3:1 – (CHRIST) is out.
7:21 – (AFTER ORDER OF MELCHISEDEC) is out.
10:30 – (SAITH THE LORD) is out.
10:34 – (IN HEAVEN) is out.
11:11 – (WAS DELIVERED OF A CHILD) is out. Sarah–

JAMES

- 5:16 – (FAULTS) is changed to sins. (Wrong Greek text.)

1 PETER

- 1:22 – (THROUGH THE SPIRIT) is out.
4:1 – (FOR US) is out. Christ suffered–
4:14 – (LAST 15 WORDS ARE OUT) or in italics.
5:10 – (JESUS) is out, or in italics.
5:11 – (GLORY AND DOMINION) is out of some Bibles.

2 PETER

- 2:17 – (FOREVER) is out, or in italics.
3:9 – (US IS CHANGED TO YOU) Destroys meaning.

1 JOHN

- 1:7 – (CHRIST) is out.
2:7 – (FROM THE BEGINNING) is out.
4:3 – (CHRIST IS COME IN THE FLESH) is out.
4:9 – (BEGOTTEN) is out in some versions.
4:19 – (HIM) is out, or in italics. We love–
5:7-8 – (MANY WORDS ARE OUT OR CHANGED)
5:13 – (LAST 13 WORDS ARE OUT)

JUDE

- 1:25 – (WISE) is out. Referring to God.

REVELATION

- 1:8 – (THE BEGINNING AND THE END) is out.
1:11 – (TEN WORDS ARE OUT) Alpha and Omega, etc.
2:13 – (THY WORKS) is out.
5:14 – (HIM THAT LIVETH FOREVER AND EVER) is out.
6:1 – (AND SEE) is out in 3, 5, 7 also.
8:13 – (ANGEL IS EAGLE) Greek text says "angel."
11:17 – (AND ART TO COME) is out.
12:12 – (INHABITERS OF) is out. The earth.
12:17 – (CHRIST) is out.
14:5 – (BEFORE THE THRONE OF GOD) is out.
16:17 – (OF HEAVEN) is out.
20:9 – (GOD OUT OF) is out. Fire came from–
20:12 – (GOD IS CHANGED TO THRONE)
21:24 – (OF THEM WHICH ARE SAVED) is out. Nations–

THE NEW INTERNATIONAL VERSION OMITS THE LORD JESUS CHRIST.

In the New International Version, references to "Lord" are omitted 39 times, "Jesus" 87 times and "Christ" 52 times.

These passages are shown below. The word's in bold are also omitted from the NIV.

Matthew	13:51 They say unto him, Yea, LORD 28:6 Come, see the place where the LORD lay.
Mark	9:24 and said with tears, LORD , I believe ; 11:10 that cometh in the name of the LORD .
Luke	7:31 the LORD said, Whereunto then shall I liken the men of this generation ? 9:57 a certain man said unto him, LORD , I will follow thee. . 17:6 the LORD said, If ye had faith as a grain of mustard seed. . 22:31 the LORD said, Simon, Simon, behold... . 23:42 Jesus, LORD , remember me
John	4:1 When therefore the LORD knew how the Pharisees 6:34 LORD , evermore give us this bread . 8:11 She said, No man, LORD .
Acts	9:36 Who is he, LORD that I might believe on him ? 7:30 an angel of the LORD in a flame of fire in a bush. 7:37 A prophet shall the LORD your God raise up. . 9:5 the LORD said, I am Jesus whom thou persecutest: it is hard for thee to kick against the pricks. 9:6 and he trembling and astonished said, LORD , what wilt thou have me to do? and the LORD said unto him... 10:48 he commanded them to be baptized in the name of the LORD .
Romans	22:16 calling on the name of the LORD 1:3 Concerning his Son Jesus Christ our LORD 6:11 but alive unto God through Jesus Christ our LORD , 14:6 and he that regardeth not the day, to the LORD he doth not regard it . 16:24 The grace of our LORD Jesus Christ be with you all. Amen
I Corinthians	10:28 for the earth is the LORD 's and the fullness thereof. 15:47 the second man is the LORD from heaven.

II Corinthians	4:10	in the body the dying of the LORD Jesus.
Galatians	6:17	I bear in my body the marks of the LORD Jesus.
Ephesians	3:14	I bow my knees unto the Father of our LORD Jesus Christ.
Colossians	1:2	from God our Father and the LORD Jesus Christ.
I Thessalonians	1:1	from God our Father, and the LORD Jesus Christ.
I Timothy	1:1	and LORD Jesus Christ .
	5:21	I charge thee before God, and the LORD Jesus Christ
II Timothy	4:1	I charge thee therefore before God, and the LORD Jesus Christ.
Titus	1:4	Grace, mercy and peace, from God the Father and the LORD Jesus Christ our Saviour .
Hebrews	10:30	I will recompense, saith the LORD .
II John	3	from God the Father, and from the LORD Jesus Christ.
Jude	4	denying the only Lord God, and our LORD Jesus Christ.
Revelations	16:5	Thou art righteous, LORD
	19:1	power, unto the LORD our God.

In John 20:13, Mary was weeping and the angel said, "woman why weapest thou?" She replied, "because they have TAKEN AWAY MY **LORD**." How much more would she weep today, if she was to look at the modern translations, which delete the **LORD** 39 times. We should weep also.

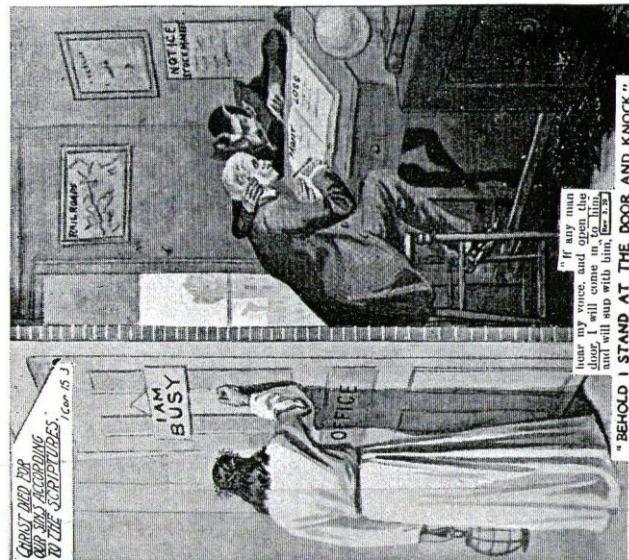
References to "**CHRIST**" are omitted 52 times, as in these examples:

Matthew	23:8	one is your Master, even CHRIST
Luke	4:41	devils came out....saying, thou art CHRIST the Son of God.
John	4:42	this is indeed the CHRIST , the Saviour of the world.
	6:69	we believe and are sure that thou art that CHRIST , the Son of the living God.
Acts	2:30	he would raise up CHRIST to sit on his throne.
	4:26	against the Lord, and against his CHRIST
	8:37	I believe that Jesus CHRIST is the Son of God.
	9:20	he preached CHRIST in the synagogues.
	15:11	through the grace of our Lord Jesus CHRIST we shall be saved..
	16:31	Believe on the Lord Jesus CHRIST and thou shalt be saved.
	19:4	that is, on CHRIST Jesus.
Romans	20:21	faith toward our Lord Jesus CHRIST
	1:3	Concerning his Son Jesus CHRIST our Lord.
	1:16	I am not ashamed of the gospel of CHRIST
	14:10	We shall all stand before the judgment seat of CHRIST
	16:20	The grace of our Lord Jesus CHRIST be with you.
	16:24	The grace of our Lord Jesus CHRIST be with you all.

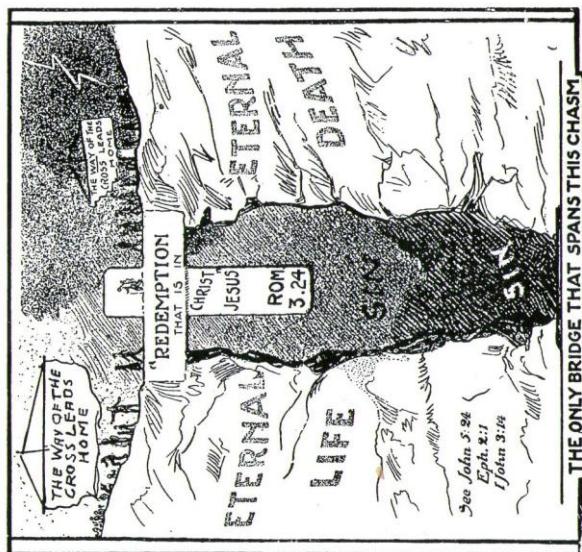
- I Corinthians 5:4 In the name of our Lord Jesus CHRIST
 5:4 with the power of our Lord Jesus CHRIST
 9:1 have I not seen Jesus CHRIST our Lord.
 10:9 Neither let us tempt CHRIST
 16:22 If any man love not the Lord Jesus CHRIST let him be Anathema.
- 16:23 The grace of our Lord Jesus CHRIST be with you.
- II Corinthians 11:31 The God and Father of our Lord Jesus CHRIST
- Galatians 3:17 confirmed before of God in CHRIST
 4:7 an heir of God through CHRIST
 6:15 for in CHRIST Jesus neither circumcision.
- Ephesians 3:9 who created all things by Jesus CHRIST
 3:14 Father of our Lord Jesus CHRIST
- Philippians 4:13 I can do all things through CHRIST which strengtheneth me.
- Colossians 1:2 from God our Father and the Lord Jesus CHRIST
 3:13 even as CHRIST forgave you,
- I Thessalonians 1:1 from God our Father, and the Lord Jesus CHRIST
 2:19 even ye in the presence of our Lord Jesus CHRIST at his coming?
 3:11 and our Lord Jesus CHRIST direct our way unto you.
 3:13 at the coming of our Lord Jesus CHRIST with all his saints.
- II Thessalonians 1:8 that obey not the gospel of our Lord Jesus CHRIST
- I Timothy 1:12 That the name of our Lord Jesus CHRIST may be glorified in you,
 2:2 That the day of CHRIST is at hand.
 II Timothy 2:7 I speak the truth in CHRIST and lie not;
 2:19 Let every one that nameth the name of CHRIST depart from iniquity.
- Hebrews 4:22 The Lord Jesus CHRIST be with thy spirit.
 3:1 Consider the Apostle and High Priest of our profession,
 CHRIST Jesus.
- I John 1:7 the blood of Jesus CHRIST his son, cleanseth us from all sin.
 4:3 every spirit that confesseth not that Jesus CHRIST is come in the flesh, is....
- II John 9 He that abideth in the doctrine of CHRIST he hath...
- Revelations 1:9 patience of Jesus CHRIST ...and for the testimony of Jesus CHRIST
- 12:17 have the testimony of Jesus CHRIST
 22:21 The grace of our Lord Jesus CHRIST be with you all. Amen
- I Corinthians 15:23 they that are CHRIST'S at his coming.
- II Corinthians 10:7 as he is CHRIST'S, even so are we Christ's.

13. SOME CHALLENGING THOUGHTS

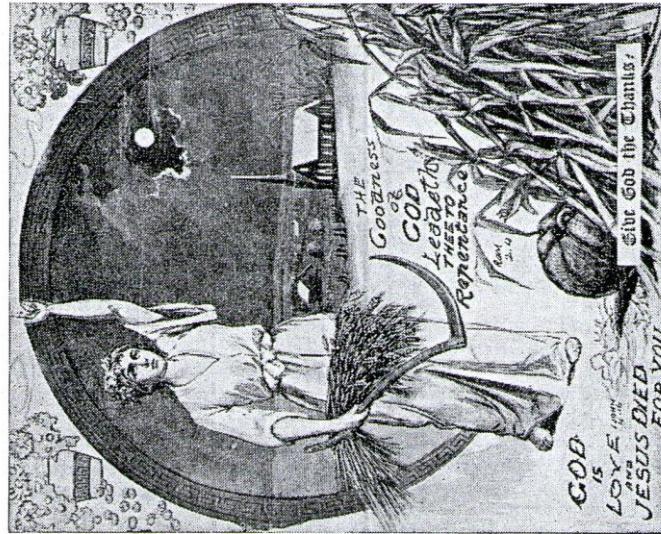
CHRIST OR SATAN?



A WONDERFUL BRIDGE.

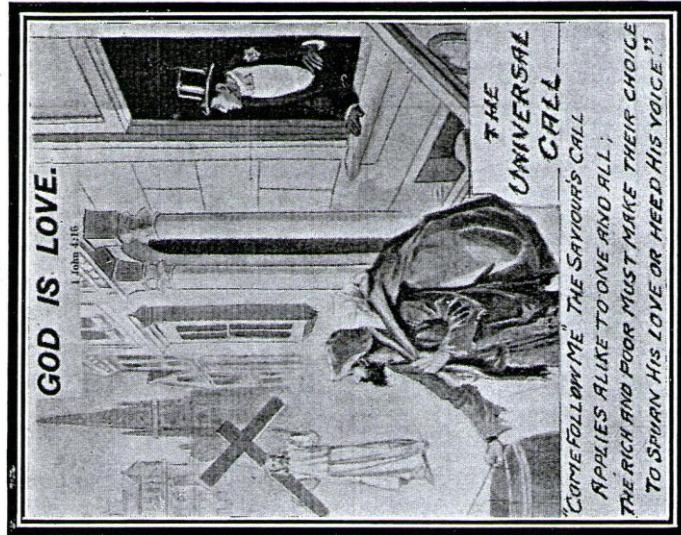


RETROSPECT.



"Thou shalt remember all the way which the Lord thy God led thee."—Deuteronomy 8: 2.

REST FOR THE WEARY.

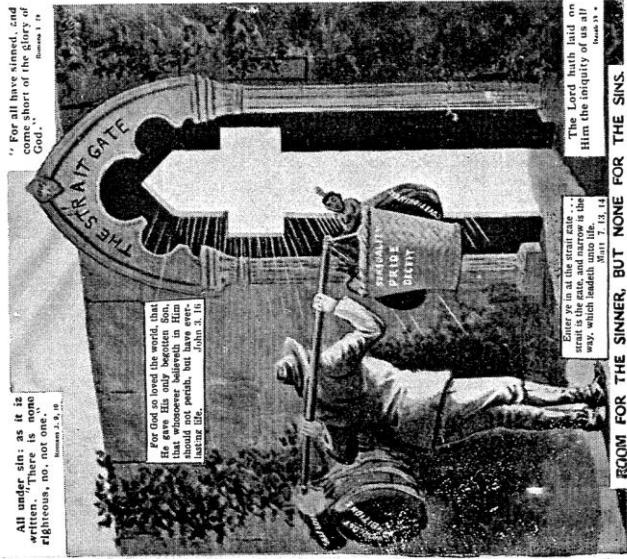


LIVING WATER.



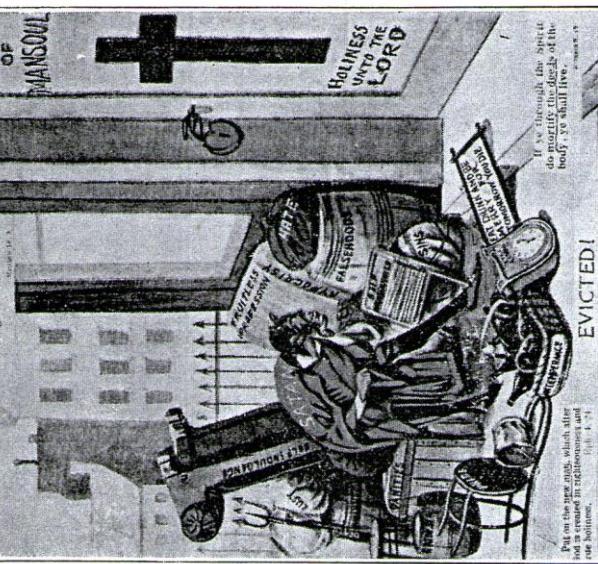
HEAVEN OR HELL?

AND THE WAY TO GET THERE.



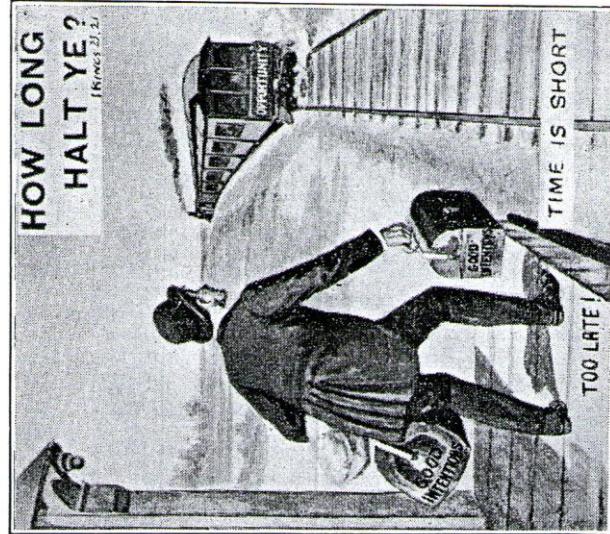
The Lord hath laid on me the sins of this people, and nations; but he will not lay upon me the iniquity of it, which leadeth unto life. Matt 7: 13, 14.

NOTHING BUT LEAVES.



When the life can be symbolised as a figtree bearing 'nothing but leaves' the devil is in occupation of man's soul. But Satan and all his works must be evicted when Christ comes to dwell there.

THE LOST OPPORTUNITY.

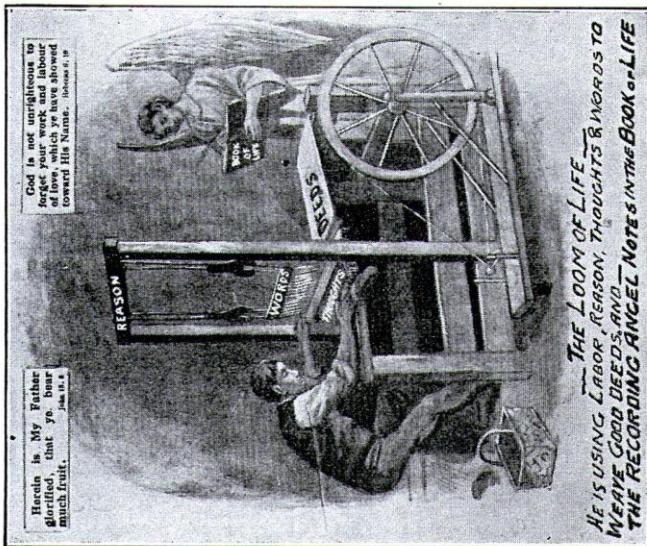


HOW LONG
HALT YE?
1 Kings 21.2

TIME IS SHORT
TOO LATE!

THE LOOM OF LIFE.

CURSE OF MEROZ.
Judges 5:23



PROSPECT.

A NEW YEAR'S ADDRESS.

The Two Plans—Which is Yours for the New Year?



"Thy plans, O Lord, are better far
Than all our best contrivings are.
The future days we cannot see
Are all, we know, ordained by Thee;
And we have but to take Thy hand
And go the way that Thou hast planned."

IN HIS STEPS OR WHAT WOULD JESUS DO?

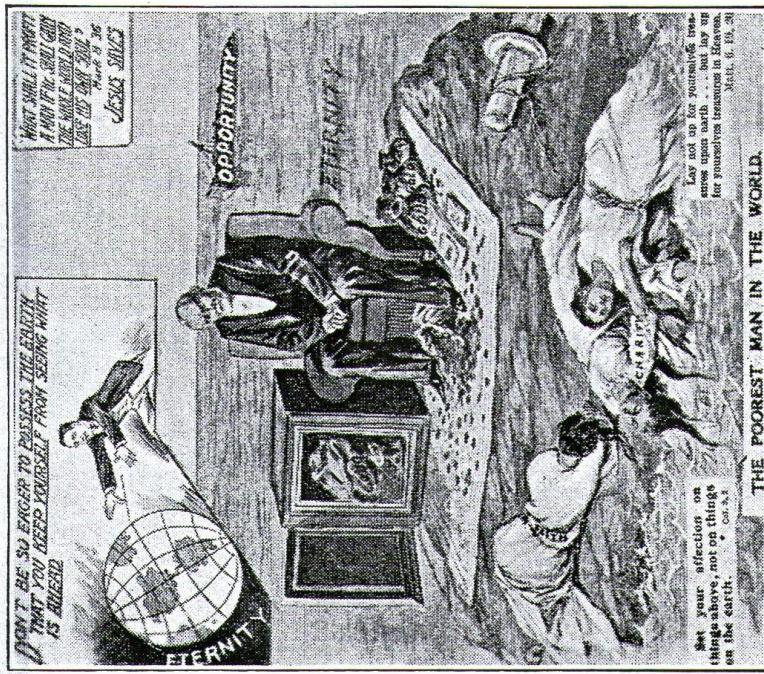


"Christ also suffered for us, leaving us an example that we should follow His steps."—1 Pet. 2: 21.



THE RICHEST MAN IN THE WORLD

"I know thy poverty, but thou art rich" (Rev. 3: 9).
"Having nothing, yet possessing all things" (2 Cor. 6: 10).

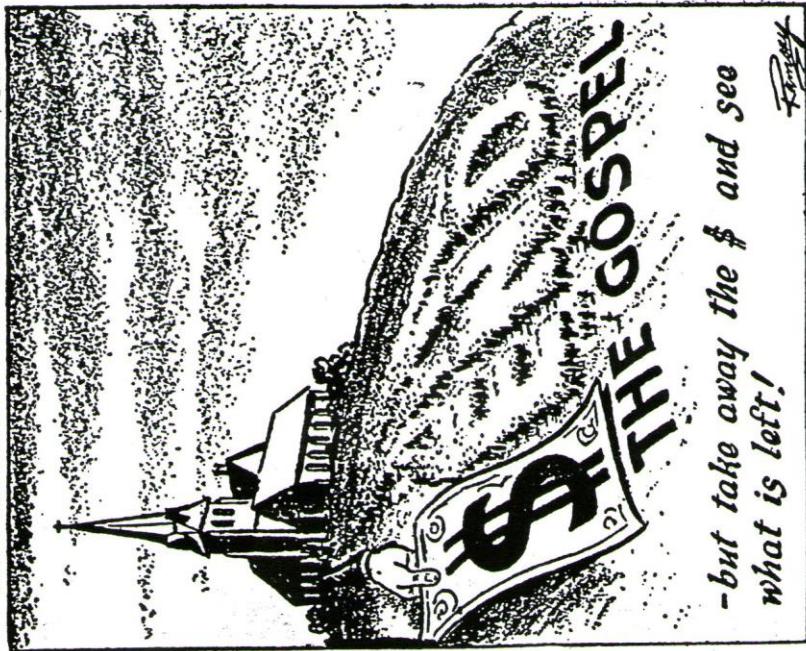


THE POOREST MAN IN THE WORLD

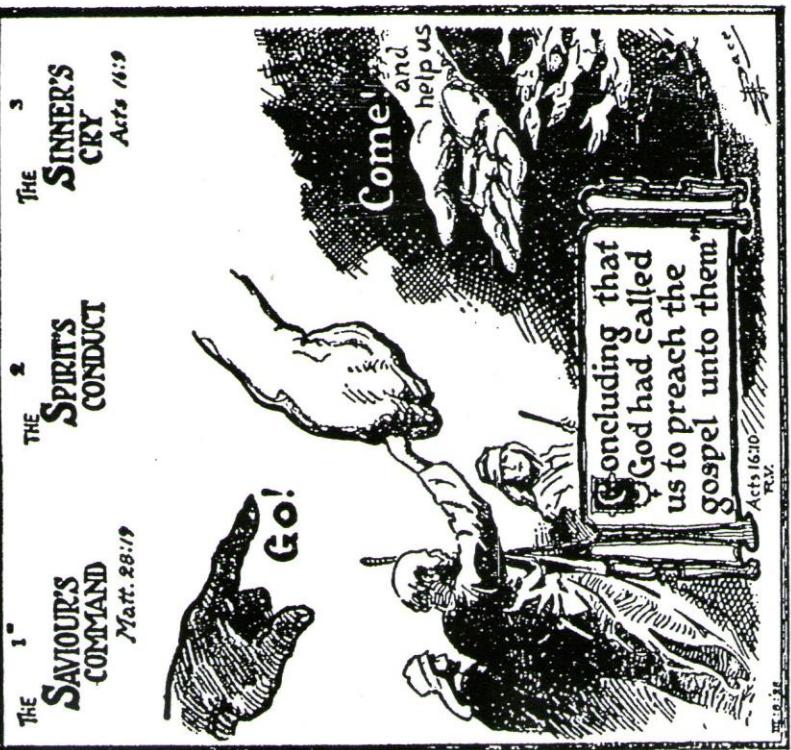
The artist responsible for the illustration on the left has given us a speaking picture of the end of a man whose life has been spent in making and hoarding up riches. His opportunities, symbolised by the wreck, are gone for ever; to him Faith, Hope and Love are dead, and he is about to drift—a lost soul—on the ocean of eternity. The inset in the upper left-hand corner seems to tell us the reason why—the world and its pleasures have so filled his life that he did not see and prepare for the endless existence beyond the grave.

MAMMON.

THE MISSION OF THE CHURCH

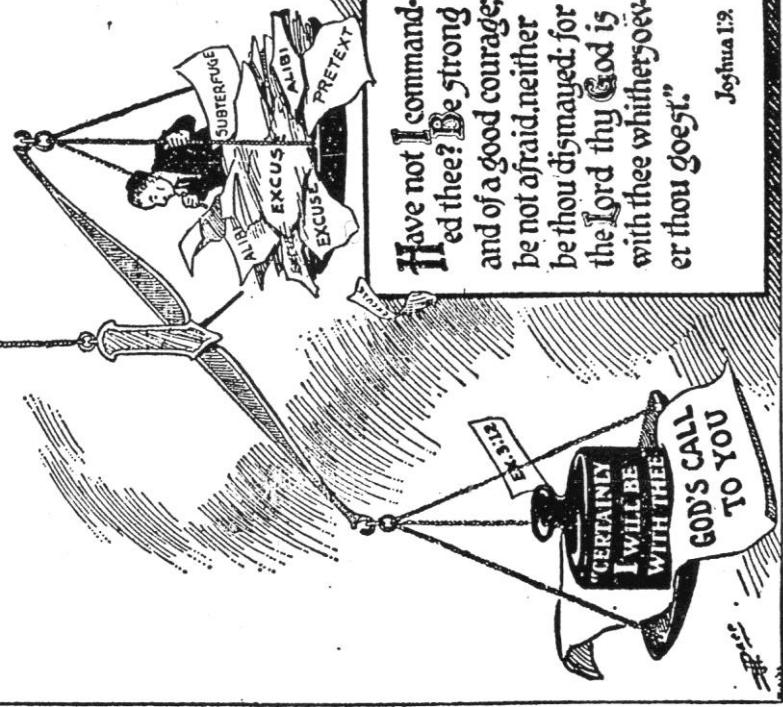


Used by Permission.



THE THREE ELEMENTS OF A MISSIONARY CALL

IT OUTWEIGHS EVERY OTHER CONSIDERATION

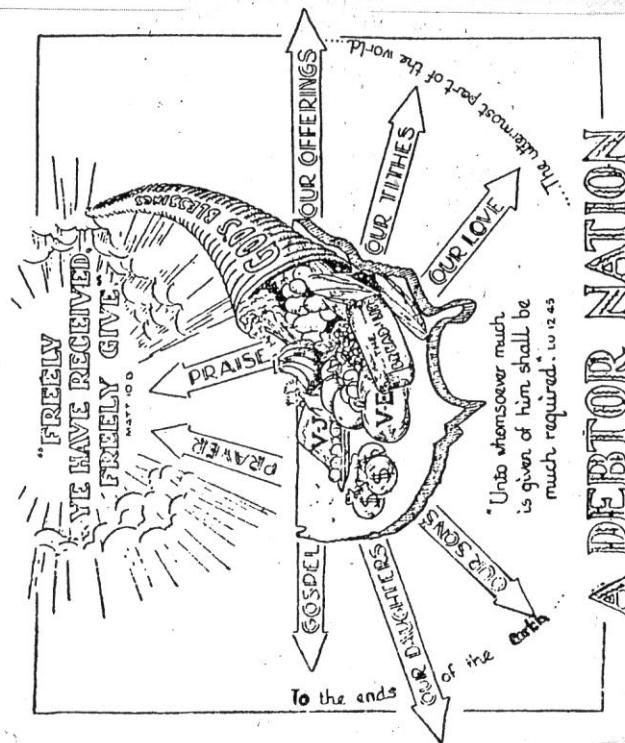


NO MORE !



"IN THE VALLEY OF THE SHADOW."

First Pilgrim: "We are nearing our journey's end.
Alas! how gloomy the prospect!"
Second Pilgrim: "Surely you are shortsighted, my
brother, for to me it seems most glorious."



14. THE PARABLES OF JESUS CHRIST

Bible Reading: Matthew 13:1-52.

Aim: To understand the background and meaning of Jesus' Parables, and apply them to serving Christ.

Introduction: The word "parable" comes from the Greek word "parabolē", made up from the verb "ballo" (to throw, lay or place) and the prefix "para" (meaning alongside of). A parable explains an unclear idea by **laying it alongside** of a clear idea to help interested listeners to better understand it. The known clarifies the unknown, making it more interesting, easier to remember, and easier to apply to life. The word parable occurs 48 times in the first three gospels, and twice in Hebrews 9:9 and 11:19. A parable is an earthly story with a heavenly meaning.

I. WHY DID JESUS TEACH IN PARABLES?

About one-third of Jesus' teachings as recorded in the Gospels was in Parables.

The disciples asked Jesus in Matthew 13:10 "Why speakest unto them in Parables?" Four reasons are:

1. To reveal truth to genuine seekers, but to hide truth from those with hard hearts, to minimise the severity of their judgment. Matthew 13:10-17. The same sun that melts the ice, hardens the clay. The same message that awakens some, will harden another. Jesus' reason for speaking in parables contained a prophecy from Isaiah 6:9-10. This important prophecy refers to the spiritual deterioration of Israel, and occurs 5 times in the New Testament (Matt. 13:14-15, Mark 4:12; Luke 8:10; John 12:39,40; Acts 28:26,27). The Jews would hear God's word but not understand it and see Jesus' powerful miracles but not understand them as proof of His Messiahship. Their dull hearts would make them spiritually blind and deaf, and the result would be judgment in 70 AD. The disciples saw and believed. The Jewish leaders saw and rejected, so God gave them no more light.
2. A second reason Jesus used parables is given in Matthew 13:34,35:
"That it might be fulfilled which was spoken by the prophet, saying, I will open my mouth in parables; I will utter things which have been kept secret from the foundation of the world". This was to fulfill Asaph's prophecy in Psalm 78:2 "I will open my mouth in a parable: I will utter dark sayings of old".
Jesus' parables opened secrets, mysteries, or new truths hidden since the foundation of the world.
3. Many of the parables explained the time period between Christ's rejection and His return. Both the disciples and ourselves need to understand this period as we set out to evangelize the world.
4. Many parables were answers to some problem or opposition. For example:
 - a) The Pharisees criticised Jesus for eating with sinners, so He told them the parables of a lost sheep, a lost coin, and a lost son.
 - b) The disciples thought they were very successful because of the big crowds, so Jesus replied with the parable of a sower who saw 75% of his seed become fruitless.
 - c) The Pharisees claimed Jesus was in league with the devil, so He told the parable of a strong man guarding his goods being overcome by a stronger man.
 - d) The disciples asked "Lord, teach us to pray", so Jesus told the parable of the persistent friend .

The parables are mirrors and windows. As mirrors they help us see our faults.

As windows they help us understand life and God's plans for this world.

II. HOW SHOULD WE INTERPRET PARABLES?

1. Christ's interpretation of parables is the key to how we interpret other parables(Matt13:18-23;36-43)
2. Look for the main truth the parable teaches.
3. Not every detail of a parable means something unless the context demands it. Sometimes, symbols have different meanings in different parables. For example, in the parable of the sower, the seed represents the word of God, and the soil represents the human heart. But in the parable of the wheat and tares, the good seed represents the children of the kingdom, and the field represents the world.
4. Parables were given to illustrate doctrine, not to teach doctrine. Don't try to prove a doctrine only on the basis of a parable. Parables are windows of a house, not its foundation. For example, to try

to teach salvation by good works from the parable of the sheep and goats (Matthew 25:31-46) ignores the prophetic context and would contradict clear doctrines taught elsewhere.

5. Other passages of scripture may define some detail of a parable. For example, in the parable of the treasure hid in a field, Exodus 19:5 and Psalm 135:4 define God's peculiar treasure to be Israel.
6. Jesus stated that the parables concern the "**kingdom of heaven**" (Matthew 13:11), of which we know the following:
 - i) It is **found** only in Matthew's gospel and is mentioned 32 times.
 - ii) Its **character** is described in the 12 kingdom of Heaven parables in Matthew 13:1-50; 18:23-25; 20:1-16; 22:1-14; 25:1-30.
 - iii) Its **time** is limited from the First to the Second Coming of Christ.
 - iv) Its **sphere** is limited to Christendom.
 - v) It contains a **mixture of good & evil**, Wheat & Tares, good & bad fish, wise & foolish virgins.

III. THE POSTPONEMENT of CHRIST'S EARTHLY 1000 YEAR KINGDOM OF ISRAEL

At the time of Jesus' birth, there was a widespread expectation that Messiah's coming was near, maybe because some understood the Daniel 9:24-27 "70 week" prophecy that Messiah would come 173,880 days after March 5, 444 BC. This made the due date for Messiah's coming to be March 30, 33 AD. Hence Simeon and Anna waited in the Temple for Christ as the "Consolation of Israel" (Luke 2:25-38). The Kingdom of Heaven is named since it was given from heaven by God the Father (Daniel 7:13,14). Jesus' message was the same as John the Baptist's: "Repent, for the Kingdom of heaven is **at hand**". Matthew 3:2; 4:17. They both called for Israel to nationally repent.

The Messianic kingdom cannot be set up until Israel as a nation repents. (Zechariah 12:10).

Jesus preached the "gospel of the kingdom" in Matthew 4:23 and the same "gospel of the kingdom" will be preached in the Tribulation that Christ's coming is near. (Matthew 24:14). When Jesus rode into Jerusalem on Palm Sunday to offer Himself as King to the Jews in fulfillment of Zechariah 9:9, He accepted the "Hosannahs" of the multitude, thus acknowledging His right to Kingship over an earthly kingdom. Sadly, the Pharisees in the crowd that day said to Jesus, "Master, rebuke thy disciples" (Matthew 19:39), thus rejecting Christ's offer as King over the Messianic Kingdom. Christ's Kingdom was thus postponed and the church, which is the mystery form of the Kingdom of heaven was introduced at the day of Pentecost. It is the subject of Christendom being a mixture of saved and imitators that is discussed in some parables.

Question 1: What would have happened if the Jews as a nation had repented and accepted Jesus Christ as their King and Messiah? Would Christ's earthly Kingdom have been set up?

Answer: Certainly, but not necessarily straight away because Jesus had to die for the sins of the world as Saviour before He could assume His rule as King. This would have been achieved by the Roman government crucifying Jesus as a usurper. With Jesus' resurrection and ascension, Daniel's 69th week would have ended and the 70th week begun **without a break**. At the close of the 70th week, Jesus would have returned to set up His 1000 year earthly Kingdom.

Question 2: What about the church? How could it be formed if there was no break between the 69th and 70th week? Doesn't Ephesians 1:4 state that it was God's eternal purpose to form the church?

Answer: Yes. God foreknew that Israel would reject Christ's offer of the kingdom, yet His offer was still genuine. After Christ's resurrection, the disciples asked Him:

"Lord wilt thou **at this time** restore again the Kingdom to Israel?"

Jesus replied: "It is not for you to know the times or the seasons, which the Father hath put in His own power". (Acts 1:6). Jesus' answer is that He was not going to tell them if the Messiah's earthly 1000 year kingdom was to come then or later. Why? Because it depended on Israel's response to Christ's offer as proclaimed by the Apostles. Peter's second sermon states that if the nation repented, then Jesus Christ would return and establish His earthly kingdom:

"Repent ye therefore, and be converted, that your sins may be blotted out, when the **times of refreshing** shall come from the presence of the Lord; and **he shall send Jesus Christ**." (Acts 3:19:20). This offer of the Kingdom is in a transition period within the church age. Acts is a transition book where God gives the Jewish nation a chance to repent, they fail, and so God temporarily sets Israel

aside and instead works through the church. Hence, the King having been rejected, it was impossible to set up the Kingdom at that time, so the Kingdom took on another form known as the “Mystery Form” as described in the Matthew 13 “Kingdom of Heaven Parables”, which describe the character of the period from Christ’s Ascension to the Rapture of the Church.

IV. DOCTRINE of the KINGDOM OF HEAVEN BASED ON CHRIST’S PARABLES.

1. Christ’s Offer of the Kingdom.

- a) Because of Old Testament promises, Israel expected a literal kingdom ruled by the Messiah. Christ spoke the parable of not putting a **new patch on an old garment**, and of not putting **new wine in old wineskins** (Luke 5:36-39) to show that He did not intend to build on Pharisaism, but came to set up a new and different Kingdom.
- b) The **Good Shepherd and His sheep** parable (John 10:1-18) was spoken because of the Pharisees who rejected Jesus Christ as Messiah, to show that His own would recognize Him, leave Pharisaism’s bondage and enter the freedom of Christ’s Kingdom.
- c) The **lost sheep, lost coin** and **lost son** parable (Luke 15:1-32) was spoken to correct the Pharisees wrong view that God hated sinners and rejoiced in a sinners’ death because the sinner was then removed from God’s presence forever. They reasoned that one’s goal in life should be to produce enough good works to enter heaven. These 3 parables show the great search by the owners and joy when found. These show God’s great love for sinners to return to God.
- d) The **blind leading the blind** (Luke 6:39) warns against following the Pharisees described as spiritually blind shepherds trying to lead spiritually blind followers.
- e) The King preparing a **wedding banquet** for his son (Matthew 22:1-14) taught that Christ was inviting that generation to the Kingdom. Since the wedding banquet pictured Christ’s millennial kingdom, this parable teaches Christ’s offer of the Kingdom to the Jews.
- f) The **narrow way to life** that **few** find, and the **broad way to destruction** that **many** travel (Matthew 7:13,14) warned against the danger of rejecting Christ’s invitation just given.
- g) The **wise** man building his **house on the rock** and surviving the storm, pictured those hearing and doing Christ’s teachings who enter the Kingdom by trusting Christ. The **foolish** man building his house on the **sand** that collapsed in the storm pictured those rejecting Christ’s words, accepting the Pharisees doctrine, and being excluded from the Kingdom (Matt 7:24-27).

2. Israel’s Rejection of Christ’s offers is seen in these parables:

- a) The **Physician** who was called on to **heal himself** (Luke 4:23) pictured Israel rejecting Christ, calling Him a sinner needing to deal with his own sins before He could offer salvation to others.
- b) The **Wedding banquet** (Matth 22:1-14) showed the offer and rejection of the Kingdom by the guests (Israel) who were busy with their personal pursuits. The **Great Banquet** (Luke 14:16-24) showed the invited guests (Israel) ignoring the banquet by making excuses not to come.
- c) The **landowner who planted a vineyard** (Matthew 21:33-44) taught that the servants (Old Testament prophets) were beaten, stoned and killed by Israel when they were sent to collect the harvest (spiritual fruit). The landowner then sent his son (Christ) to collect the harvest, but the tenants (Israel) killed him. This pictured Israel rejecting the Kingdom and crucifying Christ.

3. Christ Postpones the Kingdom.

The unconditional **Abrahamic** covenant (Genesis 12:1-3; 13:14:17; 15:18-20; 17:4-8) promised that Abraham’s physical descendants would dwell in the land forever. The unconditional **Davidic** covenant (II Samuel 7:16) promised that one of David’s descendants would rule on David’s Throne forever. Because Israel rejected Christ’s offer, David’s Kingdom was not cancelled but postponed.

- a) Christ spoke the parable of **10 pounds** (Luke 19:11-27) to teach that His Kingdom offer was being withdrawn and postponed. Christ was the nobleman who went into a far country to receive a Kingdom and to return to rule (v.12). Hence, Israel’s rejection of Christ did not stop His right to rule.
- b) The **watching porter** (Mark 13:34-37) spoke of Christ’s postponement of and absence from the Kingdom for a long time period, and our watchfulness in His absence.

c) The **householder who planted a vineyard** parable (Matt. 21:33-46) taught that the Kingdom would be taken from first century Israel and given to the nation Israel at Christ's return. (v.43).

4. First Century Israel Judged.

In the **cleansed house** parable (Matthew 12:43-45), Christ pictured Israel as having experienced a cleansing ministry by John the Baptist. That cleansing was not permanent, because the unclean spirit that left the house of Israel returned with 7 other more wicked spirits, so that the final state of that house of Israel was worse because of their rejection of Christ than before John the Baptist's ministry. "Even so shall it be also unto this wicked generation". (v.45).

5. The New Mystery Form of the Kingdom. Because Israel rejected Christ's offer of the Messianic Kingdom, the offer was withdrawn, postponed and substituted with judgment by the Romans in 70 AD. The mystery form of the Kingdom known as the Church age was then introduced.

Many of the parables revealed the character of the Church age, such as:

- i) The **Sower** (Matthew 13:3-23). The church age would be characterised by sowing the seed of the Word of God (Luke 8:12) throughout the world by Jesus and his followers, met by varying responses depending on the attitude of the hearers.
- ii) The **Wheat and Tares** (Matthew 13:24-30). In the Church age Satan will try to defeat God's program by sowing weeds (darnel) among the good seed. Satan's seed will imitate and closely resemble God's seed. Only at harvest can both kinds be distinguished. Christians who sow the word of God in the church age may expect Satan's opposition to spreading Christ's gospel.
- iii) The **seed growing by itself** (Mark 4:26-29). As physical seed germinates and grows because of life in the seed, so the mystery form of the Kingdom will grow because of life-giving power in the seed of the word of God sown in people's hearts.
- iv) The **mustard seed** (Matthew 13:31,32). The mystery form of the Kingdom would begin insignificantly but grow to great size. The Church age began with 11 disciples and grew to millions of people in Christendom.
- v) The **leaven** (Matthew 13:33-35). When the Church age began, evil (leaven) would be present which would spread throughout Christendom to permeate the whole system by Christ's return.
- vi) The **Hidden treasure** and the **Pearl** (Matt. 13:44-46). Christ's plan in this Church age is to die on the cross, to purchase a treasure (Israel) and a Pearl (the church) out of the field (the world).
- vii) The **Dragnet** (Matthew 13:47-50). During the Church age the gospel will go out like a dragnet, catching two kinds of fish, good and bad, useful and useless. At the end of the tribulation the angels will cast the wicked into a furnace of fire, and allow the righteous into the millennium.

6. Warnings to Prepare for Christ's Millennial Kingdom.

In Matthew 24:3 the disciples asked Jesus "what shall be the sign of thy coming and of the end of the world?" Jesus listed many signs that would be fulfilled in the 7 year tribulation (Matthew 24:26). Some (16) are: Deception (v.4,11,24), False Christs (v.5), Wars (v.6), famines, pestilences and earthquakes (v.7), persecution (v.9), disloyalty (v.10), false prophets (v.11), little love (v.12), worldwide gospel preaching (v.14), Jewish temple in Jerusalem, (v.15), great trouble (v.21,22), false prophets showing great signs and wonders (v.24) sun and moon darkened (v.29), the fig tree of Israel budding (v.32-34). These signs will be given to unsaved Israel to warn them that the Kingdom is being offered again and of Messiah's soon arrival.

- a) The **budding Fig tree** parable (Matthew 24:32-34) picturing Israel's nationhood warns that Christ's coming is near, at the doors. **Question:** How should we respond to these signs?
- b) The **watching doorkeeper** parable (Mark 13:33-37) teaches **watchfulness** and **faithfulness** in serving Jesus, because we don't know when Christ will return.
- c) The **watching homeowner** parable (Matt. 24:42-44) teaches us to **watch** and be **prepared**. As thieves come when unexpected, so Christ's return at the rapture will be at an unexpected time.
- d) The **wise and evil servants** parable (Matthew 24:45-51) teaches Christians to be faithful to our Bible teaching ministry in view of Christ's return. A faithful and wise servant will fulfil his Bible teaching work, but a foolish and evil servant will neglect his Bible teaching ministry and will live for himself and his fleshly lusts. He will be severely rebuked by Christ at His return and be deprived of the joys of Christ's Kingdom. We must watch & be ready for Christ's return.

7. Three Judgments Before the Millennium.

This age will end in judgment, details of which are given in Matthew 25.

a) The wise and foolish virgins (Matthew 25:1-13): **Judgment on living Israel.**

After Christ returns to earth (Matthew 24:30), angels will regather living Israel from all over the earth (v.31), back to the land promised to Abraham (Genesis 12:7).

Deuteronomy 30:1-10 teaches that Israel's entry to the Millennium kingdom blessings depended on repentance and receiving Christ as their Messiah and Saviour. Hence no unsaved Jew or Gentile will enter the Millennium (Ezekiel 20:38).

The wise and foolish virgins parable states that Israelites living at the time of Christ's return will be judged to see which Jews are prepared to enter the Kingdom (by possessing the Holy Spirit) and which Jews are not prepared to enter the Kingdom (by being unsaved).

The **virgins** in an Oriental wedding refer to guests at the banquet (**Jews**).

The **bride** is the **Church** (Rev. 19:7,8; 21:9; II Cor. 11:2; Eph. 5:23-32) who appears on earth with the **Bridegroom** who is **Jesus Christ**. Hence living Israelites (10 virgins) will be brought back to the land for a judgment to see who is prepared to enter Messiah's Millennial Kingdom (5 wise virgins) and who is not prepared and will therefore be excluded (5 foolish virgins).

b) The sheep and the goats (Matthew 25:31-46): **Judgment on living Gentiles.**

"When the Son of man shall come in His glory....before him shall be gathered all nations: and he shall separate them as a shepherd divides his sheep from the goats." (v.31,32).

The sheep will enter the Millennium because of how they treated Christ and helped His brothers in the tribulation. Their works prove the genuineness of their saving faith, because no one is saved by works. "Brothers" (Matthew 25:40) refers to persecuted Israelites as a whole in the tribulation, or to the persecuted 144,000 Israelite preachers (Revelation 7). Hence, the goats on the left will not have faith, and will not have produced works of helping persecuted Israelites. Sheep will enter and goats will be excluded from the Kingdom. Hence in 2 judgments the whole world will be judged to see who qualifies for entry into Christ's millennial Kingdom.

c) 5,2,1 Talents (Matthew 25:14-30): **Judgment to Reward Believers' Faithfulness.** A master travelling to a far country delivered his goods to his servants, and in his absence required them to trade these goods for a profitable return. When the master returned, these servants were called to give account of their success in trading. Those found faithful were allowed to enter the joy of their Lord and were made ruler over many things (v.21,23). On the other hand, the one servant who through fear, hid his master's talent in the earth, returned the talent with a nil profit. Because he was unfaithful he was excluded from the Kingdom, lost the talent, and was denied rule in the millennium. Those who are faithful and prepared will enter the Kingdom and will be made ruler over many things, with great authority. Christ predicted this judgment to occur just before the millennium in Matthew 24:40,41 when he said:

"Then shall two be in the field: the one shall be taken (away in judgment), and the other left (to enter Christ's millennial Kingdom). Two women shall be grinding at the mill; the one shall be taken (away in judgment), and the other left (to enter Christ's Kingdom)".

8. Life in Christ's Mystery Form and Millennial Kingdom. Many parables were given to teach the disciples what the King expects of His subjects who will live in the Kingdom.

i) Obedience - Two sons. (Matthew 21:28-32). Obedience is a test of sonship. A man asked his 2 sons to work in his vineyard. The first son refused, but later on obeyed (picturing tax collectors and prostitutes). The second son agreed to work, but never showed up (picturing the Pharisees).

Question: Which son did the Father's will? The first son did.

Despised people like tax collectors and prostitutes were entering the Kingdom of God instead of Pharisees and religious leaders who did not repent and believe. What a shock!

ii) Love - Two Debtors (Luke 7:41-50).

During Christ's earthly ministry, He showed compassion on the poor, sick, sorrowing, outcasts and sinners. This compassion will be required to be shown by His people in the Kingdom. This parable was spoken in the house of a Pharisee who objected to an ex-prostitute showing love and devotion to Christ. Christ replied how a creditor forgave the debts of a large debtor

(pictured the the ex-prostitute) and a small debtor (pictured by Simon the Pharisee). Who would love the creditor more? Obviously the debtor who had been forgiven the most would love the most. Hence more love for Christ will be shown by those who are forgiven more. Also, Christ always accepts love from forgiven sinners.

The Good Samaritan (Luke 10:27,30-37). Mercy (love in action) is to be shown to anyone in need, whose needs we can meet. Christ commanded the lawyer to show mercy as the Samaritan did. Those in Christ's Kingdom must show love to God and man because God has forgiven us.

iii) **Prayer** will play a key role in life in the Kingdom.

- a) The **basis of prayer** is the merit of Christ's atoning blood.

The **Pharisee and Tax Collector** parable (Luke 18:9-14) shows how to approach God in prayer. The Pharisee by telling God about his righteousness, incorrectly approached God on the basis of his good works. God rejected his prayer. The Tax Collector, by seeing no merit in himself, claimed the blood of Christ saying, "God be merciful to me a sinner". He thus went home justified before God (Luke 18:14).

b) **Persistence in Prayer:** The **Persistent widow** (Luke 18:1-8).

Christ taught that we must persist in prayer to be answered. Even a hard hearted, indifferent judge, though unmoved by the **justice** of a widows request,can be moved by her persistence. The **Persistent friend at midnight** (Luke 11:5-13). A man had a visitor arrive, and not having bread to feed him, went to his neighbour at midnight to ask for 3 loaves. The neighbour being in bed would've had to disturb his whole family to give his neighbour the 3 loaves, so was unwilling to assist.

Lesson: "Though he will not rise and give him, because he is his friend, yet because of his importunity (persistence) he will rise and give him as many as he needeth." (Luke 11:8).

Jesus concluded: "Ask and it shall be given you; seek and ye shall find; knock and it shall be opened unto you". (Luke 11:9).

This parable defines intercessory prayer: The man asking the sleeping neighbour was not the one in need, but was representing another person who was in need.

Definition: An intercessor represents the needy person to the one who can meet that need. Intercessory prayer is totally unselfish, because it is concerned for others needs, not one's own needs. Hence, unselfish intercessory prayer will characterise Kingdom life.

iv) **The Right use of wealth.**

The Pharisees regarded wealth as a sure sign of God's blessing and proof that the person was righteous and certain of entering heaven. Christ used parables to correct this wrong thinking:

a) The **wise use of present opportunities:** The **unjust steward** (Luke 16:1-13).

A righteous person will act wisely, knowing that he must give account to God of his stewardship in the future. He will not misuse his money selfishly thinking only of the present. When the steward wasted his master's goods, he lost his job, so he wisely used his present position to secure his future by reducing the amount owed by his master's debtors, so they would give him accommodation. Christ commended him, not for his dishonesty, but for wisely using present opportunities for future gain.

Christ applied this truth to our use of wealth in v.8-13. If we are not faithful in handling worldly wealth now, who will entrust us with true riches later in eternity?

Hence people will wisely use material possessions in the Kingdom.

b) **Material possessions are temporary.** The **Rich man and Lazarus** (Luke 16:19-31). The rich man who died left all his wealth behind, yet his soul continued to exist in hell without his wealth. This rich man believed the Pharisees' doctrine that wealth was a sign of God's favour. Jesus teaches here that:

* Your wealth cannot save you.

* The beggar was saved because he trusted God for salvation, not because of his poverty.

* Poverty is not necessarily a sign of God's displeasure or punishment for sin.

* Poverty is no barrier to gaining true eternal riches.

- c) The **Result of selfishness and covetousness. The Rich fool** (Luke 12:16-21) parable shows that one's use of wealth will reveal if he is righteous or unrighteous. This man, already wealthy, found his riches greatly increased by an abundant harvest. This increased wealth gave him an opportunity to show his love for God and fellow man by sharing his wealth with needy people. He refused to do this and instead stored them up for his own use. This wrong use of wealth showed that he was unrighteous. Christ taught that we must rightly use our wealth now for other's salvation, for earthly wealth to benefit us in the next life.

v) **Faithfulness. The Faithful and Wise Steward.** Luke 12:42-48.

This parable teaches that "privilege brings responsibility now and accountability to God later". If we are given authority and we misuse it, then we will lose it.

"It is required in stewards, that a man be found faithful." (I Corinthians 4:2).

Faithfulness to our privileges and responsibilities will characterize Kingdom life.

vi) **Humility. Seats at the Wedding Feast.** Luke 14:7-11.

We must take a lower seat as a sign of humility, not seeking the best seats for ourselves. Let the host honour him that deserves it. Don't honour yourself, let others honour you instead. In the Beatitudes (Matt5:3-12), Christ described righteous people who will be citizens in His Kingdom.

THE PARABLES OF JESUS CHRIST.

1. The Two Houses	Matthew 7:24-27 (Luke 6:47-49).
2. The New Cloth and New Wineskins	Matthew 9:16-17.
3. The Sower	Matthew 13:5-8 (Mark 4:3-8; Luke 8:5-8).
4. The Weeds	Matthew 13:24-30.
5. The Mustard Seed	Matthew 13:31-32 (Mark 4:30-32; Luke 13:18-19)
6. The Yeast	Matthew 13:33 (Luke 13:20-21).
7. The Hidden Treasure	Matthew 13:44.
8. The Pearl of Great Price	Matthew 13:45-46
9. The Fishing Net	Matthew 13:47-50.
10. The Unforgiving Servant	Matthew 18:23-35.
11. The Workers in the Vineyard	Matthew 20:1-16.
12. The Two Sons	Matthew 21:28-32.
13. The Wicked Vinegrowers	Matthew 21:33-46 (Mark 12:1-12; Luke 20:9-19).
14. The Marriage of the King's Son	Matthew 22:1-14.
15. The Two Servants	Matthew 24:45-51.
16. The 10 Virgins	Matthew 25:1-13.
17. The Talents	Matthew 25:14-30.
18. The Seed Growing Secretly	Mark 4:26-29.
19. The Doorkeeper	Mark 13:34-37.
20. The Rude Children	Luke 7:31-35.
21. The Two Debtors	Luke 7:41-43.
22. The Good Samaritan	Luke 10:25-37.
23. The Friend at Midnight	Luke 11:5-8.
24. The Rich Fool	Luke 12:16-21.
25. The Barren Fig Tree	Luke 13:6-9.
26. The Great Supper	Luke 14:15-24.
27. The Unfinished Tower and the King's Rash War	Luke 14:28-33.
28. The Lost Sheep	Matthew 18:12-14 (Luke 15:4-7).
29. The Lost Coin	Luke 15:8-10.
30. The Prodigal Son	Luke 15:11-32.
31. The Shrewd Manager	Luke 16:1-9.
32. The Servant's Reward	Luke 17:7-10.
33. The Unjust Judge	Luke 18:1-8.
34. The Pharisee and the Taxgatherer	Luke 18:9-14.
35. The Pounds	Luke 19:1-27.

15. EVENTS IN THE LIFE OF CHRIST and HARMONY OF THE GOSPELS

	<u>MATT</u>	<u>MARK</u>	<u>LUKE</u>	<u>JOHN</u>
Introduction:	A. The Source of Knowledge. B. The Pre-existence of God.		1:1-4	1:1-18
I. INTRODUCTION of the King.				
A. Arrival of the King.				
1. His Ancestry.	1:1-17		3:23-38	
2. His Advent.				
a) Annunciation of John's Birth to Zechariah.			1:5-25	
b) Annunciation of Jesus' Birth to Mary.			1:26-38	
c) Arrival of Mary in Judea to visit Elizabeth.			1:39-45	
d) Anthem of Mary.			1:46-56	
e) Advent of John the Baptist.			1:57-80	
f) Announcement of Jesus' Birth to Joseph.	1:18-25			
g) Advent of Jesus Christ.			2:1-7	
h) Announcement to the Shepherds.			2:8-20	
3. His Infancy and Childhood.				
a) His Circumcision at Bethlehem.			2:21	
b) His Presentation in the Temple.			2:22-38	
c) His Infancy - in Bethlehem, the wise men.	2:1-12			
- in Egypt, to flee Herod.	2:13-18			
- in Nazareth.	2:19-23			
d) His Boyhood - His Growth.			2:39	
- His Visit to Jerusalem.			2:40	
- His Development.			2:41-50	
			2:51-52	
B. Ambassador of the King.				
1. Message to John.		1:1	3:1-2	
2. Message from John.	3:1-6	1:2-6	3:3-6	
3. Explanation from John.	3:7-10		3:7-14	
4. Promise by John.	3:11-12	1:7-8	3:15-18	
C. Approval of the King.				
1. At His Baptism.	3:13-17	1:9-11	3:21-23	
2. Through His Temptation in Judean Desert.	4:1-11	1:12-13	4:1-13	
3. By His Herald - John to the Leaders.				1:19-28
- John testifying to Christ.				1:29-34
II. AUTHENTICATION of the King.				
A. Acceptance of His Person.				
1. Belief by the First Disciples.				1:35-51
2. Belief Through the First Miracle.				2:1-11
3. Sojourn in Capernaum.				2:12
4. Possession of the Temple, expelling traders.				2:13-22
5. Acceptance in Judea, talking to Nicodemus.				2:23-52

	MATT	MARK	LUKE	JOHN
6. Witness of John.	4:12	1:14	3:19-21	4:1-4
7. Withdrawl from Judea to Galilee.			4:14	
8. Acceptance in Samaria, woman at well.				4:5-42
9. Acceptance in Galilee.				4:43-45
B. Authority of the King.				
1. Christ's authority to preach.	4:17	1:15	4:14-15	
2. Christ's authority over disease.				4:46-54
3. Christ's rejection in Nazareth.			4:16-30	
4. Christ's residence in Capernaum.	4:13-16			
5. Christ's authority over nature.	4:18-22	1:16-20	5:1-11	
6. Christ's authority over demons.		1:21-28	4:31-37	
7. Christ's authority over sickness.	8:14-17	1:29-34	4:38-41	
8. Christ's authority to preach.	4:23-25	1:35-39	4:42-44	
9. Christ's authority over defilement.	8:2-4	1:40-45	5:12-16	
10. Christ's authority to forgive sins.	9:1-8	2:1-12	5:17-26	
11. Christ's authority over men.	9:9-13	2:13-17	5:27-32	
12. Christ's authority over tradition.	9:14-17	2:18-22	5:33-39	
13. Christ's authority over the Sabbath.				5:1-47
- through healing a paralytic.				
- through controversy over grain.	12:1-8	2:23-28	6:1-5	
- healing withered hand.	12:9-14	3:1-6	6:6-11	
14. Christ's authority to heal.	12:15-21	3:7-12		
15. Commissioning the Twelve.	10:2-4	3:13-19	6:12-16	
16. Christ's authority to interpret the Law.	5:1-7:29		6:17-42	
a) The Subjects of the Kingdom.		5:1-16		6:17-26
- their character.		5:3-12		6:20-26
- their influence.		5:13-16		
b) Relation of the King to the Law.				
- the Fulfiller.		5:17-20		
- Rejection of Traditional Law.		5:21-48		
1. Murder.		5:21-26		
2. Adultery.		5:27-30		
3. Divorce.		5:31-32		
4. Oaths.		5:33-37		
5. Retaliation.		5:38-42		
6. Love.		5:43-48		6:27-36
- Rejecting of Pharisaic Practices.		6:1-7:6		6:37-42
1. Almsgiving.		6:1-4		
2. Prayer.		6:5-15		
c) Instruction to those entering the Kingdom.	7:7-29			
- Prayer.		7:7-11		
- True Righteousness.		7:12		6:31-45
- The Way to Heaven.		7:13-14		
- Warning to False Teachers.		7:15-23		
- Two Foundations.	7:24-8:1		6:46-49	
17. Recognition of Christ's authority.	8:5-13		7:1-10	

	<u>MATT</u>	<u>MARK</u>	<u>LUKE</u>	<u>JOHN</u>
18. Recognition of Christ's authority in Nain.			7:11-17	
19. Witness of the Twelve.	9:35-11:1	6:6-13	9:1-6	
III. CONTROVERSY over the King.				
A. Rejection of John the Baptist.	11:2-19			17:18-35
B. Curse of the Cities of Galilee.	11:20-30			
1. Condemnation for unbelief.	11:20-24			
2. Explanation of unbelief.	11:25-27			
3. Invitation to belief.	11:28-30			
C. Reception by a sinner.			7:36-50	
D. Witness to the King.			8:1-3	
E. The Leaders Rejection of Christ.	12:22-37	3:20-30		
F. The Leaders Request for a sign.	12:38-45			
G. Christ rejects the Nation.	12:46-50	3:31-35	8:19-21	
H. Revelation in view of rejection.				
1. The Course of the Kingdom in this age.	13:1-53	4:1-34	8:4-18	
a) Parable of Sower and Soils.	13:1-9	4:1-9	8:4-8	
b) Purpose of Parables.	13:10-17	4:10-12	8:9-10	
c) Parable of Sower and Soils Interpreted.	13:18-23	4:13-20	8:11-15	
d) Parable of the Lamp.		4:21-25	8:16-18	
e) Parable of the Weeds.	13:24-30			
f) Parable of the Growing Seed.		4:26-29		
g) Parable of the Mustard Seed.	13:31-32	4:30-32		
h) Parable of Yeast Mixed in Flour.	13:33-35			
i) Parable of Weeds Explained.	13:36-43			
j) Parable of the Hidden Treasure and Pearl.	13:44-46			
k) Parable of the Dragnet.	13:47-50			
l) Parable of the House Owner.	13:51-52			
m) Conclusion.	13:53	4:33-34		
2. Jesus' Power over Nature.	8:18-27	4:35-41	8:22-25	
3. Jesus' Power over Demons.	8:28-34	5:1-20	8:26-39	
4. Jesus' Power over Disease and Death.	9:18-26	5:21-43	8:40-56	
5. Jesus' Power over Blindness.	9:27-34			
I. Rejection in Nazareth.	13:54-34	6:1-6		
J. Death of John the Baptist.	14:1-12	6:14-29	9:7-9	
IV. INSTRUCTION of the Twelve.				
A. Feeding the 5,000.	14:13-21	6:30-44	9:10-17	6:1-13
B. Rejection of an offer to make Him King.	14:22-23	6:45-46		6:14-15
C. Instruction through the Storm.	14:24-33	6:47-52		6:16-21
D. Reception in Gennesaret.	14:34-36	6:53-56		
E. Instruction on the Bread of Life.				6:22-71
F. Instruction on Defilement.	15:1-20	7:1-23		7:1
G. Reception in Tyre and Sidon.	15:21-28	7:24-30		
H. Reception in Decapolis.	15:29-38	7:31-8:9		
I. Rejection in Magdala.	16:1-4	8:9-12		

	<u>MATT</u>	<u>MARK</u>	<u>LUKE</u>	<u>JOHN</u>
J. Warning against Rejection.	16:5-12	8:13-26		
K. Confession of Peter.	16:13-20	8:27-30	9:18:21	
L. Instruction on His Death.	16:21	8:31-33	9:22	
M. Instruction on Discipleship.	16:22-28	8:34-9:1	9:23-27	
N. Revelation of the Kingdom.	17:1-8	9:2-8	9:28-36	
O. Instruction on Elijah.	17:9-13	9:9-13		
P. Instruction on Dependence.	17:14-21	9:14-29	9:37-43	
Q. Extra Instruction on His Death.	17:22-23	9:30-32	9:43-45	
R. Instruction on Sonship.	17:24-27			
S. Instruction on Humility.	18:1-5	9:33-37	9:46-48	
T. Instruction on Pride.	18:6-14	9:38-50	9:49-50	
U. Instruction on Forgiveness.	18:15-35			
V. Instruction on Discipleship.	8:19-22		9:57-62	
W. Challenge by His Brothers.			7:2-9	
X. Journey to Jerusalem.			9:51-56	7:10
V. OPPOSITION to the King.				
A. Conflict at the Feast of Tabernacles.				7:11-52
1. Christ's Authority Questioned.				7:11-15
2. Christ's Explanation.				7:16-24
3. Christ's Person Questioned.				7:25-27
4. Christ's Explanation.				7:28-30
5. Response.				7:31-36
6. Christ's Invitation.				7:37-52
B. Conflict over the Law.				7:53-8:11
C. Conflict over the Light.				8:12-20
D. Conflict over Christ's Person.				8:21-59
E. Conflict over Healing a Blind Man.				9:1-41
F. Conflict over the Shepherd.				10:1-21
G. Witness of the 70 sent out.			10:1-24	
H. Conflict over the Question of Eternal Life.			10:25-37	
I. An Example of Fellowship.			10:38-42	
J. Instruction In Prayer.			11:1-13	
K. Conflict over Healing a Dumb Man.			11:14-36	
L. Conflict over Pharisaic Ritualism.			11:37-54	
M. Instructing the Disciples.				
1. Hypocrisy.			12:1-12	
2. Covetousness.			12:13-34	
3. Watchfulness.			12:35-41	
4. Faithfulness.			12:42-48	
5. The Effect of Jesus' Coming.			12:49-53	
6. The Signs of the Times.			12:54-59	
7. Repentance.			13:1-9	
8. Israel's Need.			13:10-17	
9. The Kingdom Program.			13:18-21	
N. Conflict at the Feast of Dedication.				10:22-39

	MATT	MARK	LUKE	JOHN
VI. PREPARATION of the DISCIPLES by the King.				
A. Withdrawl from Judea.				10:40-42
B. Instruction on Entering the Kingdom.		13:22-35		
C. Instruction in a Pharisee's House.		14:1-24		
D. Instruction on Discipleship.		14:25-35		
E. Instruction on God's Attitude to Sinners.		15:1-32		
1. Parable of the Lost Sheep.		15:1-7		
2. Parable of the Lost Coin.		15:8-10		
3. Parable of the Lost Son.		15:11-32		
F. Instruction on Wealth.		16:1-31		
G. Instruction on Forgiveness.		17:1-6		
H. Instruction on Service.		17:7-10		
I. Instruction on Lazarus.				11:1-54
1. Miracle of Restoration.				11:1-44
2. Conflict over the Miracle.				11:45-54
J. Instruction on Thankfulness.			17:11-19	
K. Instruction on Christ's Coming.			17:20-37	
L. Instruction on Prayer.			18:1-14	
M. Instruction on Divorce.	19:1-12			
N. Instruction on Entering the Kingdom.	19:13-15	10:13-16	18:15-17	
O. Instruction on Eternal Life.	19:16-30	10:17-31	18:18-30	
P. Instruction on Christ's Death.	20:17-28	10:32-45	18:31-34	
Q. Instruction on Israel's Need.	20:29-34	10:46-52	18:35-43	
R. Instruction on the Kingdom Program.			19:1-28	
1. A lesson in Personal Faith.			19:1-10	
2. Instruction on the Postponed Kingdom.			19:11-28	
VII. OFFICIAL PRESENTATION of the King.				
A. Arrival in Bethany.				11:55-57
B. Triumphal Entry to Jerusalem.	21:1-11	11:1-11	19:29-44	12:12-19
C. Authority of the King.	21:12-19	11:12-18	19:45-48	
D. Invitations by the King.				12:20-50
E. Proof of the King's Authority.	21:20-22	11:19-25	21:37-38	
F. The King's Authority Challenged.				
1. By the Priests and Elders.	21:23-46	11:27-33	20:1-19	
2. By the Pharisees and Herodians.	22:15-22	12:13-17	20:20-26	
3. By the Sadducees.	22:23-33	12:18-27	20:27-40	
4. By the Pharisees.	22:34-40	12:28-34		
G. Challenge by the King.	22:41-46	12:35-37	20:41-44	
H. Judgment by the King.	23:1-39	12:38-40	20:45-47	
I. Instruction at the Treasury.		12:41-44	21:1-4	
VIII. PREPARATION for the DEATH of the King.				
A. Predictions by Christ.				
1. The Question.	24:1-3	13:1-4	21:5-7	
2. The Tribulation.	24:4-26	13:5-23	21:8-26	
a) The First Half.	24:4-8	13:5-8	21:8-11	

	<u>MATT</u>	<u>MARK</u>	<u>LUKE</u>	<u>JOHN</u>
b) The Second Half.	24:9-14	13:9-13	21:12-19	
c) Repetition and Exploration.	24:15-26	13:14-23	21:20-26	
3. The Second Advent.	24:27-30	13:24-27	21:27-28	
4. The Regathering of Israel.	24:31			
5. Parenthetical Exhortations.	24:32-51	13:28-37	21:29-36	
a) The Fig Tree.	24:32-44	13:28-37	21:29-36	
b) The Faithful Servant.	24:45-51			
6. Judgment on Israel.	25:1-30			
a) The Ten Virgins.	25:1-13			
b) 5 Talents.	25:14-30			
7. Judgments on Gentiles.	25:31-46			
B. Preparation for Christ's Death.				
1. Prediction of His Death.	26:1-2	14:1	22:1	
2. Plan of the Rulers.	26:3-5	14:1-2	22:2	
3. Pouring of the Ointment.	26:6-13	14:3-9		12:2-8
4. Promise to Bethany.	26:14-16	14:10-11	22:3-6	
5. Preparation of the Passover.	26:17-19	14:12-16	22:7-13	
6. Passover Observance.	26:20	14:17	22:14-30	
7. Provision of an Example.				13:1-20
8. Prediction of Judas' Betrayal.	26:21-25	14:18-21	22:21-23	13:21-30
9. Prediction of Peter's Denial.	26:31-35	14:27-31	22:31-38	13:37-38
10. Provision of a Memorial Supper.	26:26-30	14:22-26	22:17-20	
C. Precepts by Christ.				
1. Prologue.				13:31-35
2. Problems.				13:36
3. Promises.				14:25-31
4. Instruction on their Present Experience.				
a) Fruit bearing.				15:1-17
b) Foe of the Disciples.				15:18-27
5. Instruction on the Future.				
a) Ministry of the Holy Spirit.				16:5-15
b) Result of the Resurrection.				16:16-28
c) Conclusion.				16:29-33
D. Prayer by Christ for Believers.				
1. His Prayer for Himself.				17:1-5
2. His Prayer for His Disciples.				17:6-19
3. His Prayer for the Family of Believers.				17:20-26
E. Prayer in the Garden.	26:36-46	14:32-42	22:39-46	18:1
IX. REJECTION of the King.				
A. The Arrest.	26:47-56	14:43-52	22:47-53	18:1-12
B. The Religious Trial.				
1. Examination before Annas.				18:12-23
2. Examination before Caiaphas.	26:57-68	14:53-65	22:63-65	18:24
3. The Denial by Peter.	26:58-75	14:54-72	22:54-62	18:15-27
4. Condemnation by the Sanhedrin.	27:1	15:1	22:66-71	
5. Death of Judas.	27:3-10			

	<u>MATT</u>	<u>MARK</u>	<u>LUKE</u>	<u>JOHN</u>
C. The Civil Trial.				
1. Trial before Pilate.	27:2-14	15:1-5	23:1-5	18:28-38
2. Trial before Herod.			23:6-12	
3. Trial before Pilate.	27:15-26	15:6-15	23:13-25	18:39-40
4. Mockery and Scourging.	27:27-30	15:16-19		19:2-3
D. Procession to Calvary.	27:31-34	15:20-23	23:26-33	19:16-17
E. The Crucifixion.				
1. First Three Hours.	27:35-44	15:24-32	23:34-43	19:18-27
2. Second Three Hours.	27:45-50	15:33-37	23:44-46	19:28-30
3. Accompanying Signs.	27:51-56	15:38-41	23:45-49	
F. The Burial of Christ.	27:57-61	15:42-47	23:50-56	19:31-42
G. The Sealing of the Tomb.	27:62-66			
X. The RESURRECTION of the King.				
A. Preparation by the Women.	28:1	16:1		
B. Opening of the Tomb.	28:2-4			
C. Visit of the Women.	28:5-8	16:2-8	24:1-8	20:1
D. Report to the Disciples by the Women.			24:9-12	20:2-10
E. Appearance to Mary Magdalene.		16:9-11		
F. Appearance to the Women.	28:9-10			
G. Report of the Guard.	28:11-15			
H. Appearance to Two on Emmaus Road.		16:12-13	24:13-32	
I. Report of the Two to the Disciples.			24:33-35	
J. Appearance to the Ten.		16:14	24:36-43	20:19-25
K. Appearance to the Eleven.				20:26-31
L. Appearance to 7 Disciples.				21:1-25
M. Commission to the Disciples.	28:16-20	16:15-18		
N. Final Commission.			24:44-49	
O. Ascension of Christ.		16:19-20	24:50-53	



16. ANGELS

Bible Reading: 2 Kings 6:8-17 and Hebrews 1:14.

Aim: To be encouraged from God's teaching about His angels ministering to us.

Introduction:

Is there intelligent life apart from man in the universe? Yes. Are they friend or foe? They are both. Is their civilisation older than ours? It is. Will we ever communicate with them? Some people have already. Who are these extraterrestrials? They are angels.

The Word "angel" occurs 273 times in Scripture. (108 times in Old Testament, 165 times in New Testament). In the Greek New Testament it is "angelos", in the Hebrew Old Testament it is "mal'ak", both meaning messenger. Sometimes it means "human messenger", but mostly it means "heavenly messenger". It basically means "one who is sent".

In Biblical appearances, angels always manifest themselves as males, never as women or children (except maybe in Zechariah 5:9 where they seem to appear as women angels). They always appear youthful, like the angel at Christ's tomb (Mark 16:5).

Moses and the tabernacle craftsmen knew what winged cherubim angels look like, because they made two cherubim of gold on the ark of the covenant (Exodus 37:6-9), as did Solomon (1 Kings 6:23-32).

The winged, human faced bulls of Assyria and Babylon may have resembled cherubim guarding Eden. Balaam's donkey saw the angel but Balaam did not. (Numbers 22:31). They have selective visibility.

The main tasks of angels are to:

1. Deliver messages from God to man (Daniel 9:21-23).
2. Encouraging and ministering to people's needs (1 Kings 19:1-8).
3. Opposing the work of Satan and demons (Daniel 10:20).

Benefits of studying the doctrine of angels are:

1. They constantly **watch** our lives (Daniel 4:17). Hence we will improve our conduct.
2. They **protect** us, hence we understand God's care for us (Hebrews 1:7).
3. As we see their great strength and authority as they humbly perform small tasks, we learn to serve God with humility also.
4. As God created many holy, powerful angels who worship Him, so we are encouraged to **worship** God (Revelation 22:8,9).
5. Understanding the **angelic conflict** helps us to be more committed to winning the spiritual war for people's souls.
6. As **God opposes** and **judges** wicked angels, so He will oppose and judge us if we fall into sin.
7. Much **evil in this world** is from evil angels. This helps us to understand human affairs.
8. We will be **more cautious** to watch for the deception of evil angels.
9. As angels deliver us from danger, so we can **trust our lives to God** who sends them (Hebrews 1:14)
10. As angels are **completely devoted to God** and ready to serve Him, so should we follow their example. Their unceasing service should motivate us to be more devoted in our service to God.

I. EXISTENCE OF ANGELS.

Jesus, Paul and most great Bible characters taught their existence. In Matthew 4:11, angels ministered to Christ after His wilderness temptation. The word "angel" first occurs in Genesis 16:7, where the angel of the Lord ministered to Hagar after Sarah had mistreated her (1913 BC). The existence of angels is tied to the reliability of the testimony of Christ and the Bible.

II. ORIGIN OF ANGELS.

Angels, like man, were created by a special act of God. They were not formerly men, nor did they evolve, but were created as angels, and do not procreate (Matthew 22:28-30). They are called "sons of God" (Job 1:6; 2:1) because they are directly created by God.

"All the sons of God" shouted with joy at the creation of the earth (Job 38:4-7). This shows that God created angels before He created the earth.

"Praise ye him, all his angels.....for he commanded, and they were created." Psalm 148:2,5.
Jesus Christ created them all (John 1:1-3, Colossians 1:16). The purpose of their creation was to glorify and worship Jesus Christ (Colossians 1:16; Hebrews 1:6; Revelation 4:11).

III. THE FALL OF ANGELS.

1. The Fact of their Fall. All angels were created sinless, but Lucifer who wanted to be like the Most High (Isaiah 14:12-17, Note his five "I wills") through pride led a rebellion of angels against God. Ezekiel 28:15-17 describes Satan's fall. Some angels are evil (Psalm 78:49; Matthew 25:41; Revelation 9:11; 12:7-9). This is because they left their own principality and proper habitation (Jude 6) and sinned (2 Peter 2:4).

2. The Time of their Fall. Their fall occurred before the fall of man.

3. The Cause of their Fall. They were created perfect with all affections of their heart directed to God
Question: How could such a being turn away from God?

Answer: Their fall was due to their deliberate, self-determined revolt against God. They chose self and their interests in preference to God and His interests.

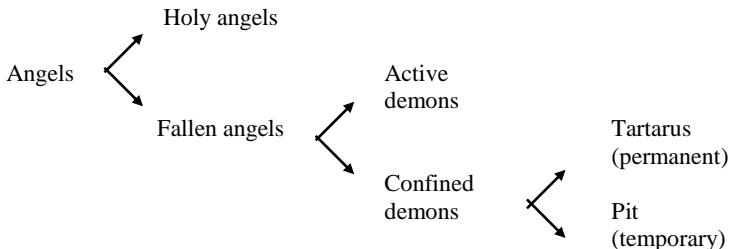
Question: What motive caused their revolt?

Answer: Undue ambition and the desire to surpass God, along with great prosperity, beauty, selfishness, pride, discontentment with what they had, and craving to get all that everyone else had. The cause of Satan's fall, was the cause of the fall of other evil angels.

IV. THE RESULT OF THEIR FALL.

- a) All of them lost their original holiness and became corrupt in nature and conduct (Matthew 10:1).
- b) Some were cast down to hell (Tartarus) & are held there in chains until judgment day (2 Peter 2:4).
- c) Some are left free to oppose the work of good angels (Revelation 12:7-9; Daniel 10:12,13,20,21).
- d) The ground was cursed because of Adam's sin (Genesis 3:17-19), and creation is groaning because of the Fall (Romans 8:19-22).
- e) They will be cast to the earth in the middle of the seven year tribulation (Revelation 12:8,9), then into the pit for 1,000 years. Then following their judgment (1 Corinthians 6:3), they will be cast into the Lake of Fire (Matthew 25:41; 2 Peter 2:4; Jude 6).
"And the angels which kept not their first estate but left their own habitation, He hath reserved in everlasting chains under darkness unto the judgment of the great day." (Jude 6).

A. Classification of Angels



B. Number of Angels.

"to an **innumerable** company of angels". (Hebrews 12:22).

"And I beheld, and I heard the voice of many angels round about the throne and the beasts and the elders: and the number of them was **ten thousand times ten thousand**, and thousands of thousands." (Revelation 5:11).

The number of angels is innumerable, 200 million is just an initial estimate of what John could see around God's throne. Hence angels constitute an exceedingly large number which cannot be counted. There is no increase or decrease in their number because they neither reproduce nor die.

C. Fact of their Organisation.

God is the Author of order and organisation, not of confusion (1 Corinthians 14:33). Both human and angelic societies are organised.

Angelic organisation is seen as follows:

i) "There was a day when the sons of God (angels) came to present themselves before the Lord." Job 1:6 and 2:1. There are stated assemblies among God's angels when they meet to praise God and report their service to Him. They, as well as us, are accountable to God. At these meetings God discusses the conduct of Christians on earth with the angels, as seen in the case of Job, where God testifies of Job as a "perfect and upright man, one that feareth God, and escheweth evil." (Job 1:8).

ii) "I saw the Lord sitting on His throne, and all the host of heaven standing by Him.... And the Lord said, who shall persuade Ahab, that he may go up and fall at Ramoth-gilead? And there came forth a spirit, and stood before the Lord,and said, I will be a lying spirit in the mouth of all his prophets." (1 Kings 22:19-23).

Again God discusses with the angels how to bring about the death of evil King Ahab in battle. God even uses evil angels to achieve His plans in both believers and unbelievers lives.

iii) Angels gathered in order to witness the creation of the world.

"Who laid the corner stone (of earth): when the morning stars (angels) sang together, and all the sons of God (angels) shouted for joy?" (Job 38:7,8).

iv) Jesus Christ is the captain of the host (army) of the Lord. Joshua then worshipped Him as God. (Joshua 5:13-15). God's armies are organised for war. Jesus Christ is their Captain, and Michael the Archangel under Jesus Christ. In the middle of the 7 year tribulation Michael and his angels fight and expel Satan and his angels from heaven, destroying their place (Topos⁵¹¹⁷ = territory, location, place), casting them to earth to suffer defeat and imprisonment in the pit 3½ years later.(Rev.12:7-10)

Demons loosed from the pit in the tribulation show organisation by having a king over them named Abaddon (destroyer) or Apollyon (Revelation 9:11). Thus Satan's armies are well organised.

v) Organisation levels amongst angels are seen in eight titles given to them:

✓ **Principalities**⁽⁷⁴⁶⁾ are princes or chiefs among angels (Ephesians 1:21; 3:10; Colossians 2:10), or among demons (1 Corinthians 15:24; Ephesians 6:12; Colossians 2:15).

✓ **Powers**⁽¹⁸⁴⁹⁾ or **Authorities** (Gk: Exousias¹⁸⁴⁹) (1 Peter 3:22).

✓ **Dominions** (Gk: Kuriotes²⁹⁶³) = lord or mighty one, an order of angels (Eph. 1:21; Col. 1:16).

✓ **Angels**

✓ **Rulers** of the darkness of this world (Gk: Kosmokrator²⁸⁸⁸) meaning "holders of this world, or Lord of the world." This is used of Satan and his angels (John 12:31; 2 Corinthians 4:4).

✓ **Spiritual wickedness** in high places, or wicked spirits. (Ephesians 6:12).

✓ **Thrones** (Gk: Thronos²³⁶²) referring to heavenly Kings, with a seat of power (Colossian 1:16).

<u>Romans 8:38</u>	<u>Ephesians 1:21</u>	<u>Ephesians 3:10</u>	<u>Ephesians 6:12</u>
Principalities Powers Angels	Principality Power Might Dominion	Principalities Powers in heavenlies	Principalities Powers Rulers of the darkness of this world Spiritual wickedness in high places

<u>Colossians 1:16</u>	<u>Colossians 2:10</u>	<u>Colossians 2:15</u>	<u>1 Peter 3:22</u>
Thrones Principalities Powers Dominions	Christ is the Head of Principalities and Powers	Christ spoiled Principalities and Powers	Angels,authorities and powers being made subject unto Him.

God has organised the good angels, and Satan has organised the evil angels.

Application: Angels are organised, and demons are organised, yet Christians individually and in groups, often feel no need to be organised, especially in fighting evil, in winning souls, and in teaching the Bible. Believers often feel they can “go it alone”, have no need of church, or expect victory without any prior, organised preparation and discipline. Believers often miss the best because they don’t plan their good works and evangelistic activities.

D. Ranking of Angels.

Within classes of angels there seems to be various ranks appointed by God. Different angels are created for different purposes, just as God has gifted different believers for different tasks.

The angels may be classified as follows:

- i) Governmental Rulers
 - (based on order of listing implying rank)
 - Thrones
 - Principalities
 - Authorities
 - Powers
 - Rulers of the darkness of this world
(The rule of angels is often manifest through earthly rulers.) Daniel 10:13,21; 12:1; Ephesians 6:12.
 - Wicked spirits
 - Angels
 - Defend God’s holiness against human pride.
 - Give unceasing worship, and have a ministry of purification.
- ii) Cherubim
- iii) Seraphim
- iv) Living creatures
- v) Individual angels
- vi) Specially designated angels
 - Angels of judgment
 - The Watchers
 - Angel of the abyss
 - Angel over fire
 - Angel of the waters
 - Michael, Gabriel, Lucifer
 - Are known by the service they render
 - Gen.19:13; 2 Sam. 24:16; 2 Kings 19:35; Ezek 9:1,5,7; Ps.78:49
 - Daniel 4:13,23
 - Revelation 9:1
 - Revelation 14:18
 - Revelation 16:5

V. APPEARANCE OF ANGELS

What do angels generally appear as?

1. **Young men.** “And entering into the sepulchre, they saw a young man sitting on the right side, clothed in a long white garment: and they were amazed.” (Mark 16:5).
2. **Lightning.** “His countenance was like lightning, and his raiment white as snow.” (Matthew 28:3).
3. **Shining garments.** “Behold, two men stood by them in shining garments.” (Luke 24:4).
4. **Face like the sun.** “I saw another mighty angel come down from heaven, clothed with a cloud; and a rainbow was upon his head, and his face was as it were the sun, and his feet as pillars of fire.” (Revelation 10:1).
5. Clothed in **pure and white linen**, and
6. Their breasts **girded with golden girdles.** (Revelation 15:6).

Because of angels’ splendour and great glory, we can understand why unsaved (Colossians 2:18) and believers (Rev 19:10;22:8,9) have attempted to worship them, and why God stops us from seeing them.

VI. NAMES OF GOOD ANGELS

- A. **Michael the Archangel.** His name means “who is **like** God?” It teaches the incomparableness of God and devotion to God’s will. He contrasts with Satan’s pride who declared “I will be **like** the Most High.” (Isaiah 14:14).

Michael is mentioned **five** times in the Bible, always warring against Satan’s forces:

1. He helps a lesser ranked angel break free from the evil angel Prince of Persia to answer Daniel’s prayer: “But, lo, Michael, one of the chief princes, came to help me;” Daniel 10:13,21.
“There is none that holdeth (supports) with me in these things, but Michael your prince.” 10:21.

We see here that:

- a) Michael is one of the chief princes, which implies that there may be other archangels.
 - b) Michael is Israel's prince guardian angel, assigned to Israel.
 - c) Satan assigns evil angels to increase the evil and corruption in a nation, as in the case of the evil angel called the Prince of Persia (a Principality), who is assigned to Persia.
 - d) "I remained there with the Kings of Persia" (10:13) shows angelic "thrones" referred to as the "Kings of Persia".
2. Michael will stand up to protect Israel in the future 7 year Tribulation, as their guardian angel: "At that time shall Michael stand up, the great Prince which standeth for the children of thy people: and there shall be a time of trouble...." (Daniel 12:1).
3. People hear Michael's voice shout out at the coming of Jesus Christ to catch up believers at the rapture in 1 Thessalonians 4:16.
"For the Lord himself shall descend from heaven with a shout, with the **voice** of the **archangel**, and the trump of God: and the dead in Christ shall rise first." (1 Thessalonians 4:16).

Question: Why does Michael shout at the rapture?

Answer: Because Israel comes back into God's prophetic program with the 70th week commencing, leaving only 7 years until Christ sets up His Kingdom on earth. This is cause enough to shout for joy.

4. Michael disputes with Satan about the body of Moses.

"Yet Michael the archangel, when contending with the devil he disputed about the body of Moses, durst not bring against him a railing accusation, but said, the Lord rebuke thee." Jude 9. In this situation, and in spite of Michael's power and greatness, not even he dare bring a railing accusation against Satan, but falling back in dependence upon God, he declares, "The Lord rebuke thee."

We cannot rebuke Satan, but only say to him, as Michael did, 'The Lord rebuke thee' Zech3:1,2
"He showed me Joshua the high priest standing before the angel of the Lord, and Satan standing at his right hand to resist him.

²And the LORD (first person) said unto Satan (second person), the LORD (third person) rebuke thee, O Satan:..."

We see the Trinity mentioned here, that is, the first person of the JHVH Godhead rebuking Satan in the name of another member of the JHVH Godhead.

5. Michael and his angels fight against and defeat Satan and his angels, destroying their place in the heavens, and casting them into the earth. (Revelation 12:7-12). This occurs in the middle of the seven year tribulation, causing rejoicing among those angels and departed saints who dwell in the heavens.

This should comfort us knowing that God's angels are more powerful than Satan's angels, and that ultimate victory is God's and the Christians. Not only does Michael overcome Satan in the heavens, but Christians on earth will overcome Satan in three ways:

- i) By the blood of the Lamb.
- ii) By the word of their testimony.
- iii) By loving not their lives unto death.

Lesson: The problem with Christians today is that they love their lives on earth with all its luxuries that they don't make any sacrifices to achieve anything for God and in winning of souls to Christ.

Conclusion: Michael's activities are always seen in connection with warfare with Satan, and with the resurrection of the body. If one so great as Michael, the chief angel of God's angelic armies, does not rely on his own strength in opposing Satan but respects his evil power, how much more must we rely upon God. (Ephesians 6:10-12; 2 Peter 2:11).

B. GABRIEL. His name means "the mighty one". He is never called an archangel. As Michael's job is to war against Satan's armies, Gabriel's job is always as a **messenger, revealer and interpreter** of God's purposes concerning Israel and the Messiah to the prophets of Israel.

He appears **four** times in Scripture, as follows:

- Gabriel appeared as a man to Daniel with the task “Gabriel, make this man to understand the vision.” (Daniel 8:15,16). This sets in place the role of Gabriel to **interpret God’s Word** to the prophets of Israel. This is an example of the first mention principle in Scripture.
This vision in Daniel 8:15-27 interprets the future Medo-Persian empire, the Greek empire, Alexander the Great and his four successors, and Antichrist’s activities at the time of the end.
- The man Gabriel, in answer to Daniel’s prayer, flew swiftly, and informed Daniel saying “I am now come forth to give thee skill and understanding” (Daniel 9:21,22).
He **interpreted the 70 week prophecy** to Daniel concerning the time of Messiah’s first coming, and some events of Christ’s second coming. (Daniel 9:20-27).
- Gabriel predicts the birth of John the Baptist** to Zacharias (Luke 1:10-20).
As the people prayed, Gabriel appeared to Zacharias to declare “thy prayer is heard” (1:13). He describes himself as “I am Gabriel, that stand in the presence of God; and am sent ... to shew thee these glad tidings” (1:19).
- Gabriel predicts the birth of Jesus Christ** and His ministry as King on David’s throne to Mary before Jesus was conceived. (Luke 1:26-38).

Conclusion: a) Gabriel, as one who is swift to reveal and interpret God’s message concerning Christ and Israel. So should we follow his example to be swift to carry God’s message of Christ to the lost. Gabriel is seen in association with the **Holy Spirit’s** ministry of interpreting God’s Word.
b) Michael is seen in association with **Jesus Christ** at the rapture (1 Thessalonians 4:16), and in fighting Satan, which Jesus does at His glorious appearing.
c) Lucifer’s sin of pride was to desire to be like the **Most High**.

Hence these three angels have some association with the three persons of the Godhead.

C. **CHERUBIM.** (Cherub singular) are heavenly beings of the highest order, created with incredible power and beauty.

- Description.** During Ezekiel’s captivity in Babylon, he received a vision of God’s glory involving four living creatures (Ezekiel 1:1-28).
 - Each has **four faces**, being that of a man, lion, ox and eagle.
“They four had the face of a **man**, and the face of a **lion** on the right side: of an **ox** on the left side,and of an **eagle**.” Ezekiel 1:10.
“Every one had four faces; the first face was the face of a **cherub**, and the second face was the face of a **man**, and the third the face of a **lion**, and the fourth the face of an **eagle**”. Ezekiel 10:14.
By comparing these two passages, we see that a **cherub** has the face of an **ox**.
 - “I knew that they were the cherubims. Every one had **four faces** apiece, and every one had **four wings**; and the likeness of the **hands** of a **man** was under their wings.Ezekiel 10:20,21
 - “The sole of their feet was like the sole of a **calf’s foot**.” Ezekiel 1:7.
 - “The noise of their **wings**, was like the noise of **great waters**, as the voice of the Almighty.” Ezekiel 1:24.
 - A **man** (Christ) sat on a sapphire throne high over their heads. Ezekiel 1:26.
 - “The living creatures ran and returned as the appearance of a **flash of lightning**.” Ezek.1:14
 - “Their whole body, backs, hands, wings and wheels were **full of eyes** round about” Ezek10:12

2. **Scriptural occurrences.**

- Cherubim first appear at the gate of the **garden of Eden** after man was expelled (Genesis 3:24). They guarded the way to the tree of life lest sinful man should eat of it and live forever in an unredeemable state (Genesis 3:22). They teach us that sin and paradise are incompatible. Sinful man cannot approach God without the righteousness of Christ.
Statues of winged bulls and lions with human faces guarded the entrances of temples and palaces of ancient Babylon and Assyria. These nations were near the garden of Eden.
- Golden images of cherubim facing each other appear on the **mercy seat** of the Tabernacle (Exodus 25:17-22). God said “There I will meet with thee, and I will commune with thee from above the mercy seat, from between the two cherubims.” (Exodus 25:22).

- They are hence called “cherubims of glory” shadowing the mercy seat; of which we cannot now speak particularly.” Hebrews 9:5. They guarded the holiness of God against sinful man breaking God’s law. When they saw the blood on the mercy seat, judgment was stayed.
- iii) They appear as **tapestry on the curtain of the tabernacle**, separating unholy people from God’s presence in the Holy of Holies (Exodus 26:1).
 - iv) “Hezekiah prayed before the Lord, and said, O Lord God of Israel, which dwellest between the cherubims, ...” (2 Kings 19:15).
 - v) Solomon in his temple “set the cherubims within the **inner house** and he overlaid the cherubims with gold. He carved all the **walls** of the house ... with cherubims, palm trees and open flowers.” (1 Kings 6:21-29).
 - vi) Ezekiel while captive in Babylon received visions of the glory of God with four living creatures (1:1-28) later identified as cherubim (10:4,18-22).
 - vii) The **Millennial temple** will have cherubim carved on its inside walls:
“From the ground unto above the door were cherubims and palm trees made, and on the wall of the temple.” (Ezekiel 41:20).
 - viii) John sees four living creatures very similar to cherubim in heaven in Revelation 4:6-8 “in the midst of the throne, and round about the throne, were four beasts **full of eyes** before and behind. And the first beast was like a **lion**, ... and the second beast like a **calf**, and the third beast had a face as a **man**, and the fourth beast was like a flying **eagle**.”

3. Purpose and Duties of Cherubim

Cherubim are never called angels because they are not messengers in their duties. They never carry instructions from God to men.

- i) Their purpose is to **proclaim** and **protect** God’s **glory**, **presence** and **holiness**.
- ii) They are never sent from God’s presence but are confined to God’s throne. They designate the **place of God’s presence**, as in the Garden of Eden, the Tabernacle, and in Solomon’s temple.

The Shekinah glory represents God who is dwelling between the cherubims:

“Thou that **dwelllest between the cherubims**, shine forth.” Psalm 80:1.

“The Lord reigneth: let the people tremble: he **sitteth between the cherubims**.” Psalm 99:1

- iii) They show the **unapproachableness** of God.
- iv) They show God’s **glory**.
- v) They show God’s **intervention** in human affairs in Ezekiel 1.

vi) Above the mercy seat they show how God can meet sinful man on the basis of blood sacrifice, and through a God given priesthood. These pointed to Christ as our only blood sacrifice to atone for our sins and as our great High Priest.

They also teach the grace of God that provides salvation for man and access to God through Jesus Christ’s blood sacrifice.

D. SERAPHIM. Or “burning ones” are only mentioned in Isaiah 6:2,6.

Cherubim are under God’s throne. “**Above** the firmament that was over their heads was the likeness of a throne...” (Ezekiel 1:26).

‘This is the living creature that I saw **under** the God of Israel..they were the cherubims’ Ezek.10:20

The Seraphim stand above God’s throne.

“....a throne.....**above** it stood the seraphims” (Isaiah 6:1,2), their name meaning “burning ones” speaking of their consuming devotion to God.

“**Above** it stood the seraphims: each one had 6 wings; with two he covered his face, and with two he covered his feet, and with two he did fly.”

The symbolism is clear: “with two (wings) they cover their faces” shows that even the most exalted spirits cannot bear the full vision of God’s **glory**.

“with two (wings) they cover their feet” - shows their **reverence**, their hesitancy to tread uninvited upon holy ground.

“with two (wings) they did fly” - shows their **swiftness** to obey God’s commands.

They cried to each other “Holy, Holy, Holy, is Yahweh of hosts; the whole earth is full of his glory.” (Isaiah 6:3).

Their duties are to lead heaven in the worship of God’s holiness, and to purify God’s servants for true worship and service. Hence they are concerned with worship and holiness, whereas cherubim are concerned with justice and might.

Application: They show that a sinner must be cleansed of sin before he can stand before God and serve Him (as in Isaiah’s case). Isaiah’s lips, now cleansed (by the hot coal) are now ready to speak God’s message to men (Isaiah 6:8,9).

E. GUARDIAN ANGELS.

“Take heed that ye despise not one of these **little ones**; for I say unto you, that **in heaven their angels** do always behold the face of my Father which is in heaven.” (Matthew 18:10).

The holy angels minister to the saints (Hebrews 1:14):

1. Through giving assistance, protection and deliverance (Lot in Genesis 19:11); “He shall give his angels charge over thee, to keep thee in all thy ways.” (Psalm 91:11); “Blessed be the God of Shadrach, Meshach, Abed-nege who hath sent his angel, and delivered his servants that trusted in Him.” (Daniel 3:28);
“The angel of the Lord by night opened the prison doors (for the apostles).” (Acts 5:19);
“Then said they, It is his (Peter’s) angel.” (Acts 12:15).
2. Through giving encouragement. “There stood by me this night the angel of God, whose I am saying, Fear not, Paul...” (Acts 27:23,24).
3. Through watching over and representing believers in heaven. “The angel of the Lord encampeth round about them that fear him, and delivereth them.” (Psalm 34:7).
4. Through bringing people that they are assigned to, to hear the gospel, receive Christ as Saviour, and to serve God in this life. (Matthew 18:10).

When a person gets saved, their angels rejoice in heaven that the person they are assigned to has been saved. When we preach the gospel and lead people to Christ, we are cooperating with God and with holy angels who are assigned to the new believer from birth.

F. GENERAL NAMES OF ANGELS.

1. **Angel** is a supernatural, heavenly being who serves God’s purposes.
2. **Ministering spirits.** “Are they not all ministering spirits, sent forth to minister for them who shall be heirs of salvation?” (Hebrews 1:14).
“Who maketh his angels spirits; his ministers a flaming fire.” (Psalm 104:4).
They minister for God in spiritual service.
3. **Host** shows God’s angels as His army. Angels are called upon to bless the Lord.
“Bless ye the Lord, all ye his hosts; ye ministers of his that do his pleasure.” (Psalm 103:20,21)
“Hosts” shows God’s heavenly army as a military force to accomplish His will and to fight His battles. God’s name, Yahweh of hosts, shows God as Commander in Chief of a great heavenly army. (Psalm 89:8).
4. **Chariots of fire** protected Elisha and his servant from the Syrian army. “Behold, the mountain was full of horses and chariots of fire round about Elisha.” (II Kings 6:16,17). Four chariots which executed God’s military judgments on nations around Israel are seen in Zechariah 6:1-8. Elijah was caught up to heaven in a chariot of fire in 2 Kings 2:11.
5. **Watchers** denote angels as spectators of people and events of earth. God uses them to control and judge the world governments.

“Behold, a watcher and an holy one came down from heaven. ... This matter is by the decree of the watchers ... to the intent that the living may know that the Most High ruleth in the Kingdom of men.” (Daniel 4:13,17).

On four occasions angels are said to be observing:

- a) Angels rejoice with God when one sinner repents (Luke 15:10).

- b) "Whosoever shall confess me before men, him shall the Son of Man confess before the angels of God: but he that denieth me before men shall be denied before the angels of God." (Luke 12:8,9). They watch us confessing or denying Christ publicly.
- c) All of Christ's life on earth was "seen of angels". (1 Timothy 3:16).
- d) Angels watch the Beast worshippers being tormented forever. (Revelation 14:10,11).
6. **Sons of God** (Job 1:6; 2:1; 38:7; Genesis 6:2,4) is used of angels. The Hebrew is "bene elohim", meaning in contrast with man, angels belong to the class of Elohim (God) speaking of their might. In Job 1 and 2, they assemble before God, serve Him and answer to God.
7. **Sons of the mighty**. (bene elim).
- "Who among the **sons of the mighty** can be likened unto the Lord?" (Psalm 89:6). This describes the great strength of angels.
- "Give unto the LORD, O ye **mighty**...glory and strength." (Psalm 29:1).
- "Bless the LORD, ye his angels, that excel in **strength**.." (Psalm 103:20).
- Note:** Often the expression "son(s) of" describes a class of persons. For example:
- a) sons of the prophets (2 Kings 2:3,5,7,15; 6:1) refer to a class known as prophets.
 - b) sons of belial (1 Samuel 2:12; 25:17,25) means a class of lawless or worthless persons.
 - c) sons of Asaph (Nehemiah 11:22) refer to a class of singers founded by Asaph.
 - d) sons of Levi (Nehemiah 12:23; Malachi 3:3 "He shall purify the sons of Levi") refers to the priestly class descended from Levi.
 - e) sons of Arcturus (Job 38:22) refers to a class of stars belonging to the brightest star in the constellation Bootes. "Canst thou guide Arcturus with his sons?"
 - f) Jesus Christ as the only begotten Son of God means that He is uniquely of the class of **God**.
8. **Gods** (Elohim⁴³⁰ in Hebrew), sometimes applies to angels, though Elohim mostly refers to God.
- "Thou hast made him (man) a little lower than the **angels** (elohim)." Psalm 8:5.
- "Give unto the LORD, O ye **mighty** (Hebrew "El" meaning angels)...glory." Psalm 29:1.
- "Worship him, all ye gods (Elohim⁴³⁰ or angels)". Psalm 97:7; 138:1.
- "Elohim" is used of angels as of God because they are like God as spirit beings.
- The same word is used of man. "I have said, Ye are gods (Elohim⁴³⁰) and all of you are children of the most High." It is used in Psalm 82:6 and in John 10:33,34 by Jesus. It means "magistrates" here because of the dignity and honour of their office is applied to man.
9. **Flaming Fire** (Psalm 104:4 and Hebrews 12:29) reveals their holiness and zeal for God.
10. **Princes** or **Principalities**. These are angels that are princes over certain nations. Satan is the prince of this world (John 12:31; 14:30; 16:11), having demon princes over the nations (Daniel 10:13,20,21; 12:1).
11. **Stars**, used of angels, denotes their heavenly nature and dwelling place. (Job 38:7). Both angels and stars are called "the host of heaven". (Psalm 33:6; Nehemiah 9:6; "They fought from heaven; the **stars** in their courses fought against Sisera." Judges 5:20.). Note that astrology is connected with demon worship through the term "stars", or "host of heaven": "they burned incense unto Baal, to the sun, to the moon, to the planets, and to all the host of heaven." 2 Kings 23:5; Jeremiah 19:13;
- "God gave them up to worship the host of heaven." Acts 7:42.
- Satan is described in his rebellion against God as a "great red dragon and his tail drew the third part of the **stars** of heaven, and did cast them to the earth." Revelation 12:3,4.
- "I saw a **star** fall from heaven to the earth: and to him was given the key of the bottomless pit." Revelation 9:1.
- Stars then symbolise angels. Astrology and worship of the stars is condemned in Deuteronomy 18:10-14 as being connected with demonism. (Jeremiah 10:2; 2 Kings 23:5; 2 Chronicles 33:3; Isaiah 47:13).
12. **Angel of light**. "Satan himself is transformed into an angel of light." (2 Corinthians 11:14).

VII. NATURE OR CHARACTER OF GOOD ANGELS.

A. The nature of angels is as follows:

1. **Created beings.** Revelation 4:11; “He commanded and they were created.” Psalm 148:5.
2. **Spirit beings.** Hebrews 1:14; Psalm 104:4. They are not limited to the physical realm.
3. **Immortal.** “Neither can they die any more: for they are equal unto the angels.” Luke 20:34-36
4. **A company of beings, not a race.** “An innumerable company of angels.” Hebrews 12:22.
5. **Innumerable.** They are innumerable from man’s viewpoint. Only God knows their number.
6. **Higher than man.** “Thou madest him (man) a little lower than the angels.” Hebrews 2:7.
7. **Invisible.** “visible and invisible” Col. 1:16. At times they can become visible to human eyes.
8. **Intelligence.** They have greater knowledge than man but are not omniscient (Matthew 24:36). They have continued to learn since their creation (Eph. 3:10). They learn more of the wisdom of God by studying churches and Christians. Their learning capacity has not been corrupted by sin as has man’s. They do not have to study the past, because they have experienced it.
9. **Strength.** Paul calls them “mighty angels” (2 Thessalonians 1:7).
One angel killed 185,000 Assyrian soldiers in a night (Isaiah 37:36).
We should pray “God help me to be strong to do your work.”
“His angels, that excel in strength, that do his commandments, hearkening unto the voice of his word.” Psalm 103:20.
One angel killed 70,000 Israelites due to David’s sin. 2 Samuel 24:15,16.
One angel rolled away a four ton stone from Christ’s tomb.
10. **Personality.** This is proven because they have **intelligence** (Matthew 8:29; Daniel 9:23; 10:21; 1 Peter 1:12), **emotions** (Luke 2:13; James 2:19; Revelation 12:17), and **wills** (Luke 8:28-31; 2 Timothy 2:26; Jude 6). These are the three necessary features of personality. The Holy Spirit shows these qualities, proving He is a person, not an active force as JW’s claim. They can render intelligent worship to God.
They are held responsible for the quality of their service and for their moral choices.
11. They neither marry nor die. Matthew 22:30; Luke 20:35,36.
12. Angels eat food. “Man did eat angels’ food.” Psalms 78:25
13. Angels dwell in the heavens. John 1:51; Ephesians 3:10.
14. Believers shall judge angels. 1 Corinthians 6:3.
15. They are not bound by natural laws, because they are spirits:
 - they can enter locked prisons (Acts 12:7).
 - open prison doors (Acts 5:19).
 - ascend in a flame of fire (Judges 13:19,20).
 - travel great distances very quickly, faster than the speed of light.An angel apologised to Daniel for taking 21 days to travel from heaven to earth. Dan.10:12,13
16. Force of appearance. Mary, Zacharias and the shepherds were greatly afraid at their sighting. The Roman soldiers at Christ’s tomb trembled for fear and became as dead men (Matt. 28:4).
17. Angels observe human activities.

B. The character of good angels is as follows:

1. **Holy.** Mark 8:38; Revelation 14:10. They are sinless and are unable to fall.
2. **Meek.** 2 Peter 2:11; Jude 9. Their character resembles the meekness of God. They are humble in contrast to the pride of fallen angels.
3. They **worship** God. Hebrews 1:6; Revelation 22:9. Good angels never accept worship from man, though fallen angels seek to be worshipped.
4. They **obey God** immediately and unquestioningly. (1 Peter 3:22).
“ye ministers of his that do his pleasure.” (Psalm 103:20,21).
5. Their **knowledge** is limited, but has increased over time, particularly as they study God’s workings on earth. (1 Peter 1:12).
6. **Stronger than man** (2 Peter 2:11);

“Angels are greater in power and in might” (Revelation 18:1,21); “a mighty angel” (2 Thessalonians 1:7); one angel killed 185,000 Assyrian soldiers in one night, and rescued King Hezekiah and Jerusalem (2 Kings 19:35).

7. **Patience.** Numbers 22:22-35 shows the angel gently resisting Balaam going to curse Israel.
8. **Joy.** They rejoice at the creation of earth (Job 38:7) & rejoice over people being saved. Luke 15:10
9. They are **clothed** in white linen, bright as light. No darkness is in them. (Revelation 15:6).

VIII. THE WORK AND MINISTRY OF GOOD ANGELS.

They minister to worship God in heaven, and to serve man on earth.

A. They minister to God in:

1. Worship and praise. In Isaiah 6:3 and Revelation 4:6-11 they worship God for His holiness, worthiness, creation and omnipotence.
2. Service to God and men. Since “angel” means “messenger”, they carry God’s messages to men such as Manoah, Zacharias (Luke 1:19), Mary (Luke 1:26-33), & the shepherds at Christ’s birth.
3. Governing the universe.
In Psalm 103:19,20 God’s rule is associated with the service of angels:
 - in controlling **nature**, such as winds (Revelation 7:1), the seas (Revelation 16:3), the sun’s heat (Revelation 16:8,9).
 - in controlling **nations**. Behind the scenes, good angels oppose Satan & his angels. Dan.10:13,21
Evil angels may influence governments to oppose the gospel and Christians. For our needs we have the armour of God (Eph. 6:10-13) and the angels of God (2 Kings 6:17; Heb. 1:14).

4. Protecting believers. They may harass our enemies (Psalm 35:4,5,6) and deliver us from their wicked works (Psalm 34:7; Psalm 63:9; Hebrews 1:14).
5. Execute God’s judgments, as in the destruction of Sodom and Gomorrah (Genesis 9:1-13), plaguing Egypt (Psalm 78:43,49), destroying Egypt’s firstborn (Exodus 12:13,23), chastening Israel by killing 70,000 Israelites (1 Chronicles 21:15-18), killing 185,000 Assyrian soldiers (2 Kings 19:35), and Michael and his angels will judge Satan and his angels (Revelation 12:7-9).

B. They minister to Christ in:

1. Predicting His birth to Mary, assuring her that her child would be the God-man and Saviour. Luke 1:26-28.
2. Announcing His birth to shepherds. Luke 2:8-15.
3. Protecting Him as a baby from Herod by warning His parents to flee to Egypt, then return to Nazareth after Herod’s death. Matthew 2:13-21.
4. Strengthening Christ during His earthly trials in the wilderness. After this trial “angels came and ministered unto Him.” Matthew 4:11.
In Gethsemane when He faced the full wrath of God for our sins, an angel came to strengthen Him. Luke 22:43.
5. Defended Christ at His request. When He was taken prisoner, He could have called 12 legions of angels to rescue Him, but He willingly went to the cross to pay for our sins. Matthew 26:53.
6. Announced His resurrection. An angel rolled away the stone from Christ’s tomb to let people in, and later announced Christ’s resurrection to those coming to the tomb. Matthew 28:6; Luke 24:5-8
7. Angels are subject to Him in heaven now. “Angels, authorities and powers being made subject unto him.” 1 Peter 3:22.
8. Angels rejoice when God saves a repentant sinner. Luke 15:10.
9. Angels now worship the God-man in heaven. Revelation 5:11,12.
10. Angels predicted Christ’s bodily return in the clouds. Acts 1:11.
11. Angels accompany Christ when He returns in glory. Matthew 25:31.
12. Angels worship Christ when He returns. Hebrews 1:6.
13. Angels gather the saved and wicked at Christ’s return. Matt. 13:39-43; 24:31; 2 Thess. 1:7-10.

C. Angels are present at the beginning of new dispensations or at great events.

1. At Creation, “the morning stars sang together, and all the sons of God shouted for joy.” Job 38:7

2. At the **giving of the Law**, at Mount Sinai, God used angels to deliver the Law to Moses, as seen from:
 - i) Galatians 3:19 “the law was ordained by angels in the hand of a mediator.”
The Law came from angels to Moses the mediator, then to the people.
 - ii) Acts 7:38,53 “Who have received the law by the disposition of angels and have not kept it.”
 - iii) Hebrews 2:2 “For if the word spoken by angels was steadfast....”
God’s giving of the law through angels explains the Jews high regard for angels. It explains why Hebrews 1 and 2 shows the superiority of Christ over angels, and why Christ replaced the Mosaic law.
3. At Christ’s birth, resurrection, ascension and return.
4. They **minister to believers**. As God loves us, so angels are also interested in us, as seen in Daniel 10:11, “O Daniel, a man greatly beloved.”
Their ministry shows God’s love and care for us, in these forms:
 - a) **Revealing** God’s will and word to men. Much of the books of Daniel and Revelation were given through angels.
 - b) **Guiding** and directing people to win others to Christ.
An angel directed Philip to go south from Samaria to the Gaza desert to win the Ethiopian eunuch to Christ. (Acts 8:26). Notice that the angel gave the general direction, but the Holy Spirit pointed out the exact person (Acts 8:29).
 - c) **Providing** physical needs such as food and water. For example:
 - i) To Hagar and Ishmael in the desert (Genesis 21:17-20).
 - ii) God providing manna known as angels food to Israel in the wilderness. Psalm 78:23-25
 - iii) When Elijah had fled from Jezebel and had lay down to die, an angel awoke him and provided him with “a cake baken on the coals, and a cruse of water.” (1 Kings 19:5-7).
 - iv) Angels ministered to Christ after His 40 days fasting and His temptation by Satan in the wilderness. (Matthew 4:11).
 - d) **Protecting** or guarding believers from physical danger:
 - i) God sent an angel to shut the lions’ mouths when Daniel was thrown into the lions’ den. (Daniel 6:20-23).
 - ii) God sent an angelic army to surround and protect Elisha and his servant at Dothan from the Syrian army. Elisha said “Fear not: for they that be with us (angels) are more than they that be with them.” (2 Kings 6:16-17).
 - iii) God sent an angel to kill 185,000 Assyrians who were laying siege to Jerusalem. Isaiah 36,37.
 - e) **Delivering** believers from harm:
 - i) When the Jewish leaders imprisoned the apostles, an angel opened the doors, led them out and told them to keep preaching. (Acts 5:17-20).
 - ii) Peter was delivered from prison by an angel causing his chains to fall off, opening the prison doors and leading him out. (Acts 12:5-10).
 - iii) God delivers from harm, by sealing the 144,000 Israelite witnesses in the Tribulation so they are preserved to complete their job of preaching the Gospel to the world.
 - f) **Strengthening** and **encouraging** believers to continue preaching and serving God:
 - i) After setting the apostles free from prison, an angel encouraged them to continue preaching. (Acts 5:19-20).
 - ii) An angel appeared to Paul at sea in a storm predicting that he would be preserved from death at sea so he could preach at Rome. (Acts 27:23-25).
 - g) **Sent in answer to prayer:**
 - i) Daniel prayed for Israel’s restoration to the land and an angel came to instruct him and answer his prayer. (Daniel 9:20-24).

- ii) Daniel prayed and fasted, so God sent an angel to give him the detailed history of the next 300 years. (Daniel 10:10-12).
 - iii) When Herod imprisoned Peter, the church prayed for his release without ceasing, and God sent an angel to deliver him. (Acts 12:1-17).
- h) Carrying believers to heaven:**
- Angels carried Lazarus' spirit to paradise at death (Luke 16:22). Michael disputed with Satan over Moses' body (Jude 9). Scripture shows that the Holy Spirit's and angels' ministry differs as follows:

<u>Angels</u>	<u>Holy Spirit</u>
1. External and physical.	1. Internal and Spiritual.
2. Minister <u>for us</u> .	2. Minister <u>in us</u> .
3. Guard our <u>bodies</u> and <u>pathway</u> .	3. Guards our spirits and guides us the right way.
4. May be agents to answer prayer.	4. The Prompter and Director of our prayers (Romans 8:26,27).
i) Angels observe believers . Angels learn and develop from observing the work of God and men on earth in this church age. Luke 12:8,9; 1 Corinthians 4:9, 11:10; "I charge thee before God and the Lord Jesus Christ, and the elect angels....do nothing by partiality." 1 Timothy 5:21.	
j) Angels execute judgment on unbelievers and nations . For example: Herod was eaten of worms (Acts 12:23), and Sodomites were blinded and destroyed (Genesis 19:13,11).	
k) Future work of angels. They will gather the elect when Christ returns. (Matthew 24:31). They will separate the saved from the lost at Christ's coming. (Matthew 13:39,49,50).	
Question: What do they observe?	
i) Salvation. They aim to learn more about God as they observe the operation of salvation in people. "of which salvation the prophets have inquired and searched diligently which things the angels desire to look into." 1 Peter 1:10-12. As angels learn and develop, they can worship and serve God with more understanding and devotion.	
ii) Worship. Angels observe worship in a local church, looking for evidence of woman's subjection to man. "For this cause ought the woman to have power on her head because of the angels." 1 Corinthians 11:1-10. A woman's long hair (v.15) or head covering evidenced her submissive condition of heart, as she worshipped God. (v.3).	
iii) Work and witness. Angels observe the ministry of each believer in any local church. Paul charges Timothy before God and the holy angels to administer his church impartially, "I charge thee before God, and the Lord Jesus Christ, and the elect angels, that thou observe these things without preferring one before another, doing nothing by partiality." (1 Timothy 5:21). Paul describes the Apostles and all believers as a public spectacle involved in a life and death struggle with Satan over the souls of men. God, Satan, man, good and evil angels, watched the Apostles and believers fighting daily for the souls of men. "We are made a spectacle unto the world, to angels, and to men." (1 Corinthians 4:9). When a sinner understands the gospel and repents, the angels rejoice from their "grandstand" in heaven. (Luke 15:10). Angels will hear Christ confessing or denying people who confessed or denied Him on earth before men (Luke 12:8,9); Angels will witness the rewarding of believers. (Matthew 16:27). The fact that angels observe us should cause us to walk soberly in dedication, dependence on Christ, and in dignity.	

IX. ACTIVITY AND WORK OF EVIL ANGELS (DEMONS)

Under Satan's control are a great number of evil spirit beings known as demons, authorities, principalities, powers, rulers of darkness, etc..

These are symbolised in Scripture by:

1. Fowls of the air. (Matthew 13:4,19).
2. Unclean and hateful birds in a cage. (Revelation 18:1-3).
3. Unclean frogs (Revelation 16:13,14).
4. Locusts from the bottomless pit. (Revelation 9:1-10).

The activity of demonic spirits is summarised as, "The thief cometh to steal, and to kill, and to destroy." (John 10:10).

These spirits attack mankind spiritually, mentally, emotionally, physically and morally. Examples of this are:

1. They **oppose** God's servants by "taking away the word sown." Matthew 13:19.
2. They **hinder** the Gospel: "but Satan hindered us". 1 Thessalonians 2:18.
3. They **take** people captive: "who are taken captive by him". 2 Timothy 2:26.
4. They **blind** unbelievers' minds. 2 Corinthians 4:4.
5. They **sow tares** (children of the devil) among wheat (believers in a local church), to destroy its outreach. Matthew 13:39.
6. They **seduce** people to believe error so as to stop them achieving God's plan for their lives. They seek to lead astray, tempt, corrupt, and to cause people to be obsessed with false ideas. 1 Timothy 4:1; Mark 13:22; 1 John 2:26.
7. They **trouble** people as in the case of Saul (1 Samuel 16:14).
The Hebrew word for "trouble" means "to terrify, to make fearful or afraid."
It means agitation of mind, perplexing and uneasiness.
8. They **oppress** people: "healing all that were oppressed of the devil." Acts 10:38.
"Oppress" means to "overburden in body or mind."
9. They **vex** people, meaning "to suffer at the hands of another, to harass, to mob, to experience pain" (Acts 5:16; Luke 6:18); "Vexed with unclean spirits".
"My daughter is grievously vexed with a devil." (Matthew 15:22).
10. They **bind** people: "whom Satan hath bound these 18 years." Luke 13:16.
This means "to tie up, confine, to fasten by binding cords around".
11. They **deceive** people: This is a sign of Christ's return. Matthew 24:4,5,11,24.
12. They **possess** people. They occupy, own and indwell a person, sometimes causing lunacy, blindness, and dumbness. Matthew 4:24.
13. They **buffet** people, meaning "to hit with blow after blow, to punch, to slap, and to fight against." 2 Corinthians 12:7.
14. They **resist** people, meaning they "stand up against, to act as an adversary, and to oppose." Zechariah 3:1-3.
15. They **torment** people (Revelation 9:1-11; 16:13-14).
16. They **wrestle** against us (Ephesians 6:12), seeking to pin us to the ground so we achieve nothing for God, or to throw us out of the ring or race of life for people's souls.

Question: What do we have to oppose them and to defend ourselves?

Answer: The Lord has given the believer mighty spiritual weapons to defeat the attacks of Satan:

1. **The Word of God.** Satan's power to deceive is due to people's ignorance of God's Word. God's people are often destroyed for lack of knowledge (Hosea 4:6). Jesus used the Word of God when He said "it is written" to defeat Satan (Matthew 4:1-10).
2. **The Whole Armour of God.** Ephesians 6:10-18. Truth, righteousness, gospel of peace, shield of faith, helmet of salvation, sword of the Spirit, praying and watching.
3. **Jesus Christ living in us.** At salvation, Jesus Christ, the Father and the Holy Spirit indwell the Christian. Greater is He that is in you than he that is in the world. (1 John 4:4).
4. **The Filling and Power of the Holy Spirit.** The Holy Spirit filled believer has the power to withstand, fight and conquer all the power of the enemy.

"If I cast out devils by the Spirit of God."

"First bind the strong man, and then he will spoil his goods." Matthew 12:28,29.

5. **Fellow believers in a local church.** "Nevertheless, God that comforteth those that are cast down, comforted us by the coming of Titus." 2 Corinthians 7:6.
A reason for coming to church is for comfort, as believers use spiritual gifts to help each other.
6. Good angels ministering to us.
7. The Name of Jesus Christ. Acts 16:18.
8. The Blood of Jesus Christ cleansing us from sin. Revelation 12:11.

X. JESUS CHRIST'S SUPERIORITY TO ANGELS.

The Book of Hebrews in showing Christ's perfection and superiority to the Old Testament system and persons, begins by showing Christ's superiority to angels, who were highly esteemed by the Jews.

In Hebrews 1:2,3 **Christ is given a seven-fold exalted position** as:

1. **Heir of all things** (2). As the Son of God He is possessor or Lord of all things. All things are His "All things that the Father hath are mine." (John 16:15; 17:10).
An heir is one who acquires anything. The title "heir" denotes His rank and dignity.
2. **By whom also he made the worlds.** v.2. (eternity, the universe).
Christ is the agent of creation, the Creator Himself. John 1:3,10; Colossians 1:16; Ephesians 3:9; 1 Corinthians 8:6.
3. **Who being the brightness of His glory.** v.3.

Brightness means radiated splendour. The rays of the sun are its "brightness", or that by which the sun is seen and known. The sun itself we do not see; the beams which flow from it we do see. Hence, if God the Father be represented as the Sun ("The Lord God is a sun.." Psalm 84:11; Malachi 4:2), then Christ is the radiance of the sun. He is that by which we perceive or know God. "Neither knoweth any man the Father save the Son, and he to whomsoever the Son will reveal Him." (Matthew 11:27). As the sun's rays are of the same substance as the sun, so is Christ of the same substance (full Deity) as God the Father.

"Glory" means praise, applause, honour, dignity, splendour, dazzling light, excellence and perfection of God as resembling a bright light. This word is applied to:

- the sun and stars. (1 Corinthians 15:40,41).
- to the light Paul saw on the Damascus road. (Acts 22:11).
- the shining of Moses face. (2 Corinthians 3:7).
- the celestial light surrounding the angels. (Revelation 18:1).
- to glorified saints (Luke 9:31,32).
- to the dazzling splendour or majesty of God enthroned. (2 Thessalonians 1:9).

4. **The express image of his person.** v.3.

"Express image" means a character stamped. Christ is the exact resemblance of the Father, as an image is of the stamp. "Who is the image of the invisible God." Colossians 1:15.

5. **Upholding all things by the Word of His power.** v.3.

Christ upholds or sustains the universe by His powerful word or command.

Proof that Christ is God omnipotent:

- God spake, and it was done. (Psalms 33:9).
- Jesus commanded the waves and winds, and they were still. (Matthew 8:26,27).
- Jesus spoke to diseases and they departed, to the dead and they arose.

6. **He had by Himself purged our sins.**

By Himself = not by blood of bulls and lambs, but by his own blood.

Purged = purified, expiated (John 15:2)

= having made purification for our sins.

Cleansing us from all sin is why Christ came (1 John 1:7). Having done this:

7. **He sat down on the right hand of the Majesty on High,** His work of redemption being finished.

In Hebrews 1:4-14 we find **seven Old Testament quotations**, all of which prove the **superiority of Christ to the angels**. They are:

1. Christ has a **more excellent name**, “**my Son**” than the angels. 1:4,5.

This is quoted from Psalm 2:7, “The Lord hath said unto me, Thou art my Son, this day have I begotten thee.” Paul pinpointed the day of this begetting as the resurrection of Jesus Christ in Acts 13:33, “God hath fulfilled the same unto us their children, in that he hath **raised up Jesus** again; as it is also written in the second Psalm, Thou art **my Son**, this day have I begotten thee.” “Begotten” refers to the “Huios” (Son) entering the offices of Prophet, Priest and King. The name “sons of God” is applied to Christians (John 1:12; I John 3:1,2) and to angels (Genesis 6:2,4; Job 1:6; 2:1), but the argument here is that the name “my son” has never been given to any angel in particular.

From eternity past, Jesus Christ was God the Son.

At His incarnation, He humbled Himself to become a man.

In His resurrection He glorified His humanity, receiving back the eternal glory He had veiled.

2. Christ has a **better relationship** as the **Son of David** (1:5). This is quoted from 2 Samuel 7:14 “I will be his Father, and he shall be my son.” This promise was given to David to have a permanent heir/descendant to sit on His throne, to comfort David, after God forbade him from building the Temple. The immediate application was to David’s son, Solomon, whom God would love and discipline as a son (Psalm 89:27). The ultimate application is to Jesus Christ as the greater than Solomon, and the fulfiller of the Davidic Covenant.

3. **Christ receives worship of all angels**. 1:6. “Let all the angels of God **worship** Him.” God commanded all the angels to worship Christ, which proves that Jesus Christ is God. None of God’s angels would worship a mere creature, or heaven would be full of idolaters. Jesus Christ is not Michael the archangel, because Michael must worship Jesus as well. We only worship God, never a creature. “Worship him, all ye gods (angels).” Psalm 97:7.

4. **Christ is served by angels**. 1:7. “And of the angels he saith, Who maketh his angels spirits, and his ministers a flame of fire.” This is quoted from Psalm 104:4. Angels often served Christ when He was on earth. (Matthew 4:11; Luke 22:43). Angels obey God’s will as the wind (spirits) and lightning (flame of fire), while the Son is Lord of all.

5. **Christ is called “God enthroned”**. 1:8. This is quoted from Psalm 45:6,7:

“But unto the Son he saith, **thy throne, O God**, is for ever and ever...”

Christ’s deity is proven here by Him **owning the throne**, and by Him **being called “God”**.

- i) Angels minister before the throne, they do not sit on the throne.

Psalm 110 teaches that Jesus Christ is now enthroned in glory, but not yet enthroned on earth. Both God and the Lamb own the one throne in heaven.”

“...proceeding out of the throne (of God and of the Lamb).” Revelation 22:1.

“but the throne (of God and of the Lamb) shall be in it.” Revelation 22:3.

- ii) The Father here calls the Son “God”, proving Jesus Christ’s Deity.

6. **Christ is the Eternal Creator** of all things. 1:10,11,12.

“And, Thou Lord, in the beginning hast laid the foundation of the **earth**; and the heavens are the works of thy hands. They shall perish but thou remainest....”

This is quoted from Psalm 102:25-27 being addressed to JHVH.

Here in Hebrews 1:10-12, the writer applies it to Christ, hence calling Christ JHVH God. The angels did not lay the foundation of the earth, only Jesus Christ as God did that. He will one day fold up and change the old creation into a new universe. Everything around us changes, but Jesus Christ never changes, He is the same yesterday, today, and forever (Hebrews 13:8).

7. **Christ as King of Kings sits on the Father’s right hand** (1:13,14), the place of honour. This quotes Psalm 110:1. Christ applies this passage to Himself in Matthew 22:43,44.

Peter applies it to Christ in Acts 2:34,35 “until I make thine enemies thy footstool,” means to reduce Christ’s enemies to entire subjection. Ancient warriors stood on the necks of conquered kings as a sign of complete triumph over them.

Conclusion: No angel can lay claim to any of the above attributes of Christ.

Christ is fully God and fully man. Angels serve Christ and us who are saved.

XI. SATAN'S TACTICS.

"Lest Satan should get an advantage of us: for we are not ignorant of his devices." 2 Corinthians 2:11.

Aim: To war a good warfare we must know our enemy's devices and put on the whole armour of God to defeat Satan's devices.

1. THE NAMES OF SATAN

- a) The Anointed **cherub** who covers. Ezekiel 28:14,16. Before he fell, he was a high ranking guardian for God. "Anointed" means that he had a special position.
- b) The **Prince of this world**. John 12:31; 16:11. Satan rules a world of unsaved men and fallen angels.
- c) The **Prince of the power of the air**. Ephesians 2:2.
- d) The **Prince of demons, Beelzebub**. Matthew 12:24; Luke 11:15.
- e) The **god of this world**. 2 Corinthians 4:4. His job is to blind the minds of unbelievers, lest they be saved.
- f) **Lucifer**. Isaiah 14:12, son of the morning.
- g) **Satan** means adversary or opposer. Zechariah 3:1; Revelation 12:9. He opposes God, His program and His people. This name occurs 52 times in the Bible.
- h) The **Devil** (35 times used). Luke 4:2,13; Revelation 12:9 means slanderer, one who trips up. He utters maliciously false reports that injure another's reputation. He seeks to slander God, Christ and believers.
- i) The **Old Serpent**, identifies his crafty deception, as with Eve. Revelation 12:9; Genesis 3:1,14
- j) The **Great Dragon**. Revelation 12:3,7,9 portrays him as a terrifying, destructive beast seeking the total devastation of Christians.
- k) The **Evil one**. John 17:15; 1 John 5:18. The Greek noun "ho poneros" shows Satan to be intrinsically wicked and corrupt, who seeks to corrupt others. The Greek article "ho" shows Satan to be a specific person, not just evil as a concept. Christ prayed to keep believers from the power of the evil one (John 17:15) in which the whole world lies (1 John 5:18).
- l) **Destroyer**. Revelation 9:11. Satan destroys physical and spiritual life.
- m) **Deceiver**. Revelation 12:9; 20:3. He continuously deceives the whole world, until Christ returns to defeat him. Too many Christians are ignorant of the "wiles of the devil". Eph. 6:11.
- n) The **spirit that now works in the children of disobedience**. Ephesians 2:2.
- o) **Murderer**. John 8:44.
- p) **Liar**. John 8:44.
 - He abode not in the truth.
 - There is no truth in him.
 - It is his nature to lie.
 - He is a liar and the father of lies.

2. SATAN'S ACTIVITY AND TACTICS

Satan opposes and attacks God, nations, unbelievers and Christians.

a) GOD:

- i) Satan opposes **God's person**. Since Satan desired to be like the Most High, so his power and activities are directed against God. His attack on Adam was really an attack on God's character and control (Genesis 3:1-5). Satan induced Cain to murder Abel, a man of God (1 John 3:12). God is love and promotes love, whereas Satan is hateful and promotes hate (1 John 3:7-15). God is life & creates life, whereas Satan seeks to bring death (Hebrews 2:14).
- ii) Satan opposes **God's program**:
 1. He introduces counterfeit lying **philosophies**. He may deny God's existence or control of affairs (Psalm 14). To explain the universe, he substitutes evolution for creation, human progress for the need of divine salvation. He substitutes atheism, agnosticism and relativism for God's truth.
 2. He introduces counterfeit lying **religions**. Here we find:

- **False ministers**, Satan's ministers who transform themselves into angels of light (2 Corinthians 11:13-15). Satan may gain control of theological colleges or churches through a board of deacons or a disobedient preacher. He seeks to control and destroy a church's work for God.
 - **False doctrines**, which he spreads through demons "doctrines of devils" (1 Timothy 4:1-3), who teach righteousness by works.
 - **False Christs**. (1 John 2:18,22; 4:3).
 - **False followers**. Matthew 13:38,39 .These profess to believe in Christ, but are Satan's counterfeits. These will sow discord among the brethren. Proverbs 6:19.
- b) NATIONS:** He deceives the nations, leading them astray from God's truth. At Christ's return, Satan will be bound for 1,000 years "that he should deceive the nations no more." (Revelation 20:3). Upon his release he will go out to deceive the nations again. (Revelation 20:7,8-10). "The devil that **deceived** them was cast into the lake of fire..." (Revelation 20:10). He is the "god of this world", including unsaved men and evil angels. (2 Corinthians 4:4). He offered the nations to Christ in the wilderness temptation. Christ did not dispute Satan's right to make this offer, but Christ refused Satan's quick way of obtaining rule of the earth. (Matthew 4:8-10). Satan influences nations to oppose Israel and Christians (Daniel 10:13,20; "but Satan hindered us" 1 Thess. 2:18), and the spread of the gospel. During the tribulation, he will control the world through the Antichrist.
- c) UNBELIEVERS:** Satan prevents people from accepting God's truth by:
- i) **Snatching away the gospel** (Luke 8:12). Some people who hear the gospel are prevented from understanding it, lest they believe it and are saved.
 - ii) **Blinding people's minds to the gospel** (2 Corinthians 4:3,4). He puts a barrier in people's minds to understanding the gospel. Perishing sinners hence think that the gospel sounds foolish and irrelevant (1 Corinthians 1:18).
 - iii) **Building false religions** (1 Timothy 4:1-3). He uses men who preach lies of salvation by human works, or he persuades men that there is no need of salvation, only progress.
 - iv) **Promoting a false lifestyle** (Ephesians 2:1-4) "In time past ye walked according to the course of this world....fulfilling the desires of the flesh and of the mind". The philosophy of the age or "course of this world" is self-centred and self-promoting. It is based on pleasure, possessions and position. "Love not the world, neither the things that are in the world...." (1 John 2:15-17). Satan energises the "sons of disobedience" to follow the world. Unbelievers being satisfied with the things of this world and materialism are kept from desiring a relationship with the living God.
- d) SATAN'S OPPOSITION TO CHRISTIANS:** He seeks to defeat believers in their personal life and service to Christ. The wise Christian will be aware of Satan's tactics and guard against them (2 Corinthians 2:11), some of which are:
- i) **Warring** against Christians. What appears to be human opposition may really be Satan's attacks. We are not wrestling against "flesh and blood", but against spiritual forces of wickedness in high places (heavens). We must put on the whole armour of God to counter these attacks. Ephesians 6:10-18.
 - ii) **Accusing and slandering** Christians. Revelation 12:10. As the "devil" means slanderer, so he accuses us before God for our sins and imperfections. He slanders one believer against another, causing break in fellowship due to imagined wrongs of another believer. This is done to get believers out of good, soul-winning, missionary-minded churches, and hence to weaken the gospel outreach in the world. He also works on Christians with **untaught consciences** to engulf them in continual guilt and fear in order to cause them to hate the preacher for preaching against sin, when all they need to do is to confess and forsake their sins to remove their guilt.
 - iii) **Planting doubts**. Satan seeks to get us to:
 - Doubt God's goodness.
 - Doubt God's Word.

- Doubt God's concern for us.
 - He emphasises God's restrictions as unjust (Genesis 3:1).
 - He claims that God's warnings and Word are untrue. (3:4).
 - He claims God's interests as selfish, and limiting to man's development. (3:5).
- Hence, he maligns God's character and challenges God's authority.
- iv) Tempting us to sin:**
- a) **To lie** (Acts 5:3). Satan is the father of lies, and he tempts others to lie. To lie is to tell a falsehood in whole or in part for personal gain, and to the loss and hurt of another.
 - b) **To sex sins.** (1 Corinthians 7:5; 6:13-20). Satan presents a philosophy of the priority of bodily satisfaction. Fornication, adultery, homosexuality or masturbation comes from a preoccupation with bodily needs. These are based on false self-gratification. God has provided marriage for the normal expression of sexual needs.
 - c) **To occupation with this world.** (1 John 2:15-17; 5:19). The world is Satan's system built on self-promotion. Its philosophy and practice are anti-God. Satan seeks to influence and defeat us through "the lusts of the flesh" (pleasures), "the lusts of the eyes" (possessions), and the boastful "pride of life" (self-promotion). These attitudes affect all of us to some extent, knowingly or unknowingly. Some, such as Demas (2 Timothy 4:10) have fallen for it.
- v) **To relying on human strength and wisdom.** (I Chronicles 21:1-8). Satan tempted David to have confidence in the number of His soldiers, and Peter to resist Jesus on the basis of his human wisdom. He moved the Corinthians to judge Paul's message and ministry according to human wisdom as being foolish and weak (1 Corinthians 1:18-25). Satan tries to get us to rely on our strength and wisdom because he can easily defeat what is purely human, since it is not based on God's word or power.
- vi) **To pride in spiritual matters.** (1 Timothy 3:6). Satan attacks church leaders in order to destroy congregations. Hence Paul urged novices not to be pastors, lest being lifted up in pride, they fall. Any spiritual ability carries with it the danger of self-satisfaction and self-confidence which gives Satan an opportunity.
- vii) **To discouragement.** (1 Peter 5:6-10). Satan would have us occupied with our difficulties and overcome with our cares. Peter tells us to cast all our cares upon Christ, for He cares for us. He then tells us to beware of Satan walking about as a roaring lion seeking to devour us. (1 Peter 5:7-8). Persecution, rejection, lack of appreciation, physical and spiritual difficulties may lead us to discouragement, despair and to defeat.
- viii) **Persecution.** (Revelation 2:10).
- ix) **Preventing service** (1 Thessalonians 2:18). Satan once thwarted Paul from coming to help the Thessalonians.
- x) **Infiltrating local churches** through:
 - a) false teachers – we must test all things by God's Word.
 - b) false disciples - Satan sows evil seed.
- xi) **Promoting division.** Strife and anger give the devil a chance to promote division (Ephesians 4:26,27).
- xii) **Counterfeiting.** When Satan said, "I will be like God," he meant that he wanted to be worshipped as God. Thus he set up a rival religion, a complete imitation of all that God does, as seen in this list of counterfeits:
 - Satan has a throne (Revelation 2:13).
 - Satan has doctrines of devils (1 Timothy 4:1).
 - Satan has a synagogue (Revelation 2:9 and 3:9).
 - Satan has a cup of devils and a communion table of devils (1 Corinthians 10:21).
 - Satan has a counterfeit fellowship with devils (1 Corinthians 10:20).
 - Satan transforms himself into an angel of light (2 Corinthians 11:14).
 - Satan has ministers that appear as ministers of righteousness (2 Corinthians 11:15).
 - Satan has false apostles (2 Corinthians 11:13), and false prophets (2 Peter 2:1).

- Satan has a Kingdom (Matthew 12:26).
- Satan does counterfeit miracles, signs and wonders (Revelation 16:14).
- Satan has a harlot church, Mystery Babylon to counterfeit the bride of Christ. (Rev. 17:5).
- Satan and his demons seek to be worshipped (1 Corinthians 10:20; Matthew 4:8-10; Revelation 9:20).
- Satan counterfeits the Holy Trinity, with his unholy trinity of Satan, Antichrist and the False Prophet.
- Satan wants to live in human bodies as the Holy Spirit does (John 13:27; 1 Cor. 6:19).
- Satan seals his followers with a name in their forehead which is the counterfeit of God's Name on His peoples' forehead. (Revelation 13:16 with 7:1-3).
- Satan counterfeits believers baptism by immersion with infant sprinkling.

XII. HOW MAY A DEMONICALLY OPPRESSED PERSON RECEIVE DELIVERANCE?

He must:

- 1. Receive Christ as Saviour.** In Christ there is the position and power for deliverance.
- 2. Confessing sins to God.** A person must judge his personal involvement in occult practices as rebellion against God and as the sin of siding with Satan. (I John 1:9). They must confess family occult sins even back to grandparents. Daniel 9:4-6; Nehemiah 1:5-6.
- 3. Remove occult objects, books, music, images.**

Godly King Asa “took away the **altars** of the strange gods, and the high places, and broke down the **images**, and cut down the **groves**: and commanded Judah to seek the Lord God, and do the law and commandments....the Kingdom was quiet before him.” (2 Chronicles 14:4,5). Ephesian converts destroyed their occult books (Acts 19:17-20). Many occult objects have a demon invoked curse on them, and open the door for Satan’s influence. Occult friendships should be broken because they will try to pull you back.

- 4. Submit to God, resist the devil** and he will flee from you (James 4:7). Christ promises forgiveness and deliverance to those who call upon His name for deliverance from the occult. Be confident about our position and authority in Christ. Ask: “Lord, what wilt thou have me to do?”
- 5. Cultivate your Christian life and gospel presentation.** Get busy serving God. The devil finds great opportunity to tempt us if we are doing nothing for God. David gave into temptation when he should have been on the battlefield. (2 Samuel 11:1,2). We must be filled with the Holy Spirit daily. How? By:
 - a) Studying the Word of God daily brings growth and defence against Satan. (I Peter 2:2)
 - b) Prayer achieves God’s purposes as we ask and receive.
 - c) Christian fellowship at church brings encouragement and stability as we learn of God, praise God and encourage each other.
 - d) Sharing the gospel with the unsaved will strengthen our faith and knowledge, as well as actively warring against Satan. Unselfish dedication to God’s work will assist in Satan’s defeat, as we “love not our lives unto the death.” (Revelation 12:11).
 - e) We must put on the whole armour of God (Ephesians 6:10,18). When we do these things, we will resist Satan in God’s power and take his strongholds in people’s lives (2 Corinthians 10:3,4).

People may enter Satan’s occult bondage by family heredity, personal experience, or transference from an occultic person.

46. 47 SIGNS OF CHRIST'S RETURN FULFILLED SINCE 1940

Question: How do we know the Bible is true?

Question: How do we know that Jesus Christ is the only true way to God and heaven?

Answer: Because the Bible is the only book in the world that accurately predicts the future. Anybody can write a religious book and claim that it is from God. But no man can predict the future in great detail with 100% accuracy as the Bible does.

The Bible contains hundreds of clear prophecies about Jesus Christ's first coming, every one of which came true.

The Bible also contains hundreds of clear prophecies about events surrounding Jesus Christ's second coming. Many of these prophecies have been fulfilled since 1940.

This leads us to conclude that Jesus Christ's second coming may be close.

God challenges all religions to prove that they are from God, by predicting future events: "Show the things that are to come hereafter (in the future), that we may know that ye are gods." Isaiah 41:23.

If a religion cannot accurately predict the future, then it is not from God, but is false, man-made, and must be rejected.

Challenge: Consider how the Bible has successfully predicted these 20th Century events:

1. Travel will increase. "seal the book, to the time of the end: many shall run to and fro, knowledge shall be increased." Daniel 12:4. The time of the end will see an increase in the number of people travelling to and fro around the world. With the invention of airplanes, cars, trains and ocean liners, cheap world-wide travel is possible for most people. These inventions are unique to the 20th Century. Before 1900 few people traveled outside their country.

2. Knowledge shall increase in the time of the end:

"Seal the book to the time of the end: many shall run to and fro, and knowledge shall be increased." (Daniel 12:4). The time of the end will see a great increase in knowledge.

The 20th Century has seen an enormous increase in man's knowledge because of so many scientific and technological advances. 20th Century inventions confirming this include: electricity, electronics, computers, nuclear energy, space travel, satellite communications, telephone, internet, TV, jet travel, medical advances, radio and space telescopes, military technology, 'smart' bombs, many new chemical compounds, drugs to treat most diseases, motor cars, iphone, GPS, credit card, calculator, printing press, radio, ATM, fridge, robots, TV, trains, light globe, etc.

3. World population shall greatly increase. "The number of the army was....200 million." Rev 9:16. This army will come from beyond the Euphrates River, possibly China, and will kill one third of mankind. Only 20th Century China has the ability to raise an army of 200 million soldiers. As of the year 2018, China's population is about 1.39 billion people. Never before could any nation raise an army this size

4. False religions will increase. When Jesus was asked 'What shall be the sign of thy coming?' He replied: "Take heed that no man deceive you. For many shall come in my name, saying, I am Christ; and shall deceive many." (Matthew 24:3-5).

Here, we see that the first sign Jesus spoke of was religious deception by false Christs.

Today we have so many false religions and religious deception that this prophecy has clearly been fulfilled. It is estimated that over 3000 cults exist in the world today. All these have a book other than the Bible as sole authority, a gospel of good works rather than Jesus Christ for salvation, and a founder other than Jesus Christ. Mormons put Jesus' name in their title.

5. Evil shall increase. “In the last days, perilous times shall come.” 2 Timothy 3:1-5.

God says, “I will punish the world for their evil.” (Isaiah 13:11).

“The LORD cometh out of his place to punish the inhabitants of the earth for their iniquity.” (Isaiah 26:21).

Examples of modern wickedness include: witchcraft; murder of unborn babies; same-sex marriage; widespread drug addiction; violent movies; internet and magazine pornography; terrorist bombings; hostage taking; blowing up passenger planes; schoolyard massacres; genocide of Pol Pot killing 2 million people in Cambodia; Stalin starving 30 million Ukrainians in WWII; Communist persecution of minorities over 70 years; Hitler gassing 6 million Jews in WWII slave camps; widespread political bribery and corruption.

Moral conditions today match those predicted in the last days in 2 Timothy 3:1-5.

“This know also that in the last days perilous times shall come. For men shall be:

- a) Lovers of their own selves (self-centred)
- b) Covetous (greed for money and power is everywhere)
- c) Boasters, proud, blasphemers, disobedient to parents
- d) Unthankful – to God and others for blessings
- e) Unholy – people loving sin and caring little about God
- f) Without natural affection – abortion is against a mother’s natural love for her baby
- g) Trucebreakers, false accusers
- h) Incontinent – lacking sexual control
- i) Fierce – terrorists and brutal dictators
- j) Heady – given to intoxication by alcohol or drugs

k) Lovers of pleasures more than lovers of God – people prefer TV, sport, vacations, entertainment, rather than God, the Bible and Church.

God says of these. “From such TURN AWAY.”

6. Missiles with “tails like serpents (rocket exhaust) & heads that hurt (explosive heads).” Rev 9:17-19

These are some of the weapons used by the 200 million man army coming from the East described in Revelation 9:17-19 as having “tails like serpents (rocket exhaust) and heads that hurt (explosive warheads).” Rockets and missiles are a basic weapon of modern warfare.

They were only developed in WWII. How was this known in 96 AD?

Examples include: a) The US “MX” ICBM each contains 10 nuclear warheads.

b) Each of 30 US Trident submarines is 170 metres long, and carries 24 Trident missiles, each tipped with up to 17 nuclear warheads. This gives a total of up to 408 nuclear missiles per sub, enough to destroy more than 100 major cities in one blow



7. Nuclear weapons of mass destruction shall be invented.

Before Christ returns, man will discover the power to destroy the earth. One reason that Christ returns is to stop man destroying the earth.

“And should destroy them which destroy the earth” (Revelation 11:18).

“For then shall be great tribulation . . . and except those days should be shortened, there should no flesh be saved.” (Matthew 24:21,22).

“I will shew wonders in the heavens & in the earth, blood, fire & pillars of smoke.” Joel 2:30.

“the inhabitants of the earth are burned, and few men left.” Isaiah 24:6.

Up until 1945, man could not destroy the earth with weapons such as guns, spears & swords. Since 1945, with the invention of atomic and hydrogen bombs, entire cities can be destroyed in minutes. Scientists estimate that a major nuclear war could kill over 500 million people initially, but another 4,000 million people could starve to death in the next year due to nuclear winter. This would be caused by smoke from nuclear fires preventing sunlight from reaching the ground. Farming could stop and worldwide famine could result. Nuclear winter could also devastate the earth’s ozone layer, permitting more harmful UV radiation to enter the earth. (World Book Encyclopedia)



8. Global government, economy and internet. “He causes all...to receive a mark in their right hand or in their foreheads, that no man might buy or sell save he that had the mark, name or number of the beast. His number is 666.” Revelation 13:16-18.

To cause “ALL” people to receive this mark in order to buy and sell, requires a global government, a global electronic fund transfer computer system accessed by a microchip, and a global economy. The only missing part is a global government to enforce this implanted microchip fund transfer system.

9. Artificial intelligence (AI). “He had power to give life to the image of the beast, that it should speak.” Rev. 13:15. AI software understands human speech and speaks. It includes computer science, linguistics, etc. This includes robots that communicate with people.

10. Electronic fund transfer at point of sale (EFTPOS) shall be invented.

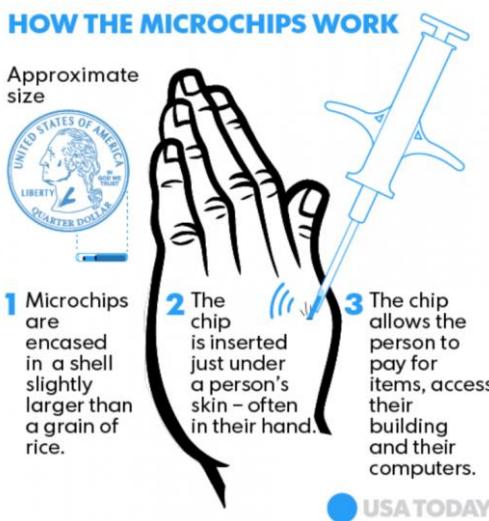
Today, using your credit card you can purchase goods at most shops by inserting your card into a machine that electronically transfers money from your account to the shop's account as payment for goods purchased. The Bible predicts that a time will come when people will receive a mark or a number known as "666" implanted in their right hand or forehead, as the method of buying and selling. This number "666" may well be an 18 digit bank account number contained in a smart electronic chip implanted under the skin, which specifies every person's bank account in the world.

This system is already available today and is known as "implantable biochip technology". It is used to identify dogs and other animals. Some people are already receiving microchips in their right hands for identification purposes.

How did the Bible know this in 96AD? Revelation 13:16-18 states that:

"He causeth all, both small and great, rich and poor, free and bond, to receive a mark in their right hand or in their foreheads. And that no man might buy or sell, save he that had the mark, or the name of the beast, of the number of his name . . . the number of the beast . . . is 666."

11. Implantable Biochips



12. Satellite TV

This is described in Revelation 11:8-10 when people all over the world see the two witnesses' dead bodies lying in the streets of Jerusalem for 3½ days.

"They of the people and kindreds and tongues and nations shall see their dead bodies three and a half days...." (Revelation 11:9). This is possible today by satellite TV and internet TV.

13. Europe will unite as a world power as the European Union (EU). 5 world empires are Babylon, Medo-Persia, Greece, Rome and Revived Rome (EU). Daniel 2:19-49.

After Babylon conquered Israel in 606 BC, the "times of the Gentiles" began. God told the prophet Daniel that 4 great world empires would rise and fall before God's Kingdom would be set up on earth. These four empires are Babylon (606-536 BC), Medo-Persia (536-330 BC), Greece (330-67 BC), Rome (67 BC -) and a final European power that would be like and rise from the earlier Roman Empire. The vision of these empires looked like a statue of a man. The vision is explained in Daniel 2:19-49 and represented as follows:

When the European Union becomes a world power, Jesus Christ will return and set up His Kingdom on earth.

"in the days of these kings shall the God of heaven set up a kingdom which shall never be destroyed." (Daniel 2:40-44).

A similar verse states that when Israel is built up as a world power, Jesus Christ, who is God the Son, will appear in His glory:

"When the LORD shall build up Zion, he shall appear in his glory." (Psalm 102:16).

This European Union will, under a future President, known as the Antichrist, confirm a seven-year treaty with Israel. America's pro-Jewish position is pushing Palestinians towards Europe as a preferred peace broker. Western European nations have united under the Treaty of Rome (1957-58) thus setting up the European Economic Community (EEC). The Maastricht Treaty (1993) transformed the EEC into the European Union (EU) creating European citizenship, with economic and monetary union. The Amsterdam Treaty (1997) integrated Central and Eastern Europe into the EU. The EU includes 28 countries as of 2018. These are: Austria, Belgium, Bulgaria, Croatia, Cyprus, Czech Republic, Denmark, Estonia, Finland, France, Germany, Greece, Hungary, Italy, Ireland, Latvia, Lithuania, Luxembourg, Malta, the Netherlands, Poland, Portugal, Romania, Spain, Slovakia, Slovenia, Sweden and the United Kingdom. This gives a modern Revived Roman Empire as predicted in the Bible (Daniel 2:19-49).

Today, the European Union has a:

- a) European Parliament, of 766 members from 28 countries, represent 503 million Europeans
- b) European currency, the Euro as of 1st January 1999.
- c) European army, known as NATO, with a membership of 28 European countries.
- d) European President appointed by secret ballot of members of the Parliament.

Only the 20th century has seen all of Europe unite since 450 AD.



14. EU Muslim migrants: “they shall mingle themselves with the seed of men: but they shall not cleave one to another.” Daniel 2:43. Due to the displacement of refugees from the Syrian war, many Muslims have migrated to Europe in search of a better life. Many poverty-stricken Muslims from North African countries have migrated to Europe to access Europe’s social welfare system. These Muslim migrants believe and live by the Quran’s commands to commit Jihad against “infidel” Europeans as their ticket into paradise. As of 2018, there are about 30 million Muslims in Europe, about 6% of the population. These Muslims refuse to assimilate into European, Western, Christian values. Instead, many live in Muslim “no-go” zones where they enforce Sharia Islamic laws and reject European culture. It is very clear that these Muslim immigrants “mingle themselves with the seed of men (Europeans) but shall not cleave one to another, even as iron is not mixed with clay.” Daniel 2:43. Their Islamic culture is as weak as clay, due to their god “Allah” being Satan who “weakens the nations.” (Isaiah 14:12). Islam will never assimilate with Christianity, because the Quran does not understand how Jesus is the Son of God (Q 6:101) or part of the Trinity.

15. Common sins of today are prophesied: “Neither repented they of their murders (abortion), sorceries(drugs), fornication, thefts.” Revelation 9:21.

After the 200 million man army kills 33% of mankind, the following is said of the people who survive this nightmare:

“Neither repented they of their murders (abortions and violence), nor of their sorceries (drugs), nor of their fornication (sex outside marriage), nor of their thefts (stealing).”

a) Today, the murder of millions of unborn babies (**abortion**) has been legalized in most countries. Percentage of abortions per 1000 women aged 15-39 are: Australia (17%), UK (20%), US (20%), Canada (19%), China (26%), Cuba (46%), Greenland (85%), Israel (14%), South Korea (19%), Russia (37%), Sweden (25%), France (20%), Germany (9%). Source: www.johnstonsarchive.net/policy/abortion.

b) Today, millions of people are taking drugs for pleasure and anti-depressants. Anti-depressants have over 2000 bad recorded side-effects. (youtube: Marketing of madness.)

c) Today, fornication or sex outside marriage is very common. Fornication also includes homosexuality. Same-sex marriage is legalized in many countries. God strongly disapproves of these sins. “abstain from fornication....the Lord is the avenger of all such.” I Thess. 4:3-8.

d) Today, thefts, stealing or financial corruption is everywhere. Theft is seen in excessive government taxation, crooked builders, retirement fund managers charging fees for no service and scam marketers.

16. Most churches are lukewarm, rich & increased with goods, don’t know they are blind.

“Because thou art lukewarm and neither cold nor hot, I will spue thee out of my mouth.

Because thou sayest, I am rich, and increased with goods, and have need of nothing; and knowest not that thou art wretched, and miserable, and poor, and blind, and naked (17).”

Revelation 3:14-19.

Modern Christendom is accurately predicted as being

a) lukewarm, neither cold nor hot spiritually,

b) rich and increased with goods,

c) not knowing that it is wretched, miserable, poor, blind and naked, that is, blind to itsspiritual poverty. (Revelation 3:14-19), and

d) asleep: “While the bridegroom (Christ) tarried, they all slumbered and slept.” (Matthew 25:5). This well describes most sleepy 20th Century churches where very few preachers tell people about the signs of Christ’s return being fulfilled daily, the events of Christ’s return, or how to be saved from hell. Many clergy prefer to entertain people with rock music, dancing

girls, flashing lights and telling people what they want to hear, rather than warn them to reject and separate from false doctrine. Many churches are not preaching sound Bible doctrine or winning souls to Christ. Many preachers are too scared to warn people about hell, God's judgment, or the tribulation to come on earth, in case they offend people. The current ecumenical movement of churches with false doctrines joining together will lead to a one-world religion that God describes as "the great whore" in Revelation 17.

17. Most Christians are asleep, ignore hell, tribulation: "While the bridegroom tarried, they all slumbered and slept." Matthew 25:5.

Most churches and Christians know nothing about the signs of Jesus' second coming being fulfilled all around the world. Most churches don't lead people to Christ or disciple new Christians. They ignore hell, the 7 year tribulation and the Judgment Seat of Christ. They focus on money, pleasures and entertainment.

18. Scoffers in last days deny Bible prophecy (Amillennialism), Noah's flood (3:5), teach evolution (3:4). 2 Peter 3:3-8.

"Knowing this first, that there shall come in the last days scoffers, walking after their own lusts" 2 Peter 3:3.

a) Today, so many people believe and teach evolution, that they hate, reject and scoff at the Bible's teaching of God creating earth and the universe in 6 days, about 6000 years ago.

b) They scoff at and ignore the evidence for Noah's Flood in 2418BC.

c) So many churches scoff at and deny the clear Bible teachings of a literal rapture, 1000 year millennial rule of Christ on earth. They ignore Israel's return to their land as a fulfilment of Bible prophecies (Ezekiel 36:24). They believe "replacement theology" that the church has replaced Israel and that Israel has no future in God's plans.

19. More persecution of Christians.

"I saw the souls of them that were beheaded for the witness of Jesus, and for the word of God". Revelation 20:4.

"I saw under the altar the souls of them that were slain for the word of God, and for the testimony which they held:" Rev 6:9. As Islamic influence expands, groups like ISIS and Boko Harem believe that they must practise the Quran's commands for "Muslims should strike off the heads of unbelievers in the battlefield and massacre them." (Q47:4). Many Christians in the Middle East, Nigeria and Egypt are being killed for their Christian faith.

20. Many Iranian refugees:

"There shall be no nation where the outcasts of Elam (Iran) shall not come" Jeremiah 49:36. With the Islamic regime coming to power in Iran in 1979, their ruthless violence, torture, imprisonment and killing of anyone deemed to be "un-Islamic" has forced millions of Iranians to flee Iran to every other country. The Ayatollah's have unknowingly fulfilled this Bible prophecy.

21. Iran will have an evil, anti-Christian government until Jesus returns.

"I will set my throne in Elam and will destroy from thence the king (Ayatollah) and the princes (Mullah's, Basij, Separ, Etalat), saith the LORD." Jeremiah 49:38. This evil Iranian government has spread terror, violence and oppression all over the Middle East against Jews, Christians and Sunni Muslims through Hamas, Hezbollah and Houthi rebels.

22. China's Belt and ROAD initiative (BRI) is a play for global power. Australian, 12 May 17

"the sixth angel poured out his vial upon the great river Euphrates; and the water thereof was dried up, that the way of the kings of the east might be prepared." Revelation 16:12.

China as the Kings of the East (Revelation 16:12) are predicted to cross a dried up Euphrates River, possibly to take the Middle East oil fields to fill the power vacuum created

after the Russian/Muslim armies are destroyed (Revelation 9:13-16).

This army will number 200 million men and will kill one third of mankind: “the number of the horsemen were 200 million (v 16); . . . and out of their mouths issued fire, and smoke and brimstone (v 17). By these three was the third part of men killed.” (Revelation 9:16-18).

Today, China is an economic power seeking more control of other nations through this “Belt and Road initiative” where they access Middle Eastern markets. It is promoted as economic, but it has military implications. China is also seeking to control many poorer nations by loans with strings attached (debt traps). China has little or no oil reserves of its own and would be tempted to go to war to secure what oil remains amongst a threatened and dwindling world supply.



23. The Hindering influence of the Holy Spirit in American Christians voting for Trump in the 2016 US elections, stopped the One World, Globalist, Antichrist agenda of the Democrats from getting into government in the White House. Today, many left-wing, atheist, globalists want to break down the independence of nation-states and make them support a world government. Donald Trump won the US Presidency due to Evangelical Christians voting for his Christian policies of anti-abortion, Christian judges, permitting church involvement in elections, anti-Islam, pro-Christian, pro-Israel, pro America and anti-globalism. When the Christians are taken out of the world at the rapture, the left-wing, globalists will take power and instal the antichrist and his one-world government. He will make his 7 year covenant with Israel and start the 7 year tribulation period.

“For the mystery of iniquity doth already work: only he who now letteth (hinders) will let (hinder), until he (Holy Spirit in Christians) be taken out of the way (at rapture of church). Then shall that Wicked be revealed..” 2 Thessalonians 2:7.

“he causeth all, both small and great, rich and poor, free and bond, to receive a mark in their right hand, or in their foreheads: that no man might buy or sell save he that had the mark, or the name of the beast, or the number of his name.....666.” Revelation 13:16-18.

24. Jews returned to their land to form the state of **Israel** in 1948.

"I will gather you out of all countries, and will bring you into your own land." Ezekiel 36:24.

"I will open your graves,... and bring you into the land of Israel." Ezekiel 37:12.

"When the Lord shall build up Zion, he shall appear in his glory." Psalm 102:16.

God has **re-established the nation of Israel** in their ancient homeland in the latter days.

The 20th Century has seen the return of many Jews to the ancient land of Israel from all parts of the world, resulting in the re-establishment of the modern state of Israel, and its entry to the United Nations in May 1948. As of the year 2000AD there are about 6 million Jews in Israel. God states through the prophet Ezekiel that Jews will return to their land in a condition of unbelief in Jesus Christ as their Messiah, but will later change their minds to receive Jesus Christ as their Saviour and Messiah when He returns to rescue them from the Antichrist's invading armies. The prophet Daniel (in Daniel 9:26) states that Israel's Messiah at His first coming would be **killed** ("cut off"), then the Jewish **temple** and the **city** of Jerusalem would be destroyed (70AD). This proves Jesus Christ to be Israel's Messiah.

25. Israel has been "brought back to their land from the sword" (Ezekiel 38:8) of **6 million Holocaust deaths** by Nazi Germany. This states that Jews would be killed on a large scale just before they started returning to their land as a nation on 14 May 1948.

26. 1 million Jews left Russia for Israel from 1990-2000.

"I will say to the **north**, Give up; and to the south, Keep not back: bring my sons from far, and my daughters from the ends of the earth;" Isaiah 43:6.

With the collapse of USSR and the Russian economy, many Russian Jews have left the financial hardships of Russia for a new life in modern, free, and prosperous Israel.

This fulfils another Bible prophecy where God says:

"Fear not; for I am with thee: I will bring thy seed from the **east** (Yemen, Arabia) and gather thee from the **west** (Europe, USA, Britain): I will say to the **north** (Russia) "Give up"; and to the **south** (Ethiopia) "Keep not back": bring my sons from far, and my daughters from the ends of the earth." (Isaiah 43:5,6).

Since Israel's founding as a nation in May 1948, God has regathered many Jews from the **East** (Yemen, Arabia, Iraq, Iran), from the **West** (Europe since the WWII holocaust, Britain, USA), from the **North** (Russia and Eastern Europe), and from the **South** (Ethiopian Jews known as Falashas, and South Africa).

27. Israel shall be militarily superior to Egypt.

"The land of Judah shall be a terror unto Egypt, every one that maketh mention thereof shall Be afraid in himself." (Isaiah 19:17).

How has this prophecy been fulfilled? On four occasions Egypt declared war against Israel, and in each war Israel quickly and convincingly smashed the Egyptian military.

i) War of Independence: 29 November 1947-24 February 1949.

ii) The Sinai War: 29 October -5 November 1956.

iii) The Six Day War: 5-10 June 1967.

iv) The Yom Kippur War: 6-25 October 1973.

28. Egypt will be a **base kingdom** (Ezekiel 29:14,15). Today, Egyptian population is 20% illiterate, 12% unemployed, Islamic, unstable, lost 4 wars against Israel, is struggling with Islamic terrorists, anti-Christian, and depends on foreign aid..

29. Israel shall rebuild the waste cities and inhabit them.

"the cities shall be inhabited, and the wastes shall be built." (Ezekiel 36:10,11).

"I will settle you after your old estates." (Ezekiel 36:10).

“I will multiply men among you, all the house of Israel, even all of it: and the cities shall be inhabited, and the wastes shall be builded.” (Ezekiel 36:11).

“Today, all throughout Israel there is a massive building program of houses to accommodate 70,000 new Jewish immigrants per year”. The Jerusalem Post, 2 May 1998:

“Israel will triple its built-up space by 2020 as it races past every other developed country in Its rate of population growth.” This has been fulfilled in the last 20 years.

30. Israel shall be tilled, planted and fruitful agriculturally.

“Behold, I am for you, and I will turn unto you, and ye shall be tilled and sown.” Ezekiel36:9

“I will multiply the fruit of the tree, and the increase of the field. . . .” (Ezekiel 36:30).

“The desolate land shall be tilled, whereas it lay desolate in the sight of all that passed by.”

“They shall say, this land that was desolate is become like the Garden of Eden.” (Ezekiel 36:34,35).

“The desert shall rejoice, and blossom as the rose.” (Isaiah 35:1).

Today if you visit Israel, you will notice rose bushes everywhere, fruit trees, eucalypt trees and much tilled land cultivated as farms.

31. Muslims want Jerusalem:

“I will make Jerusalem a burdensome stone for all people.” Zechariah 12:3.

Muslims want control of Jerusalem because they think that Mohammad dreamed that he went from there to heaven on a horse. So all the Muslim majority countries vote against Israel in the UN for this reason. Biblically ignorant Western countries seek to pacify Muslims by voting against Israel to preserve their trade benefits with Muslim nations.

32. UN resolutions condemn Israel:

“Every tongue that shall arise against thee in judgment thou shalt condemn’ Isaiah 54:17.

The first part of this prophecy has been fulfilled by many nations in the United Nations Council meetings arising to speak words of judgment and condemnation against Israel for defending the land that God has given her. Many nations in the UN have consistently voted against Israel. The only nations that vote in favor of Israel are the USA and some small Pacific Islands. From 2006-2016, the UN Human Rights Council, passed 68 out of 135 resolutions against Israel. From 2012-2015, the UN General Assembly passed 83 out of 97 resolutions against Israel. UNESCO adopts about 10 resolutions a year against Israel.

The second part of this verse will be fulfilled in the Millennium after Christ returns, when Israel, as the chief nation on earth, will condemn those nations that voted against her.

“The nations shall see and be confounded at all their might.” (Micah 7:16) .

“The nation and kingdom that will not serve thee shall perish; yea, those nations shall be utterly wasted.” (Isaiah 60:12).

33. Muslims hate Israel:

“You had a perpetual hatred and shed the blood of the children of Israel.” Ezekiel 35:5.

This Muslim hatred of Israel is due to Muslims belief in the Quran’s and Hadith’s anti-Jewish statements, such as “People of the book are the vilest of all creatures” (Q 98:6).

Muslims in Gaza and the West Bank teach their children from kindergarten to hate Jews and kill Jews to take the land of Israel.

34. God calls Yassar Arafat, Abbas, the Palestinians and nations that claim Israel’s high places (Jerusalem, Hebron, Golan, West Bank) as “ours” as “the enemy.”

At a Fatah rally on 25 June 2000, Arafat made threats of a renewed uprising, shouting,

“Palestine is ours, ours, ours ! We have a few weeks left ahead of us and at the end of it we Will declare statehood . . . with its capital Jerusalem.” (ICEJ News 26 June 2000).

Ezekiel prophesied 2600 years ago that Israel’s neighbors would say these very words which Arafat said in June 2000:

"Thus saith the LORD God; Because the enemy hath said against you, Aha, even the ancient high places are ours in possession (v 2); that ye might be a possession unto the residue of the heathen, and ye are taken up in the lips of talkers . . . (v 3) which have appointed my land into their possession . . . with despiteful minds (v 5). Surely the heathen that are about you shall bear their shame." (v 7). (Ezekiel 36:2,3,7). Notice several prophecies that have recently come true within this prophecy:

- The ancient high places of Israel are Jerusalem, Hebron, Bethlehem, Nazareth, Golan Heights, all of which are claimed by Arafat as belonging to the Palestinians or Syria. (v 2).
- The phrase "lips of talkers" describes how the Palestinians seek to gain control of these ancient high places by "negotiation" and by the "peace process" where they claim control over this land in exchange for peace (v3). "I will gather all nations who have parted my land." Joel 3:2.

c) The phrase "with spiteful minds" perfectly describes the malice, cruelty and anger that Palestinians have for Israel as seen in the exploding car bombs, car ramming and in educating Palestinian school children to hate Israel.

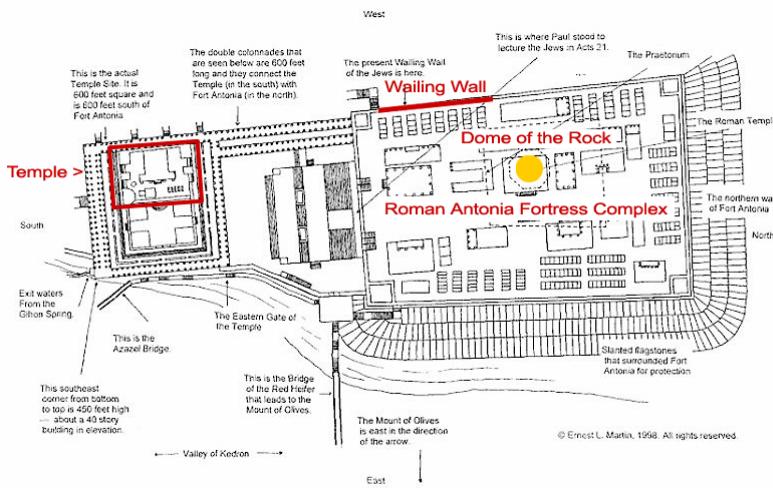
d) The phrase "appointed my land into their possession" describes how Israel has been pressured by Clinton, Bush, Obama, Arafat and Abbas to give up land that God says belongs to Israel.

35. Muslims aim to "wipe Israel off the map": "Let us cut them off from being a nation."
Psalm 83:4-18

This is regularly stated by the leaders of Iran, Gaza, PLO and ISIS saying "Death to Israel."

36. Jewish Temple will be built in Jerusalem (holy city). "Rise and measure the temple of God" Revelation 11:1,2. The Temple Institute in Israel has advanced preparation to rebuild the temple. They have bred red heifers to sacrifice, trained the priesthood and built the vessels and furnishings for the temple. See "The Temple Institute" on youtube.

37. Mosque of Omar occupies "the court which is outside the temple...is given to the Gentiles." Revelation 11:2. Today, the Muslim mosque of Omar occupies the same place that was the courtyard of Solomon's and Herod's temples in Jerusalem. Truly, this place is "given to the Gentiles" as prophesied. The Muslim Waqf, in Jordan, has administrative control of the Temple Mount. Herod's Temple had restricted temple courts being that of priests, Israelites, women, and the gentiles.



38. Israel would lose control of Jerusalem “until the times of the gentiles be fulfilled.”

Luke 21:24. This prophecy of Jesus in 33AD has been fulfilled from the destruction of Jerusalem in 70AD until today, where Muslims control many parts of Jerusalem, such as the Mosque of Omar, Al Aksar mosque, Tomb of the Patriarchs, West Bank, etc.

39. Russia (Magog), Iran, Turkey (Togarmah), Libya will attack Israel from the mountains of Israel. **Many Muslim nations** shall oppose Israel.

The prophet Ezekiel predicted that in the latter years, a group of nations would invade the regathered nation of Israel. Russian and Iranian militaries are now present on the mountains of Israel, being in south Syria near the Golan Heights. These invading nations are stated in Ezekiel 38:5,6 as being:

- a) Persia, which today includes Iran and Iraq.
- b) Ethiopia, today including Ethiopia and Sudan.
- c) Libya
- d) Togarmah, which today is known as Turkey.

Each of these six nations today is strongly Muslim and anti-Israel. The Bible predicts that they will be led by Russia in their invasion of Israel, and that God will destroy these Muslim armies on the mountains of Israel by a great earthquake (38:19,20), by them fighting each other (38:21), by pestilence (maybe biological weapons v.22), by an overflowing rain (maybe a mudslide v.22), by great hailstones, and by fire and brimstone (maybe the same means that God used to destroy Sodom and Gomorrah).

It is interesting that these Muslim nations are all strongly allied to each other in their hatred of Israel. Many are already calling for a Jihad (holy war) against Israel. They surely will get a Jihad, but will be destroyed in the process, thus discovering that God is against Islam.

“Thus saith the Lord God: Behold, I am against thee, O Gog, the chief prince of Meshech and Tubal. I will turn thee back, and leave but the sixth part of thee (five-sixths or 83% of the invading armies will be destroyed). (Ezekiel 39:1,2). Thou shalt fall upon the mountains of Israel, thou and all thy bands, and the people that are with thee (v.4) . . Thou shalt fall upon the open field; for I have spoken it, saith the Lord God.” (Ezekiel 39:1,2,4,5).

Israel will take seven years to burn the weapons (39:9), and will take seven months to bury all the dead army (39:11-14), so great will be the destruction.

40. They seek “to take a spoil (asset)”. Ezekiel 38:12. This spoil may be Israel’s Leviathan oil and gas fields.

41. Saudi Arabia (Sheba and Dedan), USA (merchants of Tarshish), Britain protest this invasion, but will not intervene militarily to support Israel.

“Sheba and Dedan (Saudi Arabia), and the merchants of Tarshish (Britain and USA), with all the young lions (British Commonwealth countries) thereof, shall say unto thee, Art thou come to take a great spoil? (Ezekiel 38:13). Thou shalt come up against my people of Israel, as a cloud to cover the land; it shall be in the latter days.” (Ezekiel 38:16).

Notice that these nations today are militarily aligned with each other into two camps as God prophesied 2600 years ago. Saudi Arabia has closer ties with Israel against their enemy Iran. These events all happen AFTER Israel is back in their land, just as we see today.

This shows that we are now living in the latter days, and just before Jesus Christ’s return.

42. The “Two-State Solution” pushed by the UN triggers the Antichrist’s and world armies invasion of Israel at the Battle of Armageddon at the end of the 7 year tribulation, where he only takes half of Jerusalem. **Why does Antichrist only take “half” of Jerusalem?**

Because today, the “Middle East peace process proposes a “2-state solution” where the

Muslim Palestinians have a State in the West Bank with their capital being **east Jerusalem** and Israel having a state with its capital being **west Jerusalem**.

Israel will never agree to give up their control of Jerusalem to the PLO, so the Antichrist leads the world's armies to impose this "2-State solution" by force on Israel.

"I will gather all nations against Jerusalem to battle; and the city shall be taken, and the houses rifled, and the women ravished; and half of the city shall go forth into captivity, and the residue of the people shall not be cut off from the city." Zechariah 14:2.

Jesus returns and judges the nations for scattering Israel and "parted my land." Joel 3:2.

43. Passenger air travel brings rich US Jews to Israel. "Who are these that fly as... doves?"

Isaiah 60:8,9. Passenger airplanes would be invented before Jesus Christ returns.

At the beginning of Christ's rule on earth, Israelites from all over the world will be regathered to the land of Israel. The prophet Isaiah asked who they were whom he saw flying as a cloud, like doves to their lofts or windows.

This is a clear reference to modern passenger jumbo jet air travel.

"Who are these that fly as a cloud, and as the doves to their windows? . . . the ships of Tarshish (USA) first, to bring thy sons from far, their silver and their gold with them unto the name of the LORD thy God, and to His Holy One of Israel, because he hath glorified thee (Israel)." (Isaiah 60:8,9).

Today there are about 7 million Jews in New York, USA. Many of these Jews are very wealthy. New York could be said to be the financial capital of the world because of the New York Stock Exchange in Wall Street.

This prophecy contains several interesting prophetic details:

- Today, air transport is by Jumbo jets, many of which are painted white like doves, and shaped like doves. By 1950, jet passenger planes were making daily non-stop flights across the Atlantic Ocean.
- Today, many Jews live in the USA (Tarshish), which is far away from Israel.
- Today, many American Jews are wealthy, as seen from them bringing their silver and gold with them back to Israel.

44. When Jesus returns, to him shall be given the gold (oil?) of Sheba (Saudi Arabia). Ps72:15
What is the "gold" of Saudi Arabia? It sounds like a reference to the Arabian oil fields.

45. Leaders of USA, Saudi Arabia, island nations bring gifts to Jesus when He returns.

"The kings of Tarshish (USA) and of the isles (UK, Australia, NZ, Philippines) shall bring presents; the kings of Sheba and Seba (Arabia) shall offer gifts." Psalm 72:10.

46. Jerusalem's East Gate will be shut as it is today: "This gate shall be shut, it shall not be opened." Ezekiel 44:1,2.

Today if you visit Jerusalem's East Gate or Golden Gate, you will notice that it is completely bricked up so that nobody may enter it. Jesus Christ, who is the God of Israel, entered it on a donkey on His way to be crucified. The prophet Ezekiel foretold:

"Then he brought me back the way of the gate of the outward sanctuary which looks toward the east and it was shut. Then the LORD (*Jehovah the Father*) said unto me: This gate shall be shut, it shall not be opened, and no man shall enter in by it; because the LORD (Jehovah the Son), the God of Israel, hath entered in by it, therefore it shall be shut." Ezekiel 44:1,2.
Ottoman Sultan Suleiman the Magnificent walled it up in 1541, fulfilling Bible prophecy.

47. This gospel of the kingdom shall be preached in all the world for a witness to all nations; then shall the end come. Matthew 24:14. Satellite TV, radio, internet, ex-Muslims do this.

Conclusion: We must teach all nations how to be saved, how to live by the Bible and the signs of Jesus Christ's second coming being fulfilled today.

47. THE SECOND COMING OF JESUS CHRIST TO EARTH

AIM: 1. To summarise Bible teaching on the Second coming.

2. To motivate Christians to fervently serve Christ in view of Christ's return at any time and our accountability to Him.

A. FACT OF CHRIST'S RETURN

Jesus promised it (John 14:1-3).

Angels promised it (Acts 1:8-11).

B. WHEN WILL CHRIST RETURN

No human or angel knows the day or the hour of the rapture (Matthew 24:36).

We can, however, observe some signs in the world today indicating that Christ's return may be near:

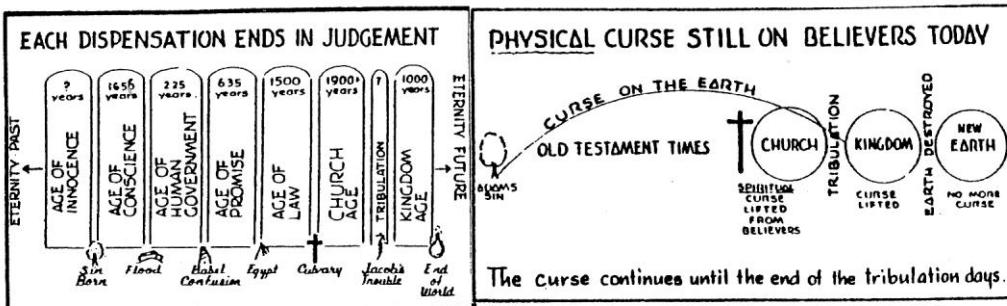
C. SIGNS OF CHRIST'S RETURN

1. Return of the Jews to the land of Israel (Ezekiel 37:1-14,21-28; Matthew 24:32,33; Joel 1:6,7).
2. Rise of Russia, Iran and Turkey as anti-Israel powers (Ezekiel 38-39).
3. Rise of 10-nation revived Roman Empire in Europe (Daniel 2:40-44; 7:7-28, Revelations 13).
4. Ability of man to destroy the earth (Revelations 11:18).
5. Increase in travel and knowledge in the time of the end. (Daniel 12:4).
6. Ecumenical movement including the World Council of Churches and Rome leading to a One-World religious system called "Mystery Babylon" in Revelations 17 and 18.
7. One world money system (Revelations 13:16-18).

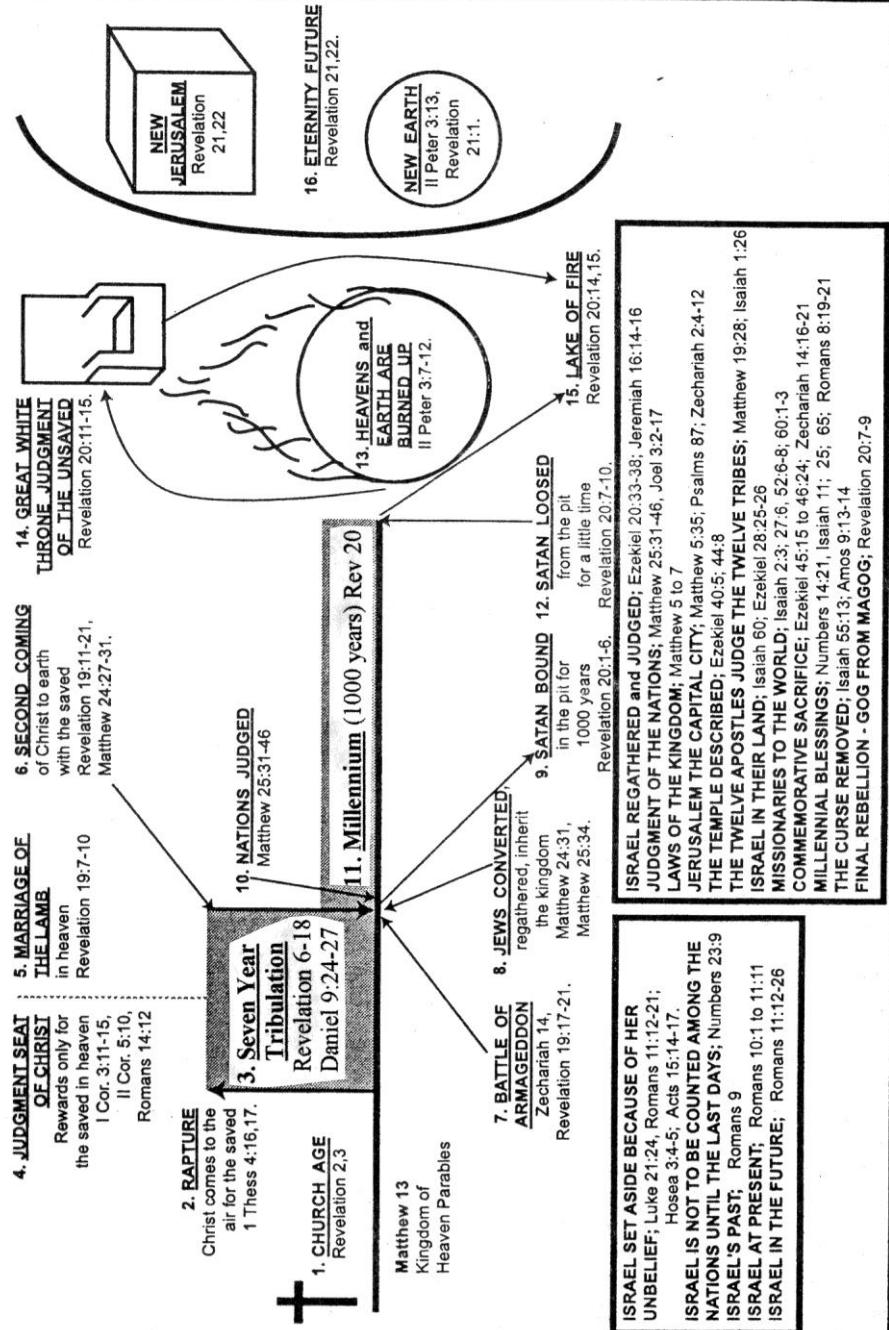
D. WHY STUDY CHRIST'S SECOND COMING?

1. About one quarter of the Bible refers to it.
2. Christ taught it. (Matthew 24-25)
3. It increases our desire to serve God in winning souls and making disciples, because Jesus may come today, requiring us to give account of our life to Him. (1 John 2:28; Matthew 24:42-44).
4. God blesses those who read the prophecy of Revelation. (Revelation 1:3).
5. It tells of ultimate victory for Christ and the believer, and his forces. This is why Satan doesn't want us to study and teach it.
6. It encourages us in our trials that the spiritual war will soon be over, guaranteeing us peace forevermore.

E. WHAT ARE THE ORDER OF EVENTS IN GOD'S PROGRAM?

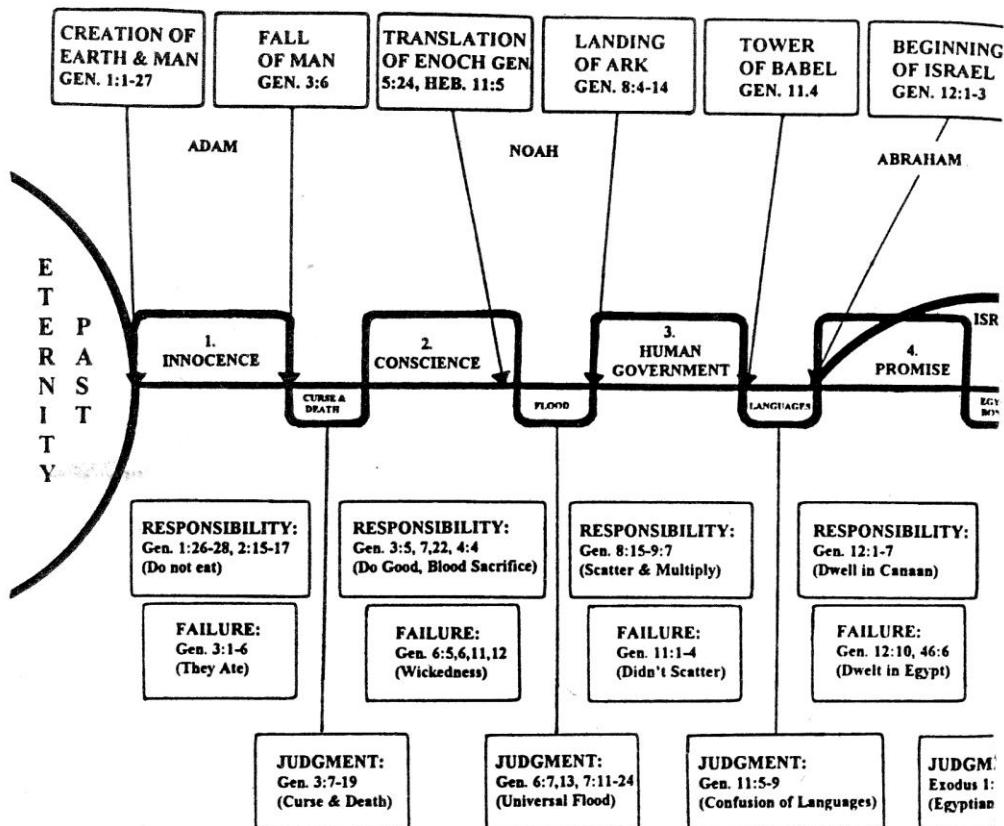


WHAT ARE THE ORDER OF EVENTS IN GOD'S PROGRAM?



1. **THE CHURCH AGE** from the Apostles (Ephesians 4:7-12) to the Rapture.
 The 7 Churches of Revelation 2 and 3 describe:
 - a) Church periods that this age is divided into.
 - b) Churches existing in John's time.
 - c) The spiritual condition of any church at any time.
 - d) The spiritual condition of any believer at any time. When Jesus begins a parable with: "The Kingdom of heaven is like unto...." He is describing what the Church age or the outward form of Christendom will be like from Pentecost to the Rapture.
2. **RAPTURE** is the catching away of all dead and living believers from earth to heaven.
 This occurs when Christ comes to the air (1 Thessalonians 4:13-18; 1 Corinthians 15:51-54; 11 Thessalonians 2:1-12; Revelation 3:10; 4:1-2). This event ends the Church age.
 Then commences the 7 year Tribulation with the Antichrist signing his 7 year covenant with Israel. The Rapture is the "blessed hope" of Titus 2:13 that believers are waiting for. Believers will be raptured before the Tribulation period, and will not pass through any of it because:
 1. We are looking for Christ to come (Titus 2:13). We are not looking for the Antichrist to confirm the covenant with Israel. (Daniel 9:27).
 2. Christ's coming is called a "blessed hope" and the Tribulation is not a blessed hope to look forward to going through.
 3. "God hath not appointed us to wrath . . ." (1 Thessalonians 5:9).
 4. The Church and John are raptured at Revelation 4:1,2 which is before the start of the Tribulation. (Revelation 6:1).
 5. The Tribulation is likened to Noah's Flood and the Judgment on Sodom and Gomorrah where God spared the righteous. (Matthew 24:37).
 6. God will keep the Philadelphian Church from (out of) the Tribulation period (Rev 3:10).
 7. If we are to be raptured midway or at the end of the Tribulation, we would know the day of Christ's return, which no man knows. (Matthew 24:35).
 8. 24 elders in Rev. 4:4 have "on their heads crowns of gold", only possible for resurrected bodies.
3. **THE 7 YEAR TRIBULATION** is the greatest time of trouble that Jews or the world have ever seen. It is:
 - a) Divided into 7 seals, 7 trumpets and 7 vials (bowl) judgments.
 - b) Described in Revelation 6-18.
 - c) Stated in Matthew 24:21-22 and Daniel 12:1.
 - d) Ruled by the Antichrist (II Thessalonians 2:3-12; Revelation 13; Daniel 7:19-27) from the 10 nation Revived Roman Empire in Europe.
 - e) Lasts for 7 years. Daniel 9:27 (1 week means 1 group of seven years, each with 360 days). In Matthew 24:21 the second half of the Tribulation is called the Great Tribulation.
 Revelation 11:1-3 states that it lasts $3 \frac{1}{2}$ years, 42 months or 1260 days. It commences with the Antichrist placing the abomination of desolation in the rebuilt Temple at Jerusalem (Matthew 24:15 and Daniel 9:27) and the Antichrist persecuting the Jews.
4. **JUDGMENT SEAT OF CHRIST** occurs after believers are raptured. It takes place in heaven during the first half of the 7 year Tribulation period. The quality of a believer's works after salvation are examined. He either receives rewards or suffers loss of rewards.
 Are you living for Christ and eternity or for self and this life only? What does Christ think of you? What rewards or treasures have you laid up for yourself in heaven? (Matthew 6:19-21).
5. **MARRIAGE OF THE LAMB** (Revelation 19:7-10).
 The Church is known as the Bride of Christ (Ephesians 5:23-33).
 The marriage and marriage supper between Christ and all raptured saints occurs in heaven before Christ and His saints return to the earth for the Battle of Armageddon.
6. **SECOND COMING OF CHRIST TO EARTH**
 - a) He comes with the saved. (Zechariah 14:5).
 - b) He comes with lightning speed. (Matthew 24:27-31).
 - c) He comes 2520 days (2 x 1260 days) after Antichrist signs his covenant with Israel. Dan 9:27.

- 7. BATTLE OF ARMAGEDDON** (Revelation 19:17-21; Zechariah 14:1-15).
 - a) At the end of the 7 year Tribulation, the Antichrist and armies of all nations gather around Israel to destroy Jews and to take Jerusalem. (Revelation 16:12-16).
 - b) Christ and all the saved then return from heaven (Revelation 19:11-16). Christ defeats the armies of Antichrist instantly at the plain of Megiddo (Revelation 14:14-20). The geography is like a winepress, and blood flows three feet deep for 200 miles.
 - c) After victory at Megiddo and Bozrah (Isaiah 63:1-6) Christ comes and stands on the Mount of Olives, which splits east-west (Zechariah 14:4). He then enters Jerusalem through the now closed East-Gate (Ezekiel 43:1,2).
 - d) Christ will then be King over all the earth and the people that attacked Jerusalem will be plagued by what seems to be nuclear explosions, which will dissolve their flesh (Zechariah 14:12-15; Isaiah 24:5-6).
- 8. JEWS ARE CONVERTED**
 - a) After being rescued by Christ following Armageddon, Jews notice the wounds in Christ's hands and realise that their ancestors crucified their long-awaited Messiah. (Zechariah 13:6).
 - b) This causes repentance and mourning, resulting in the Jewish people being saved by calling on Christ to be their Saviour. (Zechariah 12:10 and 13:9).
 - c) Jews all over the earth are then regathered into Israel. (Isaiah 11:11; 43:5-7; 60:8,9; Matt 24:31).
- 9. SATAN IS BOUND** in the pit for 1000 years along with his angels. (Revelation 20:1-3).
- 10. THE NATIONS OF THE WORLD ARE JUDGED** according to how they treated God's people during the Tribulation. The righteous (sheep) enter the Millennium, and the others (goats) enter everlasting fire. (Matthew 25:31-46).
- 11. THE MILLENNIUM** or 1000 year reign of Christ starts when Christ returns to the earth. What will this period be like?
 - a) Christ will regather all Jews to Israel (Isaiah 43:5-7).
 - b) Jerusalem will be the world capital, from where Christ rules the earth in person (Isaiah 2:1-4)
 - c) The Jews will become missionaries to the Gentiles (Isaiah 27:6; 61:6; Psalm 67:2).
 - d) Christ builds the Millennial Temple (Zechariah 6:12-15).
 - e) Animal creation will be changed (Isaiah 11:6-9 and 65:25).
 - f) Humans will live much longer (Isaiah 65:20-22; Zechariah 8:4), as long as trees, possibly 1000 years as before the Flood.
 - g) Peace and prosperity will characterise Christ's rule (Isaiah 2:4) as will universal knowledge of the Lord and private ownership (Micah 4:1-4).
- 12. SATAN IS LOOSED** from his prison after the 1000 years and deceives the unsaved of the nations to invade Jerusalem. Fire from God devours them and Satan is then cast into the lake of fire forever (Revelation 20:7-10).
- 13. THE HEAVEN AND EARTH ARE THEN BURNT UP WITH FERVENT (NUCLEAR LIKE) HEAT** (11 Peter 3:7-12).
- 14. THE GREAT WHITE THRONE JUDGMENT** of the unsaved occurs where all the unsaved people are taken from hell and given immortal, resurrected bodies. This is the second resurrection or tare judgment. (Matthew 13:24-30,36-43). They are then judged according to their works. Since the works that they have trusted in to gain God's acceptance fall short of Christ's perfect works, they are all cast alive into the.....
- 15. LAKE OF FIRE** where they are tormented forever (Revelation 20:11-15).
- 16. ETERNITY** then commences with a new heaven and new earth, as well as the New Jerusalem (1500 miles long, broad and high) coming down from God as the residence of the church (us) forever. (Revelation 21:22).



**THIS MAP SHOWS GOD'S "PLAN OF THE AGES" 2 Peter 1:20-21
FROM : ETERNITY PAST TO ETERNITY FUTURE God's Holy Word**

This map shows God's "Plan of the ages" from Eternity Past to Eternity Future as recorded in His inspired written word (II Pet. 1:20,21).

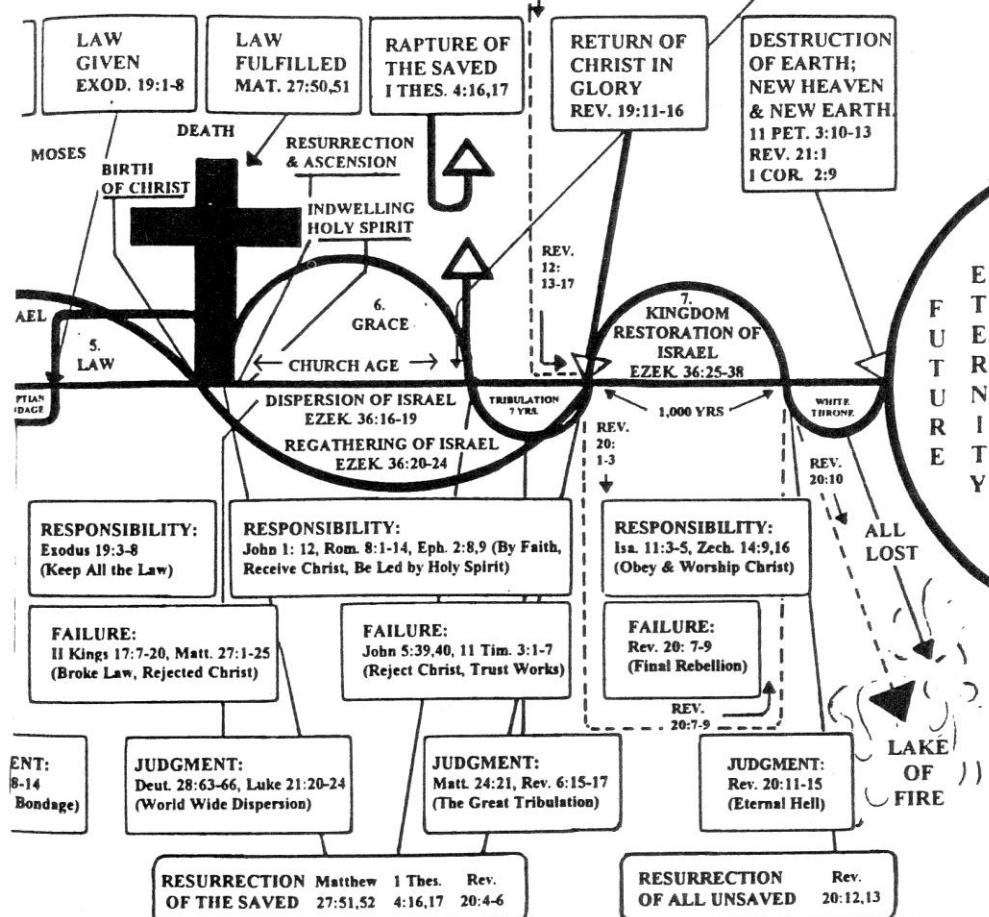
There are 7 dispensations in the outworking of God's overall eternal purpose (Eph. 1:9,10). In each man is given a specific test or responsibility; each ends in failure and this brings judgment. The overall revelation of the dispensational tests show that man is utterly *sinful and lost* (Rom. 3:10,23).

Salvation in every dispensation is by the GRACE OF GOD (un-deserved, un-earned gift) and is received BY FAITH. Some examples are Abel, Heb. 11:4; Enoch, 5:6; Noah, 7; Abraham, 8-19; Moses, 23-29. See also Eph. 2:8,9; Rom. 6:23.

We are now living in #6, Grace or Church age. This dispensation will end with the return of Christ. He will first return in the clouds to resurrect the DEAD IN CHRIST, to change the LIVING IN CHRIST and RAPTURE or receive them up together to Himself (John 14:1-3; I Thes. 4:16,17). This event MAY BE SOON—*notice the regathering of Israel—SUDDEN* (I Cor. 15:52), and a SEPARATION of the saved (born-again, in Christ; John 3:6,7; Rom. 8:1,9) from the unsaved. THOSE WHO REJECT CHRIST TO THE RAPTURE OR THEIR DEATH WILL NOT HAVE ANOTHER OPPORTUNITY (II Thes. 2:10-12; John 14:6)! Then after the 7 year Tribulation Judgment, Christ will return to the earth IN HIS GLORY with His saints to establish the 1,000 year Kingdom on the earth (Matt. 24:29,30; Rev. 19:11-20:6; Jude 14,15).

48. 7 DISPENSATIONS

REV. 12:7-10



The Tribulation will be God's wrath on *this* Christ rejecting world and men will beg the mountains to *fall on them* to hide them (Rev. 6:12-17). There will be wars and AT LEAST $\frac{1}{2}$ THE WORLD'S POPULATION WILL BE KILLED (Rev. 6:4,8; 9:15-18)! Men will be scorched with fire, there will be great earthquakes and 100 pound hail. Cities will fall and every island and mountain will disappear. AFTER THE RAPTURE (Rev. 3:10; 16:8,9, 18-21).

The White Throne will be God's final judgment on all who have rejected His GRACE, BY FAITH salvation. They will be resurrected from all ages, judged, then cast into the Lake of Fire forever (Rev. 20:11-15).

NOW TWO QUESTIONS :

- #1. If the Rapture comes today, will you be taken?
- #2. Would you like to KNOW you will be with Christ? IF SO, PLEASE FILL OUT THE QUIZ ON THE BACK...

49. THE RAPTURE - Jesus Christ's Second Coming for the Church.

Bible Reading: 1 Thess 4:13-18; John 14:2,3; 1 Cor 15:51-53; Titus 2:13; Rev.3:10; 4:1,2; Isaiah26:19

Aim: To comfort and motivate one another with the truth of Christ's return to take us to heaven.

Introduction: Jesus Christ's return will be in two stages. One for His bride the Church, known as the "catching away" or "rapture". (1 Thess. 4:13-18). The rapture will be followed by a seven year period known as the Tribulation. This will begin with the Antichrist from Europe making a treaty with Israel and breaking it after three-and-a-half years. The last three-and-a-half years of the Antichrist's reign will be the Great Tribulation spoken of by Christ in Matthew 24:21. This will be followed by the second stage of Christ returning to earth with believers to rule the world in righteousness. Zech 14:1-5; Jude 14

Definition: The term "rapture" comes from the Latin word for "caught up" in I Thessalonians 4:17.

Before the seven year tribulation, Christ will descend from heaven, and catch up the Church to heaven to be with Himself. The Tribulation will then be unleashed on an unbelieving world.

The Scriptures teaching the "catching away" are as follows:

a) I Thessalonians 4:16-18: "For the Lord himself shall descend from heaven with a shout, with the voice of the archangel, and with the trump of God: and the dead in Christ shall rise first:

Then we which are alive and remain shall be caught up together with them in the clouds, to meet the Lord in the air: & so shall we ever be with the Lord. Wherefore comfort one another with these words."

b) John 14: 2,3: Jesus said: "I go to prepare a place for you (v.2). And if I go and prepare a place for you, I will come again, and receive you unto myself: that where I am, there ye may be also."

c) I Corinth 15:51-53: "We shall not all sleep, but we shall all be changed, in a moment, in the twinkling of an eye, at the last trump: for the trumpet shall sound, and the dead shall be raised incorruptible, and we shall be changed. For this corruptible must put on incorruption, and...must put on immortality."

d) Titus 2:13: "Looking for that blessed hope (rapture), and the glorious appearing of the great God and our Saviour Jesus Christ." Rev 3:10; Rom 8:23; 13:11; Phil 3:20,21; 1 Thess 1:10; 5:9; 2 Thess 2:1

e) Revelation 4:1,2: John experienced the rapture: "After this I looked, and, behold, a door was opened in heaven: and the first voice which I heard was as it were of a trumpet talking with me: which said,

Come up hither, and I will shew thee things which must be hereafter...and immediately....in heaven."

We may summarise the main events of the rapture from I Thessalonians 4:6-17, as follows:

i) One day, Jesus Christ will descend from heaven and we will hear a shout, a voice and a trumpet.

ii) All dead believer's bodies will be resurrected to rejoin their spirits and souls in the air.

iii) All living believers will receive resurrection bodies, and be caught up to meet the Lord in the air.

iv) We will receive immortal, resurrection bodies, a place Christ has prepared for us in heaven, comfort forever in the presence of Christ, and rewards promised in 2 Corinthians 5:10.

The rapture is called a comfort and a blessed hope. Notice several things about the rapture.

1. Rapidity of the Rapture = Immediately (1 Corinthians 15:51,52).

"we shall all be changed in a moment (Grk: *atomos* 823), in the twinkling (Gk: *rhape* 4493) of an eye."

The speed with which the rapture will occur is described by these two Greek words which mean:

a) "atomos" = without a cut, indivisible. This is the word from which "atom" is derived, meaning "that which cannot be divided." When referring to time it means "an indivisibly small instant of time; a point of time which cannot be divided." It means "immediately."

b) "rhape" = a quick motion, such as a fling or toss. A blink, wink, jerk, or twinkle of an eye. The least duration of time. People will not have time to call on Christ for salvation, or to do what they planned.

Believers must serve Christ now so that we won't be ashamed at His coming. (I John 2:28).

2. Reason For The Rapture = To keep the Church out of the Tribulation.

The Church will be caught out of the world to be kept from the 7 year Tribulation period. The rapture will be as unexpected as a thief in the night. (I Thess.5:2-4). "God hath not appointed us to wrath, but to obtain salvation (*deliverance from the tribulation wrath*) by our Lord Jesus Christ." I Thes 5:9. Christ said to the faithful, Bible-loving Philadelphian church, "Because thou hast kept the word of my patience, I also will keep thee from (Greek: 'ek' = out of) the hour of temptation, which shall come upon all the world, to try them which dwell upon the earth." (Revelation 3:10).

Christ will spare His bride from going through the wars, famines, Antichrist's persecutions, earthquakes, and other judgments that will come on an unbelieving world.

The purpose of the Tribulation is to bring Israel and unbelieving nations to repentance (Rev. 9:18-21). In Revelation 6:8, 25% of the world's population are killed.

In Revelation 9:18, 33% of the rest are killed. This leaves only 50% of the world's population alive.

3. Requirement to be Raptured

Only those who have been saved by calling on Christ to save them from their sins, will be raptured. "The dead in Christ shall rise first." (I Thessalonians 4:16).

"we (all living believers) which are alive and remain shall be caught up...." (v.17).

Q: Are you trusting Jesus Christ to save you, or your good works to gain God's acceptance?

Some people in this room may be left behind if Jesus Christ returned today.

Q: Would you be taken to be with Christ, or would you be left behind to enter the 7 year Tribulation? Can you imagine what it would be like to be left behind?

a) You phone your Christian friends, and they are nowhere to be found.

b) The newspapers and television report millions of missing people.

c) Many driverless cars will have crashed on the roadside.

d) People will panic about their missing family and friends. They will demand an explanation. Was it the rapture predicted in the Bible? Antichrist will offer a false yet plausible explanation that many will believe (2 Thess. 2:8-12), maybe that UFOs took Christians who were resisting the new world order.

Q: Will you be saved and taken, or lost and left behind? Receive Jesus Christ as your Saviour today.

4. Rewards after the Rapture.

Following the rapture, all Christians will appear before the Judgment Seat of Christ (2 Cor. 5:10; Romans 14:10,12; 1 Cor. 3:10-15) to receive rewards according to the quality of our service to Christ after salvation. Some Christians will suffer loss of rewards that they could have earned. (1 Cor. 3:15). "every man shall receive his own reward according to his own labour." (I Corinthians 3:8).

Q: Will you win rewards, or will you lose rewards?

5. Revelation of the Sons of God.

When Christ appears, we shall be just like Him, even though we may now appear unattractive and unimportant. We will have a glorious, immortal body just like Jesus Christ has now.

"Beloved, now are we the sons of God, and it doth not appear what we shall be: but we know that, when he shall appear, we shall be like him; for we shall see him as he is." 1 John 3:2.

"For I reckon that the sufferings of this present time are not worthy to be compared with the glory which shall be revealed in us. For the earnest expectation of the creature waiteth for the manifestation of the sons of God." Romans 8:18,19.

God has predestined every believer to be conformed to the image and likeness of Christ. (Romans 8:29)

6. Our Response to the Rapture.

"Every man that hath this hope in him purifieth himself (sanctification), even as he is pure." 1 John 3:3.

Question: How should we now live? If we knew we'd be "caught up" next year, we should:

a) Live pleasing to God by reading and studying the Bible, and praying daily.

b) Learn How to win people to Christ so they'll be caught up to heaven and won't go through the Tribulation. Pastors should conduct a soul-winning training session this week. We want to rejoice with people in heaven who we have led to Christ on earth. We only have a short time to do soul-winning. We are in a war for eternal souls now. Don't be lazy, but get busy rescuing people from hell. After the rapture you'll have no chance to pluck people from hell. You'll never see your unsaved family and friends again. You can rest forever in eternity, but now is the time to win souls to Christ.

a) Confess and forsake any known sins. 1 John 1:9.

b) Dedicate your life wholeheartedly and completely to winning souls and serving Jesus Christ.

7. **Be ye also Ready**, for in such an hour as ye think not, the Son of Man cometh." (Matthew 24:44).

"Redeeming the time, because the days are evil." Ephesians 5:16.

Conclusion: Are you ready to face Christ? Are you saved? Are you winning souls daily or weekly?

Is there any known sin in your life that you need to confess and forsake? Do so today.

50. The JUDGMENT SEAT OF CHRIST: How It Will Change Our Behaviour

Bible Reading: II Corinthians 5:10; Romans 14:10-12; I Corinthians 3:10-15; Colossians 3:23-25.

Aim: To let the Judgment Seat of Christ change our behaviour now.

Introduction: One day after the Rapture, every Christian must give an account to God of the way he has lived since his salvation. Our Christian lives will be “on display” (made manifest). This will determine not our salvation, but the amount of rewards we will receive when we get to heaven. “Lay not up for yourselves treasures on earth...but lay up for yourselves treasures in heaven.” Matthew 6:19,20.

The Judgment Seat of Christ will be a place of:

1) Review – of our life from salvation to death.

It will show if we have lived for Christ and others, or for self.

Question: When Jesus returns, will I have a grudge against a friend?

Question: Will I have left my love for Jesus Christ, the Bible, souls, or the local church?

Question: If Christ came today, how many of the 19 commands in I Thessalonians 5:1,11-22 would I be obeying? “And now, little children, abide in him; that, when he shall appear, we may have confidence, and not be ashamed before him at his coming.” (I John 2:28). It is as if God gives us a block of land (foundation of salvation in Christ-3:11) in heaven, but we build the house (12) by our work after salvation.

2) Reward

The Judgment Seat of Christ in Greek is “Bematos tou Xristou” (II Cor. 5:10) known as the Bema Seat.

i) The Meaning of the Bema Judgment: It was a raised platform in the middle of an Olympic arena where the judge sat. After the contests were over, the winners would assemble before the Bema seat to receive their rewards from the judge. It was not a condemning seat, but a reward seat. Losing the race didn’t mean execution, it only meant no reward. The Christian life is a race, and the divine umpire is watching every contestant. After the Church age has finished at the rapture, Christ will gather every Christian before the Bema Seat to examine our life’s work and to give the proper rewards to each.

ii) The Fact of the Bema Judgment.

“For we must all appear before the judgment seat of Christ; that every one may receive the things done in his body, according to that he hath done, whether it be good or bad.” 2 Corinthians 5:10.

iii) The Purpose of the Bema Judgment.

- not to determine whether one enters heaven.

- not to punish believers for sins committed before or after salvation.

(See Psalm 103:10-12; Isaiah 38:17; 44:22; Micah 7:19; Hebrews 8:12).

- to give account to Jesus Christ of how we used our abilities, opportunities and responsibilities from the moment of our salvation. Hence:

a) In the past, God dealt with us sinners. (Ephesians 2:1-3; Romans 5:6-8).

b) In the present, God deals with us as sons. (Romans 8:14; I John 3:1,2; Hebrews 12:5-11).

c) In the future, God will deal with us (at the Bema Seat) as stewards. (I Corinthians 3:11-15).

iv) The material to be tested at the Bema Judgment.

At salvation, Christ becomes our foundation. (I Corinthians 3:11).

After salvation, we must build on this foundation. (I Corinthians 3:12-15).

God classifies believers works into 2 groups:

a) Those of indestructible and eternal value described as:

- gold = the trial of our faith (I Peter 1:7).

- silver = wisdom gained, favour with God (Proverbs 2:4; 3:14; 8:10; 22:1; Malachi 3:3).

- precious stones = souls won to Christ (Malachi 3:16,17).

b) Those destructible and useless activities of no eternal value are described as wood, hay and stubble. (I Corinthians 3:12-15).

Question: For what actions will we be rewarded at the Bema Judgment Seat of Christ?

1) How well we treat other believers. Hebrews 6:10; Matthew 10:41,42.

2) How well we submit to authority and exercise authority over others. Hebrews 13:17; James 3:1.

3) How well we use our God-given abilities. I Peter 4:10; Luke 19:11-26; Matthew 25:14-29.

4) How well we use our money. I Timothy 6:17-19; I Corinthians 9:6,7.

- 5) How much we suffer for Jesus. Matthew 5:11,12; 10:29,30; I Peter 4:12,13; 2 Cor. 4:17; Rom. 8:18.
- 6) How well we use our time. Ephesians 5:16; Colossians 4:5; I Peter 1:17.
- 7) How well we run the particular race God chooses for us. Philippians 2:16; 3:13,14; I Cor. 9:24.
- 8) How well we control the old nature. I Corinthians 9:25-27.
- 9) How many people we witness to and win for Christ. Proverbs 11:30; I Thess. 2:19,20; Daniel 12:3.
- 10) How well we react to trials and temptations. James 1:2,3; Revelations 2:10.
- 11) How much we love the doctrine of Christ's return. II Timothy 4:8.
- 12) How faithful we are to God's Word and to feeding the flock of God. I Peter 5:2-4.

v) The Results of the Bema judgment:

- a) Some will receive rewards (I Cor 3:14). 5 crowns may be abilities we enjoy to glorify Christ. p266
- b) Some will suffer loss. (I Cor. 3:15).

vi) What determines whether we receive a reward?

- a) **QUALITY**: "of what sort it is." (I Cor. 3:11-15 esp. v.13).

Would you prefer a handful of gold or a truckload of hay?

- b) **MOTIVE**: Jesus may ask "Why did you serve Me?" To be seen of men (Matthew 6:1,2,5) or for:

- Love for Christ. II Cor. 5:14,15.

- Love for others. II Cor .5:11.

- Our works are to be judged. II Cor. 5:10.

- c) We will be rewarded for WHAT WE ATTEMPTED. Matthew 25:21.

Did you invite anyone to church? Did you tell anyone how to be saved?

God calls us to be obedient and faithful.

3) Re-evaluation = to calculate the value of my life's effort again. Many things that seem big and important to us now, will seem small and worthless in heaven.

eg: The widow who gave 2 mites (2 x ¼ cents) gave more than the rich men.

"for unto whomsoever much is given, of him shall be much required." Luke 12:48.

You are talented. God expects you to use your talents, not waste them.

4) Recognition = Many nobodies on earth now, will be somebodies in heaven.

Many somebodies on earth now, with be nobodies in heaven.

The rich man and the beggar Lazarus were reversed in status in eternity.

5) Regret of a life misspent and of opportunities wasted. If you don't abide in Christ you'll be ashamed.

"Now little children, abide in him: that, when he shall appear, we may have confidence and not be ashamed. I John 2:28. "Look to yourselves, that we lose not those things which we have wrought, but

that we receive a full reward." 2 John 8. "Hold that fast which thou hast, that no man take thy crown."

Revelation 3:11.

The worldly minded, lazy, selfish Christian at the Judgment Seat of Christ will be very regretful.

6) Rejoicing of great rewards received by some. I Thessalonians 2:19,20.

"For the Son of man shall come in the glory of His Father with his angels; and then he shall reward every man according to his works." Matthew 16:27.

"Behold I come quickly; and my reward is with me to give every man according as his work shall be."

Revelation 22:12.

Challenge:

a) Christian: Have you been living for Christ? Have you got sin or resentment in your life that you'd be ashamed of if you saw Christ today? Raise your hand if you need to get right with God?

b) Lost: Maybe you're not sure you are saved. You're not sure you'd go to heaven. You're not sure you know Christ as your Saviour and Friend. You will have no reward except hell, because the wages of sin is death. If you'd like to be saved, raise your hand and come out in the invitation so you can see how you may be saved.

I Corinthians 3:14-17 has 3 kinds of builders:

i) The wise builder (3:14): the studying, soul winning, Spirit-filled Christian. "If any mans work abide"

ii) The worldly builder (3:15): the carnal Christian "If any man's work shall be burned, he shall suffer loss"

iii) The wicked builder (3:17):the unsaved. "If any man defile the temple of God, him shall God destroy

Question: To which group do you belong?

Judgements of the Great Tribulation

51.

The Seven Seals

1st Seal	White horse - rider has bow, crown given to him - went out conquering to conquer.	Antichrist
2nd Seal	Fiery red horse - rider given power to take peace from earth - given great sword to kill one another.	Conflict on Earth
3rd Seal	Black horse - rider has pair of scales in hand. Wheat and barley measured out in return for money - warning not to harm oil and wine.	Scarcity on Earth
4th Seal	Pale horse - rider's name - Death. Hades followed. Given power to kill 1/4 of earth with sword, hunger, death and beasts.	Widespread Death
5th Seal	Cry of martyred souls under altar wanting revenge - must wait till fellow servants and brethren, also martyred.	Persecution
6th Seal	Great earthquake - sun blackened, bloodlike moon, falling stars - sky recedes as scroll - mountains and islands move. People hide in caves, rocks and mountains.	Cosmic Disturbances

The Seven Trumpets

7th Seal	Silence in heaven - 1/2 hour. Fire thrown to earth - noises, thunderings, lightnings, earthquake	
1st Trumpet	Hail and fire mingled with blood thrown to earth. 1/3 trees burned, all grass burned.	Vegetation Struck
2nd Trumpet	Something like great mountain of fire thrown into sea (meteor?). 1/3 sea - blood, 1/3 living creatures in sea died and 1/3 of ships destroyed.	Seas Struck
3rd Trumpet	Great burning star like torch fell on 1/3 rivers and springs. Poisons 1/3 of waters with wormwood - many die from bitter waters.	Waters Struck
4th Trumpet	1/3 sun darkened, 1/3 moon darkened, 1/3 stars darkened, 1/3 day and 1/3 night did not shine.	Heavens Struck
5th Trumpet	Bottomless pit opened - smoke darkens sun and air - locusts (demons) given power like scorpions - harm men without seal of God on foreheads - 5 months torment - then death.	Demons Torment Mankind
6th Trumpet	Four angels bound at River Euphrates released to kill 1/3 mankind - Satan's army of 200 million - 1/3 mankind killed by fire, smoke and brimstone.	Satan's 200 million army kills 1/3 Mankind

1st Woe

2nd Woe

3rd Woe

The Seven Thunders Sealed Up

7th Trumpet	Kingdom proclaimed - temple in heaven opened - ark of covenant seen - lightnings, noises, thunderings, earthquake, great hail.	The Seven Bowls (Vials)
1st Bowl	Poured out on earth, foul and loathsome sore on those with mark of beast and those who worshipped his image.	Malignant Sores
2nd Bowl	Poured out on sea - became like blood of dead men - every living creature in sea died.	Sea Turns to Blood
3rd Bowl	Poured out on rivers and springs - became blood.	Waters Turn to Blood
4th Bowl	Poured out on sun - men scorched with fire.	Men are Scorched
5th Bowl	Poured out on Beast's throne - kingdom became full of darkness - gnawed their tongues because of pain.	Darkness and Pain
6th Bowl	River Euphrates dries up - way of kings of east prepared. Unclean spirits like frogs from mouth of dragon, beast and false prophet work signs to gather kings to Armageddon.	Euphrates Dried Up
7th Bowl	Poured out into air - great earthquake. Great city - 3 parts, cities of nations fall, Babylon judged, islands flee away, mountains disappear, great hail stones each weighing talent.	Earth Utterly Shaken

52. THE RUSSIAN and MUSLIM INVASION of ISRAEL

Bible Reading: Ezekiel 36, 37, 38, 39.

Aim: To see how current events are leading to the invasion by Russia and Muslim nations of Israel.

Introduction.

The Prophecies in Ezekiel 36-39 have much to say about the world today.

The following benefits come from such a study:

1. It shows the future destruction of Russian military might.
2. It shows that God is against the Muslim religion and Muslim nations by God destroying their armies when they invade Israel.
3. It shows that God has a great future for Israel by protecting her in this invasion.
4. It proves the Bible to be true as it correctly predicts many aspects of modern world politics.
5. It contains a very likely reference to Britain and the United States in Bible prophecy.
6. The destruction of Russia and Muslim nations opens the way for Europe under the Antichrist to become the major world power in the Tribulation period.

Background:

One of the greatest proofs of the Bible is the survival of the Jew since Abraham's time 4000 years ago. In spite of attempts to destroy them by Egypt, Assyria, Babylon, Rome and Hitler they continue to survive. After 1900 years of wandering among the nations, they are back in their own land as a nation since 1948. Israel today is the focal point for world interest and peace. It is the centre of political, industrial and Muslim conflict as the world's industries are so dependent on Middle Eastern oil supplies.

I. EZEKIEL 35: PROPHECY AGAINST MOUNT SEIR.

Question: Why did God devote a second prophecy to Edom (cf. 25:12-14), and why was it placed in the section on Israel's restoration?

Answer: Most likely Edom was listed here to represent God's judgment on all nations who oppose Israel. Edom was a type of all Israel's future enemies. The Edomites, who lived south of the Dead Sea "had a perpetual hatred, and shed the blood of the children of Israel" (v.5) when the Israelites fled the Babylonians at Jerusalem's fall in 586 BC. Edom will be the scene of frightful bloodshed at the battle of Armageddon, when Israel's enemies will be purged out at Christ's second coming. "Who is this that cometh from Edom, with dyed garments from Bozrah?..." Isaiah 63:1-6. Edom's sin was her hatred of Israel, just like the Muslim nations hate Israel today. When God restores Israel at the start of the Millennium, He will judge all nations of the world based on their treatment of Israel. (Matthew 25:31-46). Ezekiel 35 divides into 3 sections, each ending with the promise "thou shalt know that I am the Lord," v.5,9,15, each section being 35:1-4; 5-9; and 10-15.

II. EZEKIEL 36: RESTORING ISRAEL TO HER LAND.

In Ezekiel 36:1, Ezekiel prophesies to the "mountains of Israel". These mountains are highest at Hebron and Jerusalem. These are the two locations that the PLO is seeking to take off Israel in 1996 as part of the 'peace' process. God's reply to the PLO and to other nations trying to get Israel to give up Jerusalem and Hebron is as follows:

"Because the enemy hath said against you, Aha, even the **ancient high places** (Jerusalem, Hebron) are ours in possession....v.2

Surely in the fire of my jealousy have I spoken against the **residue of the heathen** (nations e.g. PLO, USA), and against all Idumea, which have appointed **my land to their possession**...v.5

Surely the heathen that are about you (Israel), they shall bear their **shame**". v.7

i) **Punishing Israel's enemies.** (1-7). Edom again represents all nations that would harm Israel.

God promised with an uplifted hand of a solemn oath (v.7), to punish Israel's enemies for their sin in hounding, slandering (v.3), plundering (v.4,5), rejoicing over and hating Israel, and appropriating His land for themselves (v.5).

ii) **Restoring Israel's land.** (v.8-12). God states that:

"I am for you, I will turn unto you, ye shall be tilled and sown, I will multiply men upon you...the cities shall be inhabited, and the wastes shall be builded. (v.9,10).

I will settle you after your old estates, and will do better unto you than at your beginnings" v.11

I will cause men (Israel) to walk upon you,...they shall possess thee.” v.12

- iii) **God will remove Israel's reproach.** (v.13-15). The mockery and humiliation that Israel has been forced to endure (v.3-6) will cease, as she is restored to prestige as God's chosen people.
iv) **God's chastening of Israel.** (v.16-23). When Israel dwelt in their own land, they defiled it by their sins (v.16,17). God judged them for their murders and idolatry (v.18), and scattered them amongst heathen countries. v.19.

There they profaned God's holy name (v.20), but God had pity on them (v.21). God will sanctify His name, so the nations may know that “I am the LORD.” (v.23).

- v) **9 Steps in Israel's regathering.** (v.24-38):

1. I will **gather** you out of all countries, and bring you into your own land. (v.24).
2. I will sprinkle clean water upon you, and ye shall be clean.

God will **forgive** and **cleanse** Israel of all her filthiness and idolatry (v.25).

3. I will give you a **new heart** and a **new spirit**, taking away your stoney heart (v.26). This was the new birth that Jesus mentioned in John 3:3,5,10 that Nicodemus should have known about as one of Israel's master teachers. (Jeremiah 31:33,34 Ezekiel 11:19; 18:31).
4. I will put my **Holy Spirit** within you. (v.27). This will enable Israel to walk in God's ways.
5. Ye shall **dwell** in the land in peace, prosperity and agricultural fruitfulness. (v.28-30).
6. Ye shall **remember** your own evil ways,...and shall loathe yourselves for your sins and abominations. (v.31).
7. “**Not for your sakes** do I this” means that God will restore them for Christ's sacrifice sake, not for their works (v.32).
8. Israel's conversion will bring a **great city renewal**, and reclamation of **desert** regions (v.33,34) to be like the Garden of Eden (v.35).
9. When Israel **prays** to God, He will **increase them** like a flock of sheep.

“I will yet for this be inquired of by the house of Israel.” (v.37,38).

III. EZEKIEL 37: ISRAEL'S NATIONAL RESURRECTION.

The Vision of the Valley of Dry Bones

This vision shows the national and spiritual restoration of Israel back to the land, as promised in chapter 36. Israel was “dead” as a nation, deprived of her land, her king and her temple. She had been divided and scattered among the nations over the last 1900 years, so that restoration and unification seemed impossible. Hence God gave two signs (37:1-14 and v.15-28) to illustrate the future restoration of Israel to the land in the last days. They are:

A. The Valley of Dry Bones. v.1-14.

The hand of the Lord carried Ezekiel in the Spirit and set him down in the midst of a valley full of very many, very dry bones. God asks Ezekiel in v.3 “Can these bones Live?” He replied “O Lord God, Thou knowest”, realizing that humanly speaking it was impossible, yet it was possible for God. God told Ezekiel to prophesy to the dry bones. As he did, he observed 3 stages in new life:

- i) **Skeleton stage:** “Bones came together, bone to his bone”. v.7.

This corresponds to events in 1897 AD where Theodore Hertzl called the first Zionist Congress to reclaim Palestine as a national home for the Jews.

Also, in 1917 AD, General Allenby captured Jerusalem off the Turks. The Balfour Declaration was passed by the British Government promising Palestine as a national home for the Jews. This was in appreciation of Chaim Weizman's invention of an improved method of making explosives, thus giving Britain a greater fire power advantage in World War I.

- ii) **Sinews, flesh and skin** came on the skeletons: This corresponds to the establishment of Israel as a nation in Palestine in 1948, by a United Nations mandate. When Britain moved out in 1948, Egypt, Iraq, Syria, Lebanon and Saudi Arabia attacked Israel. Israel won this war, increasing her territory from 5000 square miles to 8,000 square miles.

On June 5, 1967, President Nasser of Egypt, with 185,000 troops from Egypt, Iraq, Syria, Jordan and Saudi Arabia declared war on Israel. Immediately, the Israeli air force destroyed 400 Russian built, Arab war planes on the ground in one day. Israel captured Jerusalem and the Golan Heights in what became known as the Six Day War.

On October 6, 1973, the Yom Kippur War began when the Arabs attacked Israel on the Jewish Day of Atonement holiday, with much modern Russian weaponry. Israel suffered greatly but finally won, capturing vast quantities of Russian arms. In 1990, Russia permitted 750,000 Jews to emigrate to Israel.

- iii) **Breath** stage: “Breath came into them, and they lived, and they stood up upon their feet, an exceeding great army”. v.10.

The word “slain” in “Breathe upon these slain” (v.9), means that over history the Jews were “killed, murdered and butchered”, as they were persecuted. This breath stage corresponds to **national restored Israel receiving the Holy Spirit** as promised in Israel’s New Covenant (36:24-28). This occurs after Armageddon when Christ returns to rescue them from destruction by the Antichrist. This prophecy will be ultimately fulfilled when Christ regathers believing Israelites to Israel in the Millennium. See Jeremiah 31:31-34.

Question: What do these dry bones represent?

Answer: “These bones are the whole house of Israel. v.11.

Explanation: “Behold they say, **Our bones are dried**, and **our hope is lost**: we are **cut off** for our parts”. v.11.

- “We are cut off” means “it’s all over for us”. Their outlook was grimly hopeless as represented by the long unburied, sun bleached dry bones in a valley.
- The valley symbolizes Israel’s depressed, persecuted, humiliated, low condition while scattered among the nations.

God’s purposes of restoring Israel:

- To show Israel that their future is more glorious than ever, and that it is not all over for Israel.
- To show that Israel is still “My people”. Twice God addresses Israel as “O my people” v.12,13.
- To settle Israel in her ancient homeland as a regenerated nation, which embraces 4 events:

a) Bringing the Israelite people **out from the nations**.

“I will open your graves and cause you to come out from your graves”. v.12.

Graves represent Israel’s place of non-existence among the nations.

They are dead nationally and spiritually, like the prodigal son.

b) Israel will be **brought into the land**. “I will bring you into the land of Israel”. v.12.

This happens gradually over a period of time, as follows:

YEAR	1870	1900	1914	1948	1955	1960	1965	1970	1978	1991	1996
ISRAEL’S POP.	10,000	40,000	80,000	758,000	1,600,000	1,900,000	2,300,000	2,500,000	3,200,000	4,600,000	5,000,000

c) Israel’s **spiritual rebirth** at Christ return. (Zechariah 12:10-13:9).

“I shall put my Spirit in you, and ye shall live” v.14. The word “live” in v.3,5,6,9,10 means to “live spiritually”. (Ezekiel 36:24-28; Joel 2:28,29; Jeremiah 31:31-34; John 3:3,4).

d) Israel will be **settled securely** and permanently in the land. “I shall place you in your own land”. v.14. “Place” (‘nuah’ in Hebrew) means “cause you to rest, settle down, remain in security and quietness”.

B. The **Sign of Two Sticks** v.15-28.

- i) **The Sign Given.** 37:15-17. Ezekiel was told to take 2 sticks and write **Judah** on one stick, and **Ephraim** on the other, then to join them together into one stick.

After Solomon died in 931 BC, the nation of Israel split into the Northern kingdom of 10 tribes known as Israel or Ephraim (Hosea 5:3,5) and into the Southern kingdom of 2 tribes known as Judah, being its larger tribe. Assyria took Israel into captivity in 722 BC, and Babylon took Judah captive in 606, 597 and 586 BC.

Note: Mormons wrongly claim that the 2 sticks represent the Bible (the stick of Judah) and the Book of Mormon (the stick of Joseph or Ephraim).

This wrong idea ignores the clear interpretation in v.18-28. It tries to impose a foreign meaning on the context of the sticks. Where is Mormonism mentioned here? Nowhere!

ii) The Sign Explained. 37:18-28. The uniting of the 2 sticks pictured God restoring His people Israel to the land and reuniting them as a single nation in the land. When united, Israel will be led by King David himself (34:23,24) ruling under Jesus Christ as King of Kings.

8 Results of Israel's Restoration to the land:

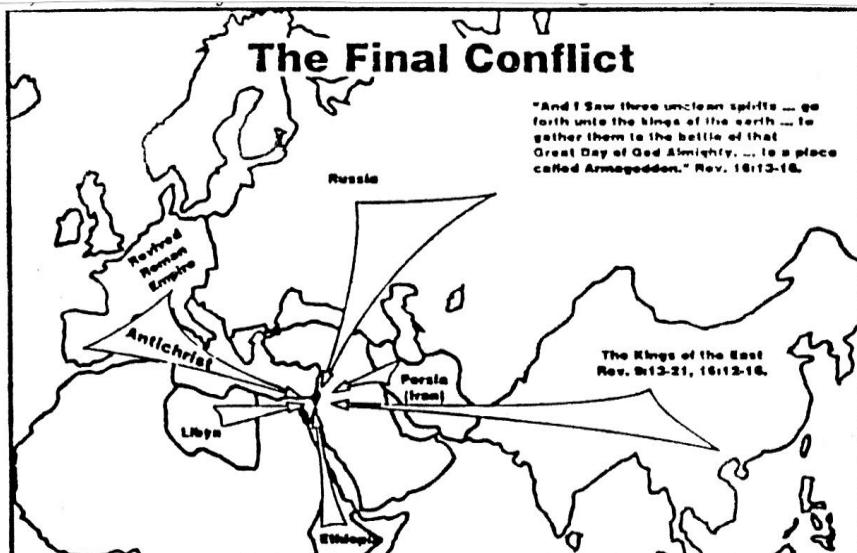
1. The nation will be **united** as 12 tribes. v.21,22; Ezekiel 34:23,24.
2. **David** will be resurrected to be their King under Christ.
3. Israel will be **cleansed** of idolatry and all other sins. v.23.
4. Redeemed Israel will **possess the land** given by God to Jacob. Genesis 28:12-17.
5. God will make a new, everlasting **covenant of peace** with them. v.26a.
6. God will **multiply & prosper** them, placing them **securely & permanently in the land**.v25
7. God will set His **sanctuary** in the midst of them forever. God's sanctuary will be the literal millennial temple. (Ezekiel 40:1-31; 44:31).
8. God's **tabernacle** will be with them. v.27. God's dwelling place, like the pillar of cloud and fire in the wilderness, will be a token of God's presence on every house in Jerusalem to defend them. (Isaiah 4:5,6).

IV. EZEKIEL 38: RUSSIA, IRAN, ETHIOPIA, LIBYA, GOMER AND TOGARMAH (TURKEY) INVADE ISRAEL.

Introduction: Ezekiel 38 and 39 describe Russia's last bid for world conquest, and are in the context of prophecies of Israel's restoration to the land (Ezekiel 36,37). Although Israel is militarily superior to her Arab neighbours, the possibility of a Russian attack has been her constant fear.

This battle is part of a series of battles that take place in the 7 year tribulation, just before Christ's visible return. Notice several phases of events here:

- i) A political leader known as Antichrist will head up a 10 nation European confederacy, that will confirm a 7 year peace covenant with Israel (Daniel 9:27). This explains the strange statement in Ezekiel 38:11 of Israel "dwelling safely", something that has never happened in 2000 years of Israel's history. This would locate the time of Russia's invasion as being around day 1000 of the 7 year tribulation period.
- ii) By Russia and her Muslim allies suffering a disastrous defeat, this changes the world political situation and balance of power so greatly, that the Antichrist can easily become a world dictator by the middle of the 7 year tribulation.
- iii) The Great Tribulation (the last 3½ years) will see another world war (Daniel 11:40-45; Rev. 16:12-16). This will occur just before Christ's second coming. It can be pictured as follows:



Ezekiel 38, 39 reveals a future invasion of Israel by the armies of Russia, Iran, Ethiopia, Sudan, Libya Turkey and Gomer. These invaders will be decisively destroyed. A search of history finds no such battle or outcome. Prophecies not yet fulfilled, will be fulfilled just as literally as previously fulfilled prophecies.

1. The TIME of this invasion.

When will this invasion occur? Several time indicators point to this battle occurring before the middle of the 7 year tribulation. These are:

- i) When Russia, Iran, Ethiopia, Sudan, Libya and Turkey **are all united against Israel**. 38:1-6. Today Fundamentalist Muslim governments are in control of all these countries except Russia. Because Russia has lost her east European allies to Europe, she is now looking to Iran to forge economic alliances.
- ii) "In the **latter years** thou shalt come into the land...that is gathered out of **many people**". v.3. Today for the first time in 1900 years, Israel has become a nation in the land having been gathered out of many people. (This was not the case when Israel returned from Babylon in 536 BC as **Babylon was only one nation** to return from). This regathering from many nations only happens in the latter years, just before Jesus Christ's return. Hence, from 1948 onwards is the latter years.
- iii) "It shall be in the **latter days**". v.16.
- iv) "They shall dwell **safely** all of them". v.8,11. Since 1948, Israel have never dwelt safely in the land. The only time that they dwell safely is in the first half of the 7 year tribulation period, when Israel enjoys the peace covenant confirmed by the Antichrist European ruler. (Daniel 9:27).
- v) Israel at this time is called "a land of **unwalled villages**" v.11. This is the situation today worldwide, because walls are no defense against enemy missiles or heavy firepower. Before 1500 AD city walls were necessary, but today they are useless. Hence Ezekiel 38,39 describe events after 1500 AD.
- vi) **Sheba and Dedan** (Saudi Arabia), the **Merchants of Tarshish** (USA), and the **young Lions** (British Commonwealth countries) **protest** to the invasion in v.13. Today the US Sixth Fleet is permanently stationed in the Persian Gulf to protect its oil supply line from Saudi Arabia. The US and Saudi Arabian alliance repelled Iraq in the Gulf War of 1991. This western alliance is in place today.

Since there will be no warfare in the millennium (Isaiah 2:1-4; Micah 4:3,4), this invasion cannot take place after Christ returns to earth. It cannot occur after the middle of the tribulation, because the Antichrist then begins his persecution of Israel.



The invasion cannot occur after the middle of the Tribulation because the Antichrist then begins his persecution of Israel. Israel will not dwell safely then.

Hence Israel only feels safe and secure in the first half of the Tribulation under the Antichrist's peace covenant.

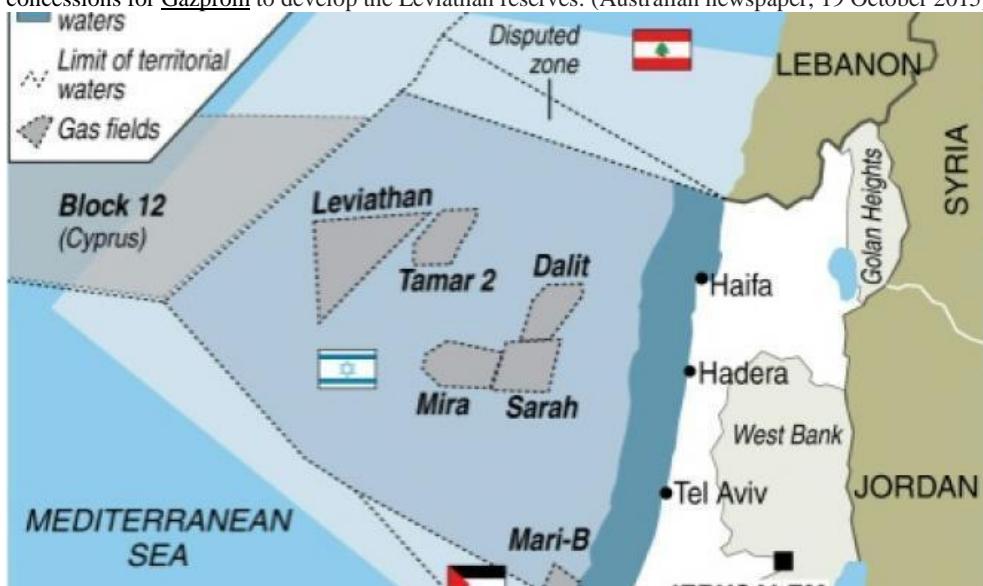
2. REASON FOR the INVASION.

One reason for the Russian/Muslim invasion of Israel is “to take a spoil” (mentioned 3 times in 38:12,13) or a “great spoil”. What might this spoil be? Some have suggested that it may be Israel’s offshore Leviathan, Tamar and Dalit gas and oilfields. Leviathan contains about 622 billion cubic metres (or 21.9 trillion cubit feet) of gas. As per the US Geological Survey (USGS) estimates, the entire Leviathan Basin holds a mean approximation of 1.7 billion barrels of recoverable oil (600 million barrels of oil beneath the gas layer) and a mean of 122 trillion cubic feet of recoverable gas. Saudi Arabia has 250 trillion cubic feet of gas reserves and 268 billion barrels of oil reserves.

According to BP’s Statistical Review of World Energy, global oil reserves at the end of **2012** were 1.7 trillion barrels. Given that the world consumes about 86 million barrels of crude oil per day, some may conclude we’ll run out of oil in 55 years, or sooner if we increase consumption. Feb 1, 2014.

The Leviathan Natural Gas Field was discovered in December 2010. The discovery is located about 130 km west of Haifa, Israel. “And of Asher he said, *Let Asher be blessed with children; let him be acceptable to his brethren, and let him dip his foot in oil.*” (Deut 33:24). Leviathan is opposite Asher.

Russian President Vladimir Putin and Israeli PM Benjamin Netanyahu agreed to allow major concessions for Gazprom to develop the Leviathan reserves. (Australian newspaper, 19 October 2015).

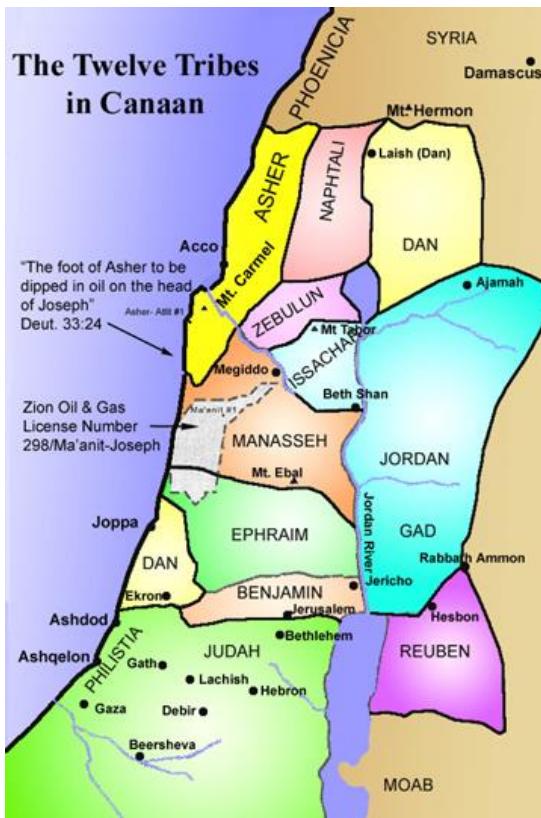


Oil is a finite resource and when it is used up there will be no more. During World War II, it was America’s supply of oil and Japan’s lack of it that determined the outcome of the war.

When the US realized in 1943 that it would eventually run out of oil, negotiations focused on securing supplies from Saudi Arabia and the Persian Gulf states (Sheba and Dedan).

If ever the Arab Gulf States needed the US, it was in 1990 when the Iraqi army moved into Kuwait and threatened Saudi Arabia. Because of the US success in Operation Desert Storm, the US consolidated its position as protector and partner of the Arab Gulf States (Sheba and Dedan) who control much of the world’s oil resources. Today we see Russia, Iran, Libya, Ethiopia, Sudan and Turkey associating together. At the same time we also see the Merchants of Tarshish (England and the USA) allying with Saudi Arabia (Sheba and Dedan) as prophesied in Ezekiel 38. Oil has played a major part in the providence of God, in bringing the oil rich Arab states together with the USA in preparation for their final role in the last days before Christ’s return.

The Twelve Tribes in Canaan



3. IDENTITY of the INVADERS.

"Son of man, set thy face against God, the land of **Magog**, the chief (Rosh) prince of **Meshech** and **Tubal**, and prophesy against him, (v.2), And say, thus saith the Lord God: Behold, I am against thee, O Gog, the chief (Rosh) prince of Meshech and Tubal:..... (v.3).

Persia (Iran), **Ethiopia**, and **Libya** with them: all of them with shield and helmet:**Gomer**, and all his bands; the house of **Togarmah** of the north quarters, and all his bands and **many people** with thee. Thou shalt come from thy place out of the **north** parts." v.6,15.

Note: An alternative rendering of v.1,2 is "prince of Rosh, Meshech and Tubal".

Should the Hebrew word for "chief", (Rosh) be taken as an adjective (chief prince) or as a proper noun (prince of Rosh)? Both are possible and acceptable.

The invaders named are:

1. Gog (the leader) from **Magog**, who is the prince of **Rosh, Meshech** and **Tubal**. v.2,3.
2. Persia (Iran). v.5.
3. Ethiopia (Ethiopia and Sudan). v.5.
4. Libya. v.5.
5. Gomer. v.6.
6. Togarmah (Turkey). v.5.

Let us trace each of these nations identity:

1. The leader will be Gog, from **Magog**, the prince of **Rosh, Meshech** and **Tubal**. What country is represented by Magog, Rosh, Meshech and Tubal? Russia!

- a) **Jerome**, a prominent church leader (345-420 AD) stated that Magog was located north of the Caucasus mountains, near the Caspian Sea. “Gog and Magog”, with the Scythians, who lived near the Black Sea from the Caucasus to the Danube. (*A.R. Millard, “Scythians”, International Standard Bible Encyclopedia 1988, 4, 365*).
- c) The **Caucasus mountains** of Russia mean “Gogs fort”. (*L. Bauman, Russian Events in the light of Bible Prophecy, p. 23-25, D. Pentecost, “Things to Come”, p.327*).
- d) **Gesenius**, the famous 19th century Hebrew lexicographer says of:
 - **Magog**⁴⁰³¹ - “a great and powerful people inhabiting the extreme recesses of the north, who are at some time to invade the Holy land. Ezekiel 38,39. Greeks called them Scythians”. p.447.
 - **Rosh**⁷²²⁰ - proper noun of a northern **nation undoubtedly the Russians**....and described by an Arabic writer Ibn Fosslan of 10th century, as dwelling on the river Volga. (p.752). So, Rosh can be a proper noun. Genesis 46:21 states Rosh as one of the sons of Benjamin.
 - **Meshech**⁴⁹⁰² - proper Moschi, a barbarous people inhabiting the Moshian mountains.
 - **Tubal**⁸⁴²² - proper noun, the Tibareni, a nation of Asia Minor, dwelling by the Euxine Sea, west of the Mosch.
- e) **Geographical proof**: Ezekiel states in 3 passages (38:6,15; 39:2) that this invading nation comes from the “uttermost part of the **north**” (as the Hebrew renders it). Moscow is directly north of Jerusalem, on the same longitude, as can be seen on a map.
- f) **Linguistic proof**: J. Walvoord in “The Nations in Prophecy,” p.107, 108 states that “Rosh may be the root of modern Russia.....Meshech is similar sounding to Moscow, and Tubal is similar sounding to the Russian Province of Tobolsk.”
The American Standard Version translates it as “the prince of Rosh”.
- g) The 7 sons of Japheth were Gomer, **Magog**, Madai, Javan, **Tubal**, **Meshech** and **Tiras**. These settled into areas which became known as:
 - Gomer in Cappadocia, possibly Germany.
 - Magog, Tubal and Meshech in Russia.
 - Javan in Greece.
 - Madai in Media.
 - Tiras near Greece. (Genesis 10:1,2).

The Table of the Descendants in Genesis chapter 10 shows where Noah’s descendants settled.

2. **Persia (Iran)**. This is a fundamentalist Islamic state that sponsors terrorism.
3. **Ethiopia**. This includes modern **Sudan**, an Islamic Fundamental state that severely persecutes Christians in the South.
4. **Libya**. A fundamentalist Islamic state under Colonel Qaddafi that sponsors terrorism against Israel and the West.
5. **Gomer**¹⁵⁸⁶ - his descendants may have spread to modern Germany.
6. **Togarmah**⁸⁴²⁵ - occupies the area of modern **Turkey**, which has recently become a fundamentalist Muslim state.

Four of the six invaders are fundamentalist Muslim states, that hate Israel.

A fundamentalist Muslim is one who believes strongly in the Koran and the Islam religion. The move back to these basic beliefs was triggered by the defeat of the Ottoman Empire in 1922.

When Israel defeated the **Egyptian** army in 1948 and 1949, in the Sinai war in 1956, in the Six day war in 1967, and in the Yom Kippur War in 1973, each of these defeats was seen as the Muslim god, Allah, judging Islamic countries because of their lukewarmness, by allowing Israel to be victorious over them. From 1973, fundamentalist Muslims became much more militant. In 1979, President Sadat of Egypt commenced peace talks with Israel. In 1982 Sadat arrested about 2000 militant Islamic fundamentalists, he purged the army of 200 militant Islamic officers, and he forced the registration of 40,000 mosques in Egypt. He was soon assassinated by four Islamic soldiers.

At the same time in Iran, the Shah was forced to flee the country and the Ayatollah Khomeini became the leader and spokesman for the Islamic government. In 1979 he taught that the world was in the last

stage of world history, and because Allah had predestined Muslims to take the world for Allah, they had to be 100% committed to Allah.

He taught that Israel was a satanic vehicle permitted by God to oppose Islam because of the lukewarmness of the Muslim masses. He taught that unless Israel was defeated and Jerusalem liberated, they could not move onto world victory.

This Islamic revolution has swept much of the world and has started Islamic terrorist groups such as Hamas in Gaza, Jihad in Israel, Hezbollah in Lebanon and other groups elsewhere such as in Sudan. All of these groups believe that they must take the world by force and terror, starting with Israel.

There is a revolution in the Islamic world. Islam believes it must remove corrupt and ineffective Islamic governments and install fundamentalist ones. This has led to much unrest in the Middle East and Africa, especially in Algeria, Morocco, Tunisia and Lebanon. In Iran, Libya, Ethiopia and Sudan strong Islamic governments have come to power.

The INVASION predicted in Ezekiel 38 and 39 will be a combined Muslim confederacy led by Russia. Today we see Iran (Persia) leading a Muslim revival determined to destroy Israel. Iran has military, nuclear, space and economic agreements with Russia. Sudan has come under a Muslim government and is closely aligned with Iran. Iran has sent 30,000 Muslim "missionaries" to Sudan to take all of Africa for Islam. Libya is armed by and economically tied to Russia. In 1995 Libya and Russia signed a \$1.5 billion agreement to build infrastructure projects, and Russia has defended Libya against US accusations that Libya is manufacturing chemical weapons. Turkey now has a fundamentalist Muslim government. Turkey has signed a \$23 billion contract with Iran for a natural gas supply. Russia's political and economic alignment with southern Muslim nations is the prelude to a military mobilization against Israel.

We know from Ezekiel 38,39 and Revelation, that Islam will not control the world, but will be destroyed by God when Islamic nations and Russia attack Israel. God will use these Islamic nations to bring Israel to repentance, and bring glory to the God of the Bible. Islam's defeat will prove to Muslims that their religion is not of God, and that the true God is the God of Israel.

The present unsolved Middle East peace accord between Israel and the Arabs will culminate in the Antichrist's 7 year peace covenant with Israel. Israel's Prime Minister Mr. Netanyahu has rejected the creation of an independent Palestinian state. He will not hand back the Golan Heights to Syria. He has taken discussions on Jerusalem off the agenda. He will expand, not remove, Jewish settlements on the West bank. All these things will make peace with the Arabs difficult to achieve, and will open the door for the Antichrist as the European ruler to enter the scene as a man of peace who will provide a solution to the Arab/Israeli peace problem. Israel will then dwell safely for 3½ years under his "protection". However, before he comes to power and makes his 7 year peace covenant with Israel, Jesus Christ will have returned to the air to catch away all dead and living believers to heaven as foretold in 1 Thessalonians 4:13-18 and in 1 Cor. 15:51-53. Let us be about our Heavenly Father's business because the coming of our Lord Jesus Christ draws near.

4. The EVENTS of the INVASION.

In **Ezekiel 38:3** God says "I am against thee O Gog".

Question 1: Why would God be against Russia?

- Answer:**
- 1) Russia has for many years persecuted the Jews and supplied military equipment to the Arabs to wage war against Israel.
 - 2) The old Soviet Union has taught Atheism, has blasphemed God, has persecuted millions of Christians, and has threatened many nations with nuclear destruction.

In **Ezekiel 38:4** Gog or Russia is compared to a wild beast running out of control, whom the Lord will turn around, put hooks into his jaws (2 Kings 19:28), and bring him and his vast army to their destruction on the mountains of Israel.

Question 2: Why does this army ride horses when no armies today ride horses, but use tanks?

Answer: Several answers may be possible:

- a) Russia's economy may be so broken that their oil production cannot completely fuel a large army.
- b) The world oil supplies may have run so low that Russia may have run out of oil and may see the remaining Middle East oil as the door to world control.
- c) Horses may include and picture all kinds of modern military transport.

Ezekiel 38:5, 6. In addition to Iran, Ethiopia, Sudan, Libya, Gomer and Turkey, many other people or nations will participate in the invasion as well.

Ezekiel 38:7. “be thou a **guard**⁴⁹²⁹ unto them”. “Guard” here means a commander or ruler, one to whom reverence is due, one who is observed as a leader by the other armies.

Ezekiel 38:8. This verse describes the time of the invasion as:

- i) Many days after 587 BC. This was not fulfilled before 1996 AD.
- ii) In the **latter years** thou shalt come into the land that is brought back from the sword. Jews have been greatly persecuted and killed over the last 1900 years, but have now returned to Israel.
- iii) Israelites have been **gathered** out of many people to return to the land this century.
- iv) Israel will **dwell safely** all of them. Not in 2000 years has this happened. It will only happen by their 7 year peace covenant with Antichrist. Today Israel is armed and living in fear of its neighbours.
- iv) The land has been a **ruined waste** since 70 AD when Jerusalem fell to the Romans (Ezekiel 38:9). The invasion will be like a **storm**⁷⁷²² (to rush over, tempest, devastation, destruction) and a **cloud**⁶⁰⁵¹ (a thunder cloud covering the land) as the armies advance over land to Israel.

Ezekiel 38:10,11,12. Russia and her allies will think an evil thought, plan or plot against Israel. Russia will notice Israel’s geographical, economic and political importance. Israel’s new cities not having walls, bars or gates present an amazing prophetic detail of today as the end time, when ancient walls and gates will have been made obsolete by modern weapons of war. Israel dwelling safely and at rest is due to the Antichrist’s peace covenant guaranteeing Israel’s security. The invaders will covet regathered Israel’s silver, gold, cattle and goods, as well as Israel’s strategic position.

Ezekiel 38:13. Sheba and Dedan (Saudi Arabia), and the merchants of **Tarshish** (England, America), with all the **young lions** thereof (Canada, Australia, New Zealand, British Commonwealth countries) shall protest against this invasion, but will not intervene militarily.

Question 3: Who are these protesters?

- a) **Sheba and Dedan** (Isaiah 21:13; Jeremiah 25:23,24) are in Saudi Arabia today.
- b) **Merchants of Tarshish**⁸⁵⁴⁹. Jonah took a ship from Joppa to flee to Tarshish from the presence of the Lord (1:3). The furthest place known was Spain. This land was rich in silver (Jeremiah 10:9), iron, tin and lead (Ezekiel 27:12). These metals are found in Tartessus in Spain, which attracted the Phoenicians who founded colonies in Sardinia in Spain, where we find Phoenician monumental inscriptions in the 9th Century BC bearing the name Tarshish.

Columbus requested financial assistance of Ferdinand and Isabella of Spain to fund his expedition to the Americas in 1492. The result was that South America was colonized by Spain and Portugal, while North America was colonized by England and France.

- God’s judgments in the Tribulation will be against the ships of Tarshish. Isaiah 2:16.
- “The Day of the Lord is.....upon all the ships of Tarshish. Revelation 8:9 states that the second trumpet judgment in the Tribulation will result in one third of the ships being destroyed: “a great mountain burning with fire was cast into the sea...and the third part of the ships were destroyed”. Revelation 8:8,9.
- Early in the millennium, airplanes and the ships of Tarshish will bring Jews back to Israel: “Who are these that fly as a **cloud**...?”
- “Surely the isles shall wait for me, and the **ships of Tarshish** first, to bring thy sons from far, their silver and their gold with them, unto the name of the Lord thy God.” Isaiah 60:8,9.
- America has about 7 million Jews, and she assists America’s wealthy, converted Jews to return to the land of Israel to take up their role as the Messiah’s servants.

Hence Tarshish seems to represent a maritime power such as Spain, the United States and England.

- c) **The young Lions:** England’s national symbol is the lion. Hence the young lions may represent the nations that England colonized such as Canada, Australia, New Zealand, and other British Commonwealth countries. You would expect these nations to protest against Russia’s invasion of Israel, but to not intervene militarily due to the fear of nuclear war.

Ezekiel 38:14. Russia will know that Israel dwells **safely** under the military protection of Europe under the Antichrist. Hence, Russia's invasion of the Middle East may have a secondary purpose of **challenging Europe's power** and alliance with Israel.

Ezekiel 38:15. Russia comes out of the **north** parts, literally the "farthest extremities and recesses of the north parts" (3411). Moscow and Leningrad are some of the northern most major cities on earth.

"All of them riding upon horses, a great company, and a mighty army".

Russian military today is indeed a mighty army.

Ezekiel 38:16. The invasion of Israel will come from all sides. From the north will come **Russia; Turkey** and **Iran** from the east, **Sudan** and **Ethiopia** from the south, and **Libya** from the west. They will advance as a cloud to cover the land. This enormous army will overrun all obstacles just as a cloud sailing across the sky.

"It shall be in the **latter days**." This comforts us living today as we see these events lining up that we are now living in the latter days just before Christ's second coming.

A result of this invasion will be that the nations will be so shocked by the outcome of this invasion that they will know that God has intervened in protecting Israel. By God destroying the invaders, God will show His holiness and power to all the nations. Israel will be delivered and God will be glorified.

Ezekiel 38:17. When Gog from Russia invades Israel, God asks him the question in v.17. The words "he" and "old time" indicates that this question is asked in the future when the invasion takes place. This will be a question that many people in the world at the time will ask.

"Are you the one prophesied in Ezekiel 38,39 that would invade Israel in the latter days? Is this the fulfillment of a Bible prophecy?" Maybe God the Holy Spirit will put this question in people's minds who will know this prophecy at that time. God asks the question if Gog is the one whom the prophets (plural) of Israel have prophesied in old time about.

Question 4: What other prophets have discussed Russia's invasion?

Answer: 1) **Daniel 11:40** mentions "At the **time of the end** shall the King of the south (Ethiopia and Sudan) push at him (the Antichrist): and the King of the north (Russia) shall come against him (Antichrist) like a whirlwind, with chariots, and with horsemen, and with many ships; and he shall enter into the countries, and shall overflow (like a cloud, Ezekiel 38:16) and pass over."

Because of the Antichrist's peace covenant with Israel, a Russian attack on Israel will be seen as an attack on the Antichrist's European empire. The events that catapult the Antichrist to world rule commence with the King of the South (Ethiopia, Sudan, but not Egypt because the land of Egypt shall not escape v.42) pushing at him (the Antichrist's ally Israel). Then the king of the north (Russia) will come against him (Antichrist as protector of Israel) like a whirlwind, with chariots, and with horsemen (Ezek. 38:4,15), and with many ships (the Russian naval fleet in the Black Sea and Mediterranean Sea). v.40,41 - Russia will enter into the glorious land (Israel). Ammon (Jordan) will escape Russia's hand.

v.42 - the land of Egypt shall not escape.

v.43 - Russia will control Egypt's gold and silver treasures. The Libyans and Ethiopians shall be at his steps (in his company, allied with Russia, as stated in Ezekiel 38:5).

v.44a "But tidings out of the **east** (China) and **north** (Antichrist's armies mobilizing against him) shall trouble him:". At this point the Russian leader will hear the disturbing news that the armies of the Antichrist, coming from north of Egypt, and the eastern armies coming from China and Japan (Kings of the east, Rev 16:12) are mobilizing to challenge Russia's bold move of aggression.

v.44 - "therefore he shall go forth with great fury to destroy, and utterly to make away many (of Israel)". As a result, Russia will set out in a great rage to destroy many people of Israel.

v.45 - "He shall plant the tabernacles of his palace between the seas (Mediterranean and Dead Seas) in the glorious holy mountain (Jerusalem)." The Russian ruler Gog is described as pitching his tents between the Seas and at Jerusalem.

"yet he shall come to his end, and none shall help him."

The destruction of Russian military might will destroy the balance of power in the first half of the Tribulation. The Antichrist's European empire, will suddenly be propelled to a position of world dominance with the demise of Russia, so that people will ask: "Who is like unto the beast? who is able to make war with him?" Revelation 13:4.

- 2) **Zechariah 12:1-4** mentions “Jerusalem as a burdensome stone for all people: all (such as Russia) that burden themselves with it shall be cut in pieces....”.

5. THE DEFEAT OF GOG’S ARMY.

Ezekiel 38:18. When Russia attacks Israel in her demon-inspired plan to thwart God’s plan for Israel, God’s fury, jealousy, and fiery hot anger will be aroused.

God will bring about a series of disasters to destroy the invading armies:

- i) **38:19,20.** First, there will be a **great earthquake** in the land of Israel. This earthquake will affect fish, birds, beasts and all ground creatures.
 - All men that are on the face of the earth shall shake at my presence.
 - Mountains shall be thrown down, steep places shall fall, and every wall shall fall to the ground. This may be the great earthquake described in Revelation 6:12,14 “every mountain and island were moved out of their places.”
- ii) **38:21.** This great earthquake interrupts Gog’s invasion plans, spreading fear and confusion through the ranks of his forces, just the same effect as described in Revelation 6:15-18. In the pandemonium, communication between the four invading armies will break down. The confusion will result in the armies **fighting each other**, “every man’s sword shall be against his brother.”
- iii) **38:22.** A third judgment brought on the army will be **plague and bloodshed**. This may be caused by them using chemical weapons against each other, or it may be what God used against Sennacherib of Assyria (Isaiah 37:36). “I will plead against him with pestilence and blood.”
- iv) A fourth judgment God rains upon these armies will be an overflowing **rain, great hailstones, fire & brimstone**. The **rain** will combine with dirt and debris from the earthquake to produce massive mud slides and floods which will destroy, demobilize and sweep away Gog’s military equipment. Great **hailstones** will pelt the survivors, killing many (Joshua 10:11; Revelation 16:21). The earthquake may reactivate volcanoes to spew out burning sulfur and hot ash, (as occurred with Sodom and Gomorrah in Genesis 19:24), thus destroying the invading army.

The result is in **Ezekiel 38:23.** i) God will **magnify** and **sanctify** Himself.

ii) I will be **known** in the eyes of many nations. iii) They shall know that I am the **LORD**.

6. FOURTEEN RESULTS OF GOG’S DEFEAT. Ezekiel 39:1-29.

Ezekiel 39 amplifies chapter 38 giving more details of the invasion’s aftermath:

1. **39:1,2** - I will turn thee back and leave one-sixth of the. v.2.
2. **39:3** - I will disarm you.
3. **39:4,5** - You will fall upon the mountains of Israel, you and all your bands and people with you. v.4. You will fall upon the open field. v.5.
4. **39:4b** - I will give you to the ravenous birds of every sort, and to the beasts of the field to be devoured. v.4b.
5. **39:6** - I will send a fire on Magog (Russia), and among them that dwell carelessly in the isles.

Question 1: Who are those that **dwell carelessly in the Isles**?

Answer: The Isles refer to the farthest reaches of the known world (Ezekiel 26:15,18; 27:3,15,35). The Isles may refer to island nations such as England, North and South America and Australia. People in these countries certainly are given over to pleasure seeking, material comforts and luxuries. These people do dwell carelessly. They don’t care much about God or suffering humanity, only about themselves getting more money, holidays, entertainment and pleasure.

Question 2: What is meant by God sending a **fire on Magog** and **island dwellers**?

Answer: Perhaps as Tarshish (US, Great Britain) challenges the Russian/Muslim invasion, there would be a nuclear shoot-out, where Russia and the United States fire nuclear tipped warheads at each other in an effort to destroy the other first. This is called “MAD” meaning “mutually assured destruction”. This would leave the USA and Russia crippled, resulting in Europe and the Antichrist being in control of the Middle East and its oil resources. Deprived of oil, the Kings of the East (China and Japan) would then have no alternative but to amass a vast army to cross the Euphrates river to occupy and control the Middle East oil fields as predicted in Revelation 16:12-16. This will bring all nations to the Battle of Armageddon in order to control the remaining world’s oil supplies.

"I will gather all nations against Jerusalem to battle." Zechariah 14:2.

Note: Joel tells us that the remnants of the Russian army will retreat deep into Russia:

"I will remove far off from you the **northern army**, and will drive him into a land barren and desolate, (possibly Siberia), with his face toward the east sea (possibly the Caspian Sea), and his hinder part toward the utmost sea (possibly the Arctic Sea), and his stink shall come up...." Joel 2:20.

6. Israel's Repentance. Ezekiel 39:7.

"I will make my **holy name** known in the midst of my people Israel.

I will not let them pollute my **holy name** any more.

The heathen shall know that I am the Lord, the **Holy one** in Israel".

Through all this God will teach Israel that He is Holy & will not be profaned by their sins any more.

7. 39:9,10 - The Israelites shall **burn the weapons** for **7 years** so that they need not cut wood from the field or forests. This shows the completeness of Gog's defeat. The plunderers will be utterly plundered. Israel will burn Gog's weapons in the Tribulation period and into the Millennium.

8. 39:11-16 - The Israelites shall be burying **Gog's army** for **7 months**.

- i) The smell of dead corpses will be so bad that passengers will stop their noses. v.11.
- ii) Gog's multitude will be buried on the east side of the Dead Sea in the valley of Hamon-gog, (meaning hordes of Gog) in Jordan, on the highway from Syria to Egypt via Petra. v.11.
- iii) All the Israelites will help in burying the dead, v.13. Burial specialists will search the land for 7 months to bury corpses and to cleanse the land. v.14. Passengers (or travelers), on seeing a bone, will set up a marker sign next to it for the buriers to bury it.
- iv) The burial operation will be so vast that a town will be set up in the valley at the gravesites to accommodate those workers cleansing the land. It will be named "Hamonah", meaning "the multitude or horde", to commemorate the victory over Gog, and will be the headquarters of the burial operation. v.16.

9. 39:17-20 - An invitation is given to every bird and beast to come to God's sacrifice on the mountains of Israel to eat the flesh and drink the blood of mighty men, of princes of the earth, of all men of war, and of horses, who have come to invade Israel. This feast occurs before the soldiers are buried.

10. 39:21 - The **nations** will see **God's glory**. v.21.

"I will set my glory among the heathen." "Glory" is used 16 times in Ezekiel (1:28; 3:12,23; 8:4; 9:3; 10:4,18,19; 11:22,23; 39:21; 43:2,4,5; 44:4), and in each instance it refers to the shekinah glory cloud, just the same cloud that led Israel through the wilderness. This same shekinah glory cloud will be set among the nations of the world in the millennium for all to see. (Isaiah 66:18).

"All the heathen (nations) shall see my judgment that I have executed..."

Question: How will all nations see God's destruction of the Russian and Muslim armies?

By satellite/cable television news broadcasts.

11. 39:22 - "Israel shall know that I am the Lord their God from that day forward."

Israel will turn back to God. God's dramatic, shocking defeat of Gog will force Israel to acknowledge God's power. Many Jews will be saved through this.

12. 39:23,24 - The nations shall know that Israel went into captivity for their sins. It was not God's failure, but it was due to Israel's uncleanness and transgressions that God had to judge them.

13. 39:25-28 - Early in the millennium, God will regather the whole house of Israel out of their enemies lands (v.27) into the land of Israel. None will be left among the nations (v.28). It will be compulsory for all Jews to return to the land of Israel under Jesus Christ. (Isaiah 60:8,9; 66:20).

14. 39:29 - Verses 25-29 look ahead to early in the millennium when God will restore Israel to the land and when God will pour out His Holy Spirit on the house of Israel when He returns at Armageddon to rescue them from the Antichrist. (Zechariah 12:10).

Conclusion: Let us be ready for Christ's return to catch us away. Let us watch current events as signs pointing to the nearness of the catching away of believers. Let us win many souls to Christ and teach God's word all over the world before Christ returns. The Muslim religion is wrong in its stand against Israel, Jesus Christ and the Gospel. God will show His wrath against the Muslim nations when He destroys their armies as they invade Israel. This is a great proof of Islam being wrong, because Islam believes Ezekiel to be a true prophet of God. It is Ezekiel that prophesies Russia's and Islam's destruction. Muslims must leave Islam today and receive Jesus Christ as their Saviour and God. 207

53. THE MILLENNIUM or RULE OF CHRIST ON EARTH: WHAT IT WILL BE LIKE

Bible Reading: Isaiah 11:6-9; 65:19-25; 66:15-24; Micah 4:1-6. Zech. 14:1-9,12,16-21; Rev. 20:1-10.

Aim: To see what Christ's rule on earth will be like. To be encouraged by God's plans for this earth.

To be motivated to serve Christ while we have time.

Introduction:

The Millennium is Christ's 1000 year rule on earth, in person, after His return. The key events are:

1. The seven year Tribulation ends with Antichrist's armies attacking Israel.
2. Christ returns to defeat Antichrist's armies.
3. Jews are converted on seeing Jesus Christ's wounds.
4. Jesus Christ enters Jerusalem to proclaim His Kingdom.
5. Satan and his demons are bound in the pit.
6. Sheep and goat nations are judged. Matthew 25:31-46.
7. Nature and world conditions are restored.
8. Peace prevails on earth. (Isaiah 2:4).
9. At the end of 1000 years, Satan is released from the pit, and deceives the nations to attack Jerusalem. They do so but are destroyed.
10. The earth is then destroyed by fire.
11. Unsaved people are resurrected, judged and cast into the lake of fire with Satan and his demons.
12. God makes a new heaven, a new earth, and a new Jerusalem.

I. We will study the Millennium as regards to:

1. JESUS CHRIST

Christ's feet shall stand on the Mount of Olives. After winning Armageddon, He will then sit on the Throne of David. Zechariah 14:1-9,12-21. "Yea, all kings shall fall down before Him." Ps 72:11.

Three things will characterise His kingdom: a) Universal peace. Isaiah 2:4;
b) Universal righteousness. Jeremiah 23:5,6;
c) Speedy judgment on sin. Zech. 14:17-19; Psalm 2:8,9.

2. CHURCH will reign with Christ over the Gentile world.

"The Lord my God shall come, and all the saints with thee." Zechariah 14:5.

"Do ye not know that the saints shall judge the world?" I Corinthians 6:2.

"If we suffer, we shall also reign with Him." 11Timothy 2:12.

"Thou hast been faithful in a very little, have thou authority over ten cities." Luke 19:17.

"I saw thrones, and they sat on them, and judgment was given to them." Revelation 20:4,6.

"To him that overcometh will I grant to sit with me in my throne." Revelation 3:21.

3. ISRAEL. Notice 6 things:

- a) Israel is to be regathered - initially in unbelief. Ezekiel 37:1-6; 39:22; 36:24; Isaiah 11:11. The 1948 founding of Israel is the forerunner to Israel's final regathering.
- b) Israel will repent and be converted. Zechariah 12:8,9,10; 13:6,8,9; "So all Israel shall be saved." Romans 11:15,25,26.
- c) The Temple and its worship will be restored. Isaiah 66:20-24; "I will set my sanctuary in the midst of them for evermore." Ezekiel 37:26,28. The Old Testament sacrifices were typical and pointed to Christ.
- d) The Millennial sacrifices will be memorial and point back to Christ.
- e) Israel will be divided east/west among the 12 tribes. Ezekiel 47,48.
- f) Israel will evangelize the Gentiles who are born in the millennium. Isaiah 61:6; 66:19; Zech. 8:21-23; "Israel shall blossom and bud, and fill the face of the earth with fruit." Isaiah 27:6.

4. NATIONS will be judged for their sin. Isaiah 24:1,5,6,19-23; 26:9,21.

The sheep nations will inherit the kingdom. Nations will come weekly to worship at Jerusalem.

5. SATAN and his demons will be bound in the abyss for 1000 years. Rev. 20:1-3,7-10; Matth 8:29.

6. NATURE will be regenerated, and the social order will be set right.

- a) The nature of ferocious animals will be changed. Isaiah 11:6-9; Romans 8:19-22.
- b) Great topographical changes will occur. Zechariah 14:4,5,8.

- c) Rain and soil fertility will be restored. Joel 2:22-27; Isaiah 35:1; Amos 9:13-15.
- d) Crop failure will be for those refusing to worship at Jerusalem. Zechariah 14:17-19.
- e) Human life will be prolonged, as before the flood. Isaiah 65:20-24.
- f) Sickness will decrease.

7. CONDITIONS IN GENERAL

- a) Great joy and happiness. Isaiah 35:10.
- b) Physical healing will come to many. Isaiah 35:5,6.
- c) Great material prosperity and security. Micah 4:4,5; Isaiah 65:21.
- d) Earth will be full of the knowledge of the Lord. Isaiah 11:9.
- e) No more wars. Isaiah 2:4; Micah 4:3.
- f) Man's headship in creation will be restored.

II. The Error of Amillennialism was born out of Roman Catholic theology that:

- 1) Augustine taught that the Kingdom is the church which is reigning on earth now.
- 2) Augustine taught that the millennium is to be interpreted spiritually as fulfilled in the church.
- 3) Augustine taught that the binding of Satan occurred during Christ's earthly ministry(Luke 10:18)
- 4) Augustine taught that the first resurrection is the new birth of a believer. (John 5:25).
- 5) Augustine believed in a literal 1000 year millennium between Christ's first and second comings. Since Christ did not return around 1000AD, modern Amillennialists think that 1000 years is a symbolic reference to the time between Christ's first and second comings.

III. Titles of the Millennium

- 1) The world to come “unto the angels hath he not put in subjection the world to come” Hebrews 2:5.
- 2) The Kingdom of heaven “theirs is the kingdom of heaven” Matt 5:10; “Thy kingdom come” 6:10.
- 3) The Kingdom of God (Luke 19:11 “they thought that the kingdom of God should immediately appear.”).
- 4) The Kingdom of Christ (Revelation 11:15 “the kingdoms of this world are become the kingdoms of our Lord and of his Christ”).
- 5) The Regeneration (Matthew 19:28 “in the regeneration when the Son of Man shall sit in the throne of his glory”). “Regeneration” occurs here and in Titus 3:5 concerning the new birth. It means “re-creation.” The Millennium will be to the earth what salvation is to the sinner.
- 6) Times of Refreshing (Acts 3:19,20 “When the times of refreshing shall come from the presence of the Lord; And he shall send Jesus Christ.”)
- 7) Times of Restitution “Whom the heaven must receive until the times of restitution of all things” Acts 3:21.
- 8) Dispensation of the Fullness of Times (Eph. 1:10 “he might gather together in one all things in Christ”).

IV. Purpose of the Millennium

- 1) To Reward believers. “For the Son of Man shall come in the glory of His Father with his angels and then he shall reward every man according to his works.” (Matthew 16:27).
- 2) To Fulfil the Lord's Prayer. “Thy Kingdom come.” (Matthew 6:9-13; Luke 11:1-4).
- 3) To Deliver Creation from the Bondage of Corruption. (Romans 8:19-22).
- 4) To Fulfil three Old Testament Covenants:
 - a) Abrahamic Covenant promising that Israel would become a mighty nation (Genesis 12:1-3) and that Israel would own the land forever (Genesis 17:7,8).
 - b) Davidic Covenant that from David would come an everlasting throne (2 Samuel 7:12,13) an everlasting Kingdom (2 Chronicles 13:5), and an everlasting King (Luke 1:31-33).
 - c) New Covenant that God would forgive Israel's iniquity (Jeremiah 31:31-34), give Israelites new hearts and use Israel to teach the Gentiles (Isaiah 42:6,7; Hebrew 8:8-13).
- 5) To prove that despite man's environment or heredity, unregenerate man will fail as seen by his rebelling against Christ's perfect rule at the end of the 1000 years. (Revelation 20:7-10).
- 6) To Glorify believers. “If we suffer, we shall also reign with him.” (2 Timothy 2:12). “For I reckon that the sufferings of this present time are not worthy to be compared with the glory which shall be revealed in us.” (Romans 8:18).

V. Millennial Temple Sacrifices will be reinstated.

“The Levites...shall slay the burnt-offerings and the sacrifice for the people (v.11).

They shall eat the meat-offering, and the sin-offering, and the trespass-offering.” (Ezekiel 44:11,29).

“This is the place where the priests shall boil the trespass-offering and the sin-offering, where they shall bake the meat-offering.” (Ezekiel 46:20).

“All they that sacrifice shall come and take of them and seeth therein.” (Zechariah 14:21).

Q: Why the need for animal blood sacrifices in the Millennium? Wouldn’t this mean a retrogression in God’s program? Doesn’t Hebrews 9 and 10 say that blood sacrifices ended with Christ’s death?

“Now where remission of these is, there is no more offering for sin.” (Hebrews 10:18).

Answer: These animal blood sacrifices will be reinstated as:

- a) A reminder of the need of the new birth based on Christ’s blood sacrifice on the cross for our sins.
- b) An object lesson of the costliness of salvation.
- c) An example of the awfulness of sin.
- d) An illustration of the holiness of God.

During the millennium, millions of children will be born and raised in an age that will know no sin, sorrow, suffering, war, sickness, fear, Satan, hatred, jail or drugs. In spite of their perfect environment, these children will still need the new birth. Animal blood sacrifices will illustrate an object lesson teaching them the above four truths to remind them of their need to be saved.

VI. Early Christians who believed in a literal 1000 year Millennium.

Amillennialists such as Philip Mauro attack Premillennialism by denying any historical evidence of Premillennialism before Schofield:

“if it had been possible to produce from the copious writings of the “Church Fathers” any proof that the doctrine concerning the Kingdom of God taught by the Schofield Bible and by certain Bible schools of our day was ever held by Christians, real or nominal, in times past, it would have been produced long ago.” (The Gospel of the Kingdom, Mauro, p.104).

Answer: Well Mr. Mauro, here is your Premillennial proof. It’s a pity you never bothered to check.

- 1) **Justin Martyr** (110-165AD): “But I and others, who are right-minded Christians on all points are assured that there will be a resurrection of the dead, and a thousand years in Jerusalem, which will then be built, adorned and enlarged as Ezekiel, Isaiah and others declare.” (Vol. 1, p.239).
- 2) **Papias** (70-155AD): “There will be a millennium after the resurrection from the dead, when the personal reign of Christ will be established on this earth”. (Vol. 1, p.154).
- 3) **Tertullian** (145-220AD): “We do confess that a Kingdom is promised to us upon the earth...it will be after the resurrection for a thousand years in the divinely-built city of Jerusalem....After its thousand years are over,...there will ensue the destruction of the world...” (Vol. 3, p.342,343).
- 4) **Commodianus** (240AD):
“For then after a thousand years they are delivered over to Gehenna.” (Vol. 4, p.211).
“according to God’s command, living again in the world for a thousand years...they who make God of no account when the thousandth year is finished shall perish by fire.” (Vol. 4, p.218).
- 5) **Lactantius** (260-330AD): “the dead will rise again,...when again restored to life, they may reign with God a thousand years.” (Vol.7, p.218).
“that righteous King and Conqueror will institute a great judgment on earth respecting the living and the dead,...and will build the holy city, and this Kingdom of the righteous shall be for a thousand years. But when the thousand years shall be fulfilled, and the prince of the demons loosed, the nations will rebel against the righteous.” (Vol.7, p.254).
- 6) **Victorinus** (died 304AD): “I do not think the reign of a thousand years is eternal,...they cease to reign when the thousand years are finished.” (Vol.7, p.359).

VII. What led to a decline in Premillennial beliefs?

- 1) When Constantine (272-337AD) united church and state, the church received wealth and worldly honours. To hope for a coming King and an earthly Kingdom would have been extremely displeasing to Constantine. This worldly patronage of the church diminished the hope of a soon coming Christ.
- 2) The Rise of the Alexandrian School. Origen openly attacked Premillennialism (Chiliasm) and introduced the allegorical method of interpretation where he interpreted millennium passages spiritually and not literally. Dionysius of Alexandria, Origen's disciple continued his teachings.
- 3) Augustine (354-430AD), bishop of Hippo taught that "The first resurrection is the rising of dead souls into spiritual life beginning with Christ's ministry, from which the millennium dates; the devil is bound and expelled from the hearts of Christ's disciples; the reign of the saints is their personal victory over sin and the devil; the beast is this wicked world and his image is hypocrisy; the millennium will end in 650AD, ending history's 6000 years, and introducing the rise of Antichrist." This nonsense was rejected by people such as the Waldensians, the Paulicians, William Tyndale (1480-1536), Nicholas Ridley, Hugh Latimer (1555 died), the Huguenots in France, Anabaptists, Moravians, John Wesley and many others who adopted a literal interpretation of prophetic scriptures.

VIII. Doctrinal Errors of Amillennialism:

- 1) Amillennial spiritualising of scripture tacitly denies the verbal, plenary, inspiration of scripture.
- 2) Amillennials ignore the exact meaning of words such as "a thousand years".
If God inspired the words of scripture, then we must accept their common meaning.
- 3) Amillennials ignore the near and remote context of scriptures which demand a premillennial interpretation. Every scripture must be interpreted in conformity with all other parts of scripture.
- 4) Amillennialists have not yet produced an outlined system of Amillennialism that they all agree on.
- 5) Amillennials accept a literal interpretation for most of the Bible, but in eschatology they resort to spiritualization. They hence use 2 different and contradictory principles of interpretation.
- 6) Amillennials allegorical or spiritualising methods of interpretation did not spring from piety, but from Origen (185-254AD), who borrowed it from the heathen theories of Plato.
- 7) It is sometimes correct to say that Israel typifies the church as premillennials rightly do, but it is wrong for amillennials to teach that Israel is the church. Figurative language does not negate literal interpretation.
- 8) Fulfilled prophecy forms the pattern in interpreting unfulfilled prophecy. Since fulfilled prophecy has come true literally, so will unfulfilled prophecy come true literally.
- 9) Amillennials using allegorical interpretation of prophecy disagree with and discredit each other.
- 10) Amillennial, allegorical interpretation favours modernism. It is almost impossible to find a Premillennial Modernist, but most modernist protestantism is amillennial. Hence, amillennial allegorism is a step towards modernism.
- 11) Amillennial allegorism leaves large portions of Scripture unexplained. It cannot explain many scriptures, such as Zechariah 14, Ezekiel 37-39. All prophetic scriptures are easily explained by the premillennial literal interpretation approach.
- 12) Amillennialism fails to understand Daniel's 70 Week Prophecy (Daniel 9:24-27). If these 490 years were fulfilled literally, so will the future 1000 year millennium be fulfilled literally.

IX. Bible Verses Teaching the 1000 year Rule of Christ on Earth.

"He laid hold on the dragon, that old serpent, which is the Devil & Satan, & bound him 1000 years (2)
"that he should deceive the nations no more, till the thousand years should be fulfilled." Rev 20:3.
"they lived and reigned with Christ a thousand years." Rev 20:4.

The rest of the dead lived not again until the 1000 years were finished. This is the first resurrection. 20:5
"They shall be priests of God and of Christ, and shall reign with him a thousand years." Rev 20:6.
"When the thousand years are expired, Satan shall be loosed out of his prison," Rev 20:7.
"After two days will he revive us: in the third day he will raise us up, and we shall live in his sight."
Hosea 6:2. See 2 Peter 3:8.

54. JESUS CHRIST WILL PERSONALLY APPEAR ON EARTH

Many groups deny that Jesus Christ will literally appear on earth in person to rule for 1000 years. These groups include Jehovah's Witnesses, Seventh Day Adventists, and some Amillennials. The devil does not like the idea of Christ returning to rule on earth in person because it means that Satan will lose control of the earth and be imprisoned in the pit for 1000 years.

What Bible passages clearly state that Jesus Christ will literally return to land on earth in person to rule?

1. JESUS CHRIST'S BODY WILL BE ON EARTH.

If parts of Christ's body are on earth, then Christ must literally be on earth, as seen in these passages:

1. His feet will be on earth.

"His feet shall stand in that day upon the Mount of Olives, which is before Jerusalem on the east." Zechariah 14:4.

2. His hands will be on earth.

"One shall say unto Him, what are these wounds in thine hands? Then He shall answer, those with which I was wounded in the house of my friends." Zechariah 13:6.

3. His garments will be on earth.

"Who is this that cometh from Edom, with dyed garments from Bozrah? This that is glorious in His apparel, travelling in the greatness of His strength?....I have trodden the winepress alone;..... their blood shall be sprinkled upon my garments." Isaiah 63:1-3.

The blood of antichrist's soldiers will be sprinkled on Christ's garments when He returns to rescue Israel.

4. He shall sit and rule on His throne.

"He (the BRANCH) shall bear the glory, and shall sit and rule upon His throne." Zech. 6:13.

5. His voice shall be heard at Jerusalem.

"The Lord shall utter His voice from Jerusalem; and the heavens and the earth shall shake: but the Lord will be the strength of the children of Israel." Joel 3:16.

"He shall speak peace unto the heathen: and His dominion shall be from sea to sea, and from the river unto the ends of the earth." Zechariah 9:10.

6. Jerusalem shall be called "The Lord is there".

"The name of the city from that day shall be The Lord is there." Ezekiel 48:35.

7. He will tread or walk on the earth.

"For, behold, the Lord cometh forth out of his place, and will come down, and tread upon the high places of the earth." Micah 1:3.

8. He will stand at the latter day upon the earth.

"For I know that my redeemer (Christ) liveth, and that He shall stand at the latter day upon the earth." Job 19:25.

2. JESUS CHRIST WILL BE SEEN IN PERSON ON EARTH.

If people will see Christ after His return with their physical eyes then He has to be physically present on earth. Titus 2:13 states clearly "the glorious appearing of the great God."

1. "They (the house of David and inhabitants of Jerusalem) shall look upon me whom they have pierced....." Zechariah 12:10.

2. "Behold he cometh with clouds, and every eye shall see him....." Revelation 1:7.

3. "They (all the tribes of earth) shall see the Son of man coming in the clouds of heaven with power and great glory." Matthew 24:27-31, v.30.

4. "When the Lord shall build up Zion (Israel), he shall appear in his glory." Psalm 102:16.

5. "The Lord shall be seen over them. The Lord of hosts shall defend them (Israel)." Zechariah 9:14-15.

3. JESUS CHRIST IS TO BE PERSONALLY IN THE MIDST OF ISRAEL.

If Christ dwells at Jerusalem, is in Jerusalem, and is in the midst of Israel, then He is personally present on earth after His second coming.

1. "The Lord shall reign over them **IN** Mount Zion from henceforth, even for ever." Micah 4:7
2. "I will cleanse their (Israel's) blood.....for the Lord **dwelleteth IN** Zion." Joel 3:21.
3. "Ye shall know that I am **IN** the **midst** of Israel." Joel 2:27.
4. "So shall ye know that I am the Lord your God **dwelling IN** Zion, my holy mountain: then shall Jerusalem be holy....." Joel 3:17.
5. "The Lord of hosts shall reign **IN** Mount Zion, and **IN** Jerusalem, and before his ancients gloriously." Isaiah 24:23.
6. "The King of Israel, even the Lord, is **IN** the **midst** of thee: thou shalt not see evil anymore. The Lord thy God **IN** the **midst** of thee is mighty." Zephaniah 3:15,17.
7. "Many nations shall be joined to the Lord in that day, and shall be my people: and I will **dwell IN** the **midst** of thee....." Zechariah 2:11.
8. "Thus saith the Lord; I am returned unto Zion, and will **dwell IN** the **midst** of Jerusalem:...." Zechariah 8:3.
9. "Yea, many people and strong nations shall come to seek the Lord of hosts **IN** Jerusalem." Zechariah 8:22.
10. "Yet have I set my King **upon** my holy **hill** of Zion." Psalm 2:6.

4. JESUS CHRIST DOES CERTAIN ACTIONS WHICH COULD ONLY BE DONE IF HE WAS PHYSICALLY PRESENT ON EARTH.

1. **All the saints** shall come with Christ back to earth.

"The Lord my God shall come, and all the saints with thee." Zechariah 14:5.

2. **Christ shall fight** against antichrist's armies.

"Then shall the Lord go forth and fight against these nations, as when he fought in the day of battle." Zechariah 14:3.

3. **All nations will worship Christ at Jerusalem.**

"Every one that is left of all the nations which came against Jerusalem, shall go up from year to year to **worship** the King, the Lord of hosts, and to keep the feast of Tabernacles." Zechariah 14:16.

"Yea, all kings shall **fall down** before him: all nations shall **serve** him." Psalm 72:11.

4. **Christ will judge the peoples of earth.**

"The Lord cometh to judge the earth: with righteousness shall he judge the world, and the people with equity." Psalm 98:9.

"When the Son of man shall come in His glory, and all the holy angels with Him, then shall He **sit** upon the throne of His glory:

And before Him shall be gathered **all nations**:and he shall **separate** them one from another" Matthew 25:31-32.

"He shall **judge** among the nations, and shall **rebuke** many people...." Isaiah 2:4.

5. **Christ will teach the nations His ways.**

"Many people shall say, come ye, and let us go up to the mountain of the Lord, to the house of the God of Jacob; and he will **teach** us of his ways." Isaiah 2:3.

Conclusion: "Your God will come with vengeance." Isaiah 35:4.

"This same Jesus which is taken up from you into heaven, shall so come **in like manner** as ye have seen him go into heaven." Acts 1:9-11.

55. Daniel's “70 Week” Prophecy.

Bible Reading: Daniel 9:24-27.

Aim: To understand the Seventy Week Prophecy as a proof of Divine inspiration of the Bible, and as the key to unlocking all Bible prophecies of Christ's Second Coming.

Introduction:

God's program would be finished in seventy heptads, or seventy sevens of years. The KJV calls heptads "weeks". History interprets this as 70×7 prophetic years = 490 years.

"Seventy weeks" are determined upon thy people (Israel) and upon thy holy city (Jerusalem)". (v.24).

Today, people think in terms of tens (e.g. decades). Daniel's people thought in terms of sevens (heptads).

For example:

- a) Seven days in one week.
- b) Every seventh year was a sabbath rest year (Leviticus 25:1-7).
- c) Seven 'sevens' = $7 \times 7 = 49$ years brought Israel to the year of Jubilee (Leviticus 25:8-12).
- d) 70×7 years is a span of 490 years.

After the 490 years have finished for Israel and Jerusalem, God will have completed six things.

(1) WHAT DO EACH OF THESE SIX THINGS MEAN?

1. To finish the transgression, of Israel after 490 years. Israel's sin of disobedience will be brought to an end at Christ's second coming, when she repents and receives Christ as her Saviour and Messiah. Christ's work on the cross has made possible His future 'finishing' of Israel's transgression.

2. God will make an end of sins.

Christ would be punished for Israel's and the world's sins on the cross. At Christ's second coming He will remove Israel's sins (Ezekiel 37:23; Romans 11:20).

3. God will make reconciliation for iniquity.

Reconciliation = atone = to cover, to expiate. God's final atonement for Israel's sin (iniquity) is when she repents at Christ's second coming, as atonement provision has been made at the cross.

4. God, being satisfied with Christ's death, will bring in everlasting righteousness.

God will establish a 1000 year kingdom characterised by righteousness (Isaiah 60:21; Jeremiah 23:5-6).

5. God will seal up the vision and prophecy.

All God's promises for Israel will come to pass in the millennial kingdom. Until they are fulfilled, prophecies are unsealed. When fulfilled, they are sealed (Hebrew (2856) - closed up, make an end).

6. God will anoint the most Holy.

This refers to the consecration of the millennial Temple that Christ builds (Ezekiel 43:1-5, Zechariah 6:12,13), not by literal oil, but by the presence of the Shekinah glory cloud. The Tabernacle, altar, and all the holy vessels were anointed with oil (Exodus 29:36; 30:26-28).

The anointing of the most holy is not a reference to Christ's anointing. Rather the 'most holy' in the Hebrew are technical words that are always translated in the Old Testament by the phrase 'the Holy of Holies.'

(2) IMPORTANCE OF THE SEVENTY WEEK PROPHECY

The Daniel 9:24-27 prophecy is important because:

1. It proves the truth of the Bible. Because the first 69 weeks finished exactly as predicted to the very day (173,880 days after 10pm March 4, 444 BC to 3pm Sunday March 29, 33 AD), this is an unanswerable argument for the Divine inspiration of the Bible. Only the all-knowing God could predict the very day that Messiah would ride into Jerusalem to present Himself as the Prince of Israel.

2. It shatters the critics' arguments who reject the early date of the book of Daniel of 540 BC and place it about 150 BC, seeking to deny the clear predictions of Daniel 11 that were fulfilled from 330 BC to 167 BC. The critics are troubled by these predictive prophecies in Daniel 11 because this proves the Divine authorship of the Bible.

Question: If Daniel was written in 150 BC as the critics claim, how did it correctly prophecy the date of Christ's entry to Jerusalem as 29 March, 33 AD?

3. It disproves the allegorical Amillennial theory of interpreting prophecy, and proves the Premillennial position of Christ returning to earth for literal Israel at the end of a literal seven year tribulation, described in Revelation 6-19. If the first 69 weeks are literally 173,880 days, so the future 7 year tribulation (1 week) will be literally 2520 days (360 x 7).

4. It is the time key to understand all New Testament prophecy. Revelation 11:2-3; 12:6,14; and 13:5 describe a future 3 1/2 year period (1260 days, or 42 weeks) being the last half of the seven year tribulation, which equates to the last half of the 70th week (Daniel 9:27).

(3) BACKGROUND

While Daniel was captive in Babylon from 605-537 BC, as he was praying for Israel and confessing their sin, the angel Gabriel came to give him the 70 week prophecy. Daniel knew that the 70 year captivity predicted by Jeremiah in Jeremiah 25:11,12 was nearing completion, so he asked about Israel's imminent return to their land. Gabriel's message was that Israel's ultimate return to the land would not be after the 70 year Babylonian captivity, but after the 70 week period stated in Daniel 9:24-27.

(4) MAIN FEATURES OF THE 70 WEEK PROPHECY

1. It deals with Daniel's people (Israel) and city (Jerusalem). 'Seventy weeks are determined upon thy people, and upon thy holy city...' Daniel 9:24.
2. Two different princes are mentioned:
 - a) Messiah the Prince, and
 - b) The prince that shall come (v.26).
3. The time period is 70 weeks, made up of 7 weeks + 62 weeks + 1 week (v.25,27).
4. It starts with 'the going forth of the commandment to restore and to build Jerusalem.' (v.25).
5. The end of the 69 weeks will be marked by the appearance of Messiah as the Prince of Israel. (v.25).
6. After the 69 weeks, two predictions are that:
 - a) Messiah the Prince will be 'cut off', and
 - b) Jerusalem will be destroyed by the people of another prince coming in the future. (v.26).
7. The 70th week begins with a covenant being made between the 'prince that shall come' and the Jewish nation for a period of 1 week (v.27).
8. In the midst of this 70th week, the coming prince will (1) break this treaty, (2) cause the Jewish sacrifices to cease, and (3) will greatly persecute the Jews to the end of the 70th week (v.27).
9. Great blessings for Israel will come when the 70 weeks are fully completed (v.24).

(5) MEANING OF THE SEVENTY WEEKS.

'Week' in Hebrew means 'a period of seven' or 'heptad'. It is used 20 times in the Old Testament as follows:

1. 3 times it means 'a unit of seven' days (Ezekiel 45:21, Daniel 10:2,3).
2. 6 times it means 'normal 7-day week' (Genesis 29:27,28; Leviticus 12:5; Deuteronomy 16:9; Jeremiah 5:24).
3. 5 times it means the 'Feast of Weeks' (Exodus 34:22; Numbers 28:26; Deut. 16:10,16; II Chronicles 8:13).
4. 6 times it means a 'unit of seven' without reference to days (Daniel 9:24-27). In Daniel 9:24-27, '1 week' refers to a 'unit of 7 years'. Hence Daniel is discussing 70 'units of seven years' or 490 years.

We know this because:

1. In the context, Daniel had been thinking in years, and in multiples of 70 years. 'The number of years...seventy years in the desolation of Jerusalem.' Daniel 9:1,2.
2. Each year of Babylonian captivity represented one 7-year cycle of past history where Israel had not observed the seventh year rest. Thus the context is years, not days. The 70 year captivity was due to Israel violating 70 sabbatical years over a 490 year period in the past. Now Daniel predicted 70 units of seven years decreed for another 490 years into Israel's future.
3. It is impossible to fit the events discussed in 9:24-27 into 490 days, or 490 weeks (regardless of any starting point), only 490 years. Jerusalem could not be rebuilt & destroyed in 490 days (1 yr 3 months) or 490 weeks (9yr).
4. In 9:27, the covenant that will be confirmed for one 'unit of seven' will be broken in the middle. If 'weeks' means 'units of 7 years', this means that the covenant would be broken at the 3 1/2 year point. This fits perfectly well with the 'time, times and half a time' in Daniel 7:25; 12:7; Rev. 12:14, the 1260 days (Rev. 12:6; 11:3) and the 42 months (Rev. 11:2).
5. The Hebrew word for 'weeks' means years in the Mishnah (Baba Metzia ix. 10; Sanhedrin v1).

Note: According to the false 'Day-Year' theory used by SDA's and JW's, they would have us believe that the first 69 1/2 weeks equal 486 1/2 years (490 - 3 1/2 years). But the last 1/2 week they claim equals 1260 years. This is contradictory and inconsistent. The last 1/2 week must also be literally 1260 days (Rev. 12:6), if the first 69 weeks were 173,880 days, as proven by history.

Question: If these 70 'weeks' consist of 490 years, what is the length of the year?

Answer: Our year is 365.24219879 days. The prophetic year of scripture is 360 days (12 months of 30 days each), as seen from:

- i) **History:** The Flood lasted from the 17th day of the 2nd month (Genesis 7:11) to the 17th day of the 7th month (Genesis 8:4). This is 5 months. Genesis 7:24 and 8:3 gives this same period as being 150 days. This gives 30 days in each month, or 360 days in each year.

ii) Prophecy:

Daniel 9:27 describes the Roman prince persecuting the Jews for 3 1/2 years.

Daniel 7:25 describes this Roman prince persecuting the Jews for 'a time, and times, and half a time' (3.5 years).

Revelation 13:4-7 describes this same ruler persecuting the Jews for 42 months (i.e. 3 1/2 years).

Revelation 12:13,14 describes this persecution as lasting 'a time, and times, and half a time' (i.e. 3 1/2 years).

Revelation 12:6 describes this persecution of the Jews as lasting 1260 days (i.e. 3 1/2 years).

Hence we have 3 1/2 years stated as being 1260 days or 42 months.

Hence the length of the prophetic year in the 70 week prophecy is 360 days (1260 days/ 3.5 years = 360 days/yr).

(6) WHEN DID THE 70 WEEKS BEGIN?

"Know therefore and understand, that from the going forth of the commandment to restore and to build Jerusalem unto the Messiah the Prince, shall be seven weeks, and sixty-two weeks: the street shall be built again, and the wall, even in troublous times." 9:25.

Daniel shows the starting point of the 70 week prophecy to be the issuing of the command to restore and build Jerusalem, where the street and the wall will be built in troublous times.

Notice 3 things about Jerusalem's rebuilding:

1) "Restore and build" means to restore Jerusalem completely to its former state.

2) "Street and wall" mean a complete restoration.

3) Rebuilding the city would be in troublesome times. Can we locate this commandment and fix its date accurately?

(7) WHICH COMMAND IS REFERRED TO?

The 70 "sevens" would begin with the going forth of the commandment to restore and build Jerusalem. This decree was the fourth of four decrees issued by Persian rulers to the Jews. The decree we want concerns rebuilding the city of Jerusalem, not the house of God or the Temple.

1. Cyrus' decree on October 29, 539 BC was to rebuild the temple, not the city.

'In the first year of Cyrus king of Persia...he made a proclamation...saying...' "All the kingdoms of the earth hath the Lord God of heaven given me; and he hath charged me to build him an house in Jerusalem, which is in Judah. Who is there among you of all his people? The Lord his God be with him, and let him go up.'" II Chron. 36:22,23; Ezra 1:1-4, 5:13,17.

This decree concerned the return of Jewish captives, and rebuilding the temple. It said nothing about a complete restoration of the city.

Keil (p.365), Leupold (p.417-26) and E.J. Young falsely conclude that this decree marks the start of the 70 weeks. E.J. Young in 'The Prophecy of Daniel: A Commentary', p202, states:

"This edict [of Cyrus], furthermore, was issued in fulfilment of the prophecy of Jeremiah, and it speaks expressly of going to Jerusalem and building there the temple- the first and most important step in rebuilding the city. In this connection also one should consider the prophecies of Isaiah 44:28 in which Cyrus is described as 'saying to Jerusalem, Thou shalt be built; and to the temple, Thy foundation shall be laid'. Likewise Isaiah 45:13 declares of Cyrus, 'he shall build my city, and he shall let go my captives.' Lastly, it should be noted that the book of Ezra pictures Jerusalem as an existing city (c.f. Ezra 4:12, 9:9)".

It cannot be denied that this was the year in which the effects of the going forth of a word began to appear in history.

Answer: This may seem convincing, but there are **3 problems with this view:**

a) Cyrus' decree in Ezra 1:1-4 refers to the rebuilding of the temple and not to the city. We agree that there were inhabitants, and a city was built in Cyrus' time as predicted in Isaiah 44:28 and 45:13. It was not a city that could defend itself as described in Daniel 9:25. Young quotes two passages to support his view:

Ezra 4:12,13,16 is a letter to the king from Ezra's enemies. They emphasised rebuilding the city, but Ezra was rebuilding the temple in reality.

Ezra 9:9 'to set up the house of our God, and to repair the desolations thereof, and to give us a wall in Judah and in Jerusalem.'

This was written in **457 BC**, and refers to Artaxerxes reign (464-423 BC), and not to Cyrus' reign.

Also, the Hebrew word for 'wall' is a fence used to surround a vineyard, and not a military defensive wall.

The only other mention of walls in Ezra are the temple walls (Ezra 5:3,8,9), not city walls.

Hence, neither of the passages is in the context of Cyrus' decree, nor do they refer to building a defensive wall.

b) We must differentiate between starting to rebuild a city (Cyrus' decree) and restoring a city to its former state (Artaxerxes' decree in Nehemiah). For example, Japan rebuilt itself after WWII, but that is quite different from restoring it to its pre-WWII military state.

c) If we wrongly accept the 70 weeks as beginning with Cyrus' decree (539 BC), then Messiah the Prince should have arrived in 63 BC (i.e. after 69 weeks = $69 \times 7 \times \{360/365.25\}$ of our years, which is 476 years later. 539 BC plus 476 yrs gives 63 BC.

2. Darius I decree in 512 BC

This decree confirmed Cyrus' decree to rebuild the house of God. Tatnai, Governor of Judah, questioned the Jews' right to rebuild the temple (Ezra 5:3-17). Darius searched out Cyrus' decree, and then issued a decree himself in 512 BC confirming Cyrus' original decree (Ezra 6:1-12).

"Then Darius the king made a decree... "Let the work of this house of God alone; let the governor of the Jews and the elders of the Jews build this house of God."'" (Ezra 6:1,7).

"This house was finished in the sixth year of Darius." (6:15).

Hence Darius' decree is not the starting date of the 70 weeks because:

- a) It specifically refers to the temple, and not to the city.
- b) It was not a new decree, but only confirmed Cyrus' decree.

3. Artaxerxes Longimanus' decree to Ezra in 457 BC

This decree concerns finances for animal sacrifices at the temple.

"I (Artaxerxes King of Persia) make a decree, that all they of the people of Israel... which are minded of their own free will to go up to Jerusalem, go with thee... carry the silver and gold... let it be diligently done for the house of the God of heaven, to beautify the house of the Lord at Jerusalem." Ezra 7:11, 13, 15, 23 and 27.

Each of these first 3 decrees concerns building the Temple/ House of God at Jerusalem, not the city. Since an unwalled city was no threat to a military power, a temple could be built with no threat to the Persian government. This decree encouraged more Jews to return to Jerusalem, and it helped the temple worship. Some claim that this decree (457 BC) was the starting point of the 70 week prophecy, and that the end of the 69 weeks was 27 AD (marking the start of Christ's ministry). They claim the middle of the 70th week to be Christ's crucifixion in 30 AD. They claim 33 AD to be the end of the 70th week marked by Stephen's death, and Paul's conversion. (Their calculation is 457 BC + 490 of our years = 33 AD). This is wrong because they have ignored the 360 day prophetic year, and failed to deduct 1 year in going from 1 BC to 1 AD.

This theory is wrong because:

- i) This decree says nothing about rebuilding the city, but only discusses temple worship.
- ii) To have the 69 weeks end at the start of Christ's ministry in 27 AD is wrong, because:
 - The cutting off of the Messiah (Daniel 9:26) cannot describe the descent of the Holy Spirit on Christ at the start of His ministry, and
 - Christ began His ministry in 29 AD, not 27 AD (see H.W. Hoehner, p.29-44).
- iii) What does 'confirming the covenant' mean in Daniel 9:27? If it refers to Christ, what covenant did Christ confirm at the start of His ministry, and how did Christ break the covenant at His crucifixion? It does not fit the facts.
- iv) To say that the middle of the 70th week refers to Christ's crucifixion in 30 AD is wrong because:
 - The sacrifices did not cease at Christ's crucifixion, and
 - 33 AD is the correct date of Christ's crucifixion, not 30 AD.
- v) To say that the 70 weeks ended in 33 AD with Stephen's death and Paul's conversion is pure guesswork. Daniel 9:27 and Acts 8,9 never even imply this.

Hence Artaxerxes' decree to Ezra in 457 BC cannot be the start of the 70 week prophecy.

4. Artaxerxes Longimanus' decree to Nehemiah at 10pm March 4, 444 BC, in Nehemiah 2:1-8.

At this date, Artaxerxes granted the Jews permission to rebuild Jerusalem's city walls.

King: "For what dost thou make request?" Nehemiah 2:4.

Nehemiah: "That thou would send me unto Judah, unto the city of my fathers' sepulchres, that I may build it." (Nehemiah 2:5).

"A letter unto Asaph....for the wall of the city....And the king granted me, according to the good hand of my God upon me." (Nehemiah 2:8).

This decree is the one prophesied by Daniel (9:25) that starts the 70 week prophecy, for these reasons:

- i) This clearly refers to the restoration of the city (2:3,5) and of the city gates and walls (2:3,8).
- ii) King Artaxerxes wrote a letter to Asaph to supply materials to rebuild the walls (2:3,8).
- iii) No later decrees were given by Persian kings to rebuild Jerusalem.
- iv) The book of Nehemiah and Ezra 4:7-23 teach that the walls were restored in distressing circumstances, as predicted by Daniel (Daniel 9:25).
- v) The walls were broken down (Nehemiah 2:13), and the gates were burned (Nehemiah 2:17) when Nehemiah visited Jerusalem. No earlier decree had restored the city walls and gates.

(8) WHAT DATE WAS THE DECREE?

Nehemiah 1:1 states that Nehemiah heard of Jerusalem's broken walls and burned gates (1:3) in the month of **Chislev** (November/December) in Artaxerxes' twentieth year.

Then later in **Artaxerxes' 20th year** in the month **Nisan** (March/April), Nehemiah was granted permission to restore the city and to build its walls (2:1) (Why was March after November in the same year?)

Because Nehemiah used a **year starting at Tishri**, which started at **September**.

Question: What year did Artaxerxes' rule begin?

Answer: Artaxerxes came to the throne when his father died on **December 17, 465 BC** ('The Fifth Century Jewish Calendar at Elephantine', S.H. Horn and L.H. Weed, Journal of Near Eastern studies, XIII (Jan. 1954), p 4, 20, 9).

Artaxerxes' first year of reign would be **Nisan 464 to Nisan 463**, since the Persian year started at Nisan (March).

Therefore, Artaxerxes' 20th year would be 445 BC. The report to Nehemiah (1:1) occurred in Chislev (Nov./Dec.) 445 BC. The decree of Artaxerxes (2:1) occurred in **Nisan** (March/April) **444 BC**. See the following chart.

Nehemiah 2:1 does not specify which day of Nisan the decree was given.

The crescent of the new moon would have appeared at about 10pm on Nisan 1, 444 BC (March 4), late enough to be missed. On March 5, 444 BC the new moon crescent would have been visible early to all. Since no day is given in Nisan in the Bible, Jewish custom would understand the day to be the **first day of a visible new moon** crescent, March 5, 444 BC, which was the date of the decree. **To be exact, the starting time of the decree was 10pm 4 March 444BC.**

(9) WHEN DID THE 69 WEEKS END?

The 7 weeks and the 62 weeks are **continuous**, making a **total of 69 weeks** between **Artaxerxes' decree** to restore Jerusalem, and the **coming of Messiah the Prince**. (See 'Chronological Aspects of the Life of Christ' by H.W. Hoehner, p129-131).

"After 62 weeks shall Messiah be cut off, but not for himself..." Daniel 9:26.

In Christ's first coming, He would not receive His kingdom promised in the Old Testament.

Therefore the 69 weeks (7+62) would end with **Christ's entry to Jerusalem on 3pm Sunday March 29, 33 AD**, then Christ would be killed on **Friday 3 April 33AD**.

Christ died on Friday, **Nisan 14 in 33 AD** (Friday April 3, 33 AD in a Julian Calendar), according to H.W. Hoehner, in his excellent book 'Chronological Aspects of the Life of Christ'.

A prophetic year is 360 days in length, because:

- i) Ancient countries of **India, Persia, Babylon, Assyria, Egypt, Maya, Israel, Arabia** and **China**, all had 12 months of **30 days** each, thus giving a **360 day year**.
- ii) The **70th week** of 7 years (Daniel 9:27) will be broken in the middle, making **1260 days**, or **42 months**, or **3 1/2 years** (Revelation 11:2;3; 12:6; 13:5). This gives a 30 day month, or a 360 day year.
- iii) The **5 months of Flood waters** (Genesis 7:11 and 8:4) are equated to **150 days** (Genesis 7:24 and 8:3). This gives a 30 day month or **360 day year**.

Having found that 1) The "**weeks**" are groups of 7 years,

- 2) The length of the prophetic year is 360 days, and
- 3) The 70 weeks began on **10pm March 4, 444 BC**, we may calculate the date of Christ's triumphal entry.
- 4) Number of days in 69 weeks = $69 \times 7\text{ys} \times 360\text{ days} = 173,880\text{ days}$.
- 5) Number of years from 10pm March 4, 444 BC to March 29, 33 AD = $444 + 33 - 1 = 476$ years.
(Note: subtract 1 year, because only 1 year expired from 1 BC to 1 AD).
Number of days from **March 4** (Artaxerxes' decree) to **March 29** (Christ entering Jerusalem on donkey) = **25 days**.

Question: How many days from March 4, 444 BC (Artaxerxes' decree) to March 29, 33 AD (the day Christ entered Jerusalem on a donkey to proclaim Himself king)?

Answer: Number of days in 476 years = 476 years $\times 365.24219879\text{ days/yr} = 173,855.28662404\text{ days} = 173,855$ days, 6 hours, 52 minutes, 44 seconds.

Number of days from March 4 to March 29 = 25 days.

Therefore, the total number of days = $173,855 + 25 = 173,880\text{ days}$.

This proves that the 173,880 days predicted in the 69 weeks between Artaxerxes' decree and the Coming of Messiah the Prince, equals the same number of days that actually elapsed from March 4, 444 BC to March 29, 33 AD, the day of Christ's triumphal entry into Jerusalem, known as Palm Sunday.

The 483 Years in the Jewish and Gregorian Calendars.

Jewish Calendar (360 days per year)	Gregorian Calendar (365 days a year)
$(7 \times 7) + (62 \times 7) \text{ years} = 483 \text{ years}$	$444 \text{ B.C. to A.D. } 33 = 476 \text{ years*}$
$\begin{array}{r} 483 \text{ years} \\ \times 360 \text{ days} \\ \hline 173,880 \text{ days} \end{array}$	$\begin{array}{r} 476 \text{ years} \\ \times 365 \text{ days} \\ \hline 173,740 \text{ days} \\ + 116 \text{ days in leap years**} \\ + 24 \text{ days (March 4- 29)} \\ \hline 173,880 \text{ days} \end{array}$

* Since only one year expired between 1 B.C. and A.D. 1, the total is 476 years, not 477 years.

** A total of 476 years divided by four (a leap year every four years) gives 119 additional days. But three days must be subtracted from 119 because centennial years are not leap years, though every 400th year is a leap year.

(10) NEW TESTAMENT VERIFICATION OF THIS DAY

March 29, 33 AD is therefore definitely fixed as the end of the 69 weeks, and the date of Christ's triumphal entry to Jerusalem on a 'foal of an ass' to offer Himself as Messiah the Prince and King of Israel.

Christ knew that this was the day predicted in Daniel 9:25, from His words in Luke 19:28-44, especially verse 42 "this thy day" and verse 44 "because thou knewest not the time of thy visitation."

"And when he was come near, he beheld the city, and wept over it, saying, 'If thou had known, even thou, at least in this thy day, the things which belong unto thy peace! But now they are hid from thine eyes... they shall not leave in thee one stone upon another; because thou knewest not the time of thy visitation.'" Luke 19:41,42,44.

Notice these details taking place on Sunday, March 29, 33 AD:

1. Jesus, knowing that this was the last day of the 69th week, sends his disciples to find a "colt the foal of an ass" upon which He would ride as King into Jerusalem. This fulfilled the prophecy in Zechariah 9:9 given in 487BC:
"Rejoice greatly, O daughter of Zion; shout, O daughter of Jerusalem: behold thy King cometh unto thee: he is just and having salvation; lowly and riding upon an ass, and upon a colt the foal of an ass."
2. The whole multitude of the disciples, understanding the meaning, shouted "Blessed be the King that cometh in the name of the LORD." (Psalm 118:22-26).
3. Jesus now commends the disciples' shouts, and rebukes the Pharisees' protest, saying:
"If these should hold their peace, the stones would immediately cry out." v.40.
4. Because Jesus foreknew that the Pharisees and Jerusalem would reject Him as King and Messiah, Jesus wept over the city, saying:
"If thou had known, even thou, at least in this thy day, the things which belong unto thy peace!" Luke 19:42.

Question: What day was Jesus referring to?

Answer: Israel's day on which their Messiah the Prince would present himself as King to Israel, exactly 173,880 days after 10pm March 4, 444 BC.

Question: What were "the things which belong unto thy peace"?

Answer: The same 6 things mentioned in Daniel 9:24. But now for a time these things are to be hid from Israel's eyes, their enemies the Romans will conquer them, destroying their city Jerusalem and Temple. This happened in 70 AD. Why? 'Because thou knewest not the time of thy visitation.' Luke 19:44.

The exact fulfilment of this prophecy proves the accuracy of Daniel, the inspiration of the Bible, and the truth of Jesus Christ as Saviour & Messiah. Only God can predict to the very day 'things that are not yet done.' Isa 46:10. So the 173,880 days finished the very day that Christ entered Jerusalem on a colt to offer Himself as Messiah the Prince to Israel, which was Sunday, Nisan 9 (March 29), 33 AD. Only 5 days later on Friday, Nisan 14 (April 3), 33 AD, Jesus was cut off, or crucified.

March 4, What day and year was 173,880 days after March 4, 444 B.C.?

444 BC

BC 444	443	442	441	440	430	425	19 years
425		415			405	400	25 years
400		390			380	375	25 years
375		365			355	350	25 years
350		340			330	325	25 years
325		315			305	300	25 years
300		290			280	275	25 years
275		265			255	250	25 years
250		240			230	225	25 years
225		215			205	200	25 years
200		190			180	175	25 years
175		165			155	150	25 years
150		140			130	125	25 years
125		115			105	100	25 years
100		90			80	75	25 years
75		65			55	50	25 years
50		40			30	25	25 years
25		15			5 4 3 2 1	1 AD	25 years
1 A.D.		11 A.D.			21 A.D.	26 A.D	25 years
26	27	28	29	30	31	32	7 years
469	470	471	472	473	474	475	476

Messiah came March 29, 33AD

476 years

- Artaxerxes' command to restore and build Jerusalem March 4, 444 B.C.
- Coming of Messiah the Prince after 69 weeks = $69 \times 7 \times 360$ days = 173,880 days
- Number of Gregorian ("our") years = $173,880$ days or **476.06766 our years**
365.2422 days/yr
- **476 years after March 4, 444 B.C. = 33 A.D** according to chart above
- Number of days from **March 4** to **Messiah the Prince's coming** = **0.06766 of a year x 365.2422 days/year** = 24.7 days.
- Therefore Messiah came on **10pm 4 March + 24.7 days = 3pm Sunday 29 March, 33AD**

(11) WHY THE GAP BETWEEN THE 69TH AND 70TH WEEK?

March 4, 444 BC

Nisan 1 of Artaxerxes' 20th Year
Nehemiah 2:1-8

March 29, 33 AD

Triumphal Entry on Nisan 9, 33 AD
Luke 19:28-40

69 WEEKS

$$69 \times 7 \times 360 = 173,880 \text{ days}$$

CHURCH AGE*

70th WEEK

$$\frac{1}{2} \text{ Week} \quad \frac{1}{2} \text{ Week}$$

March 4, 444 BC + 173,880 days = March 29, 33 AD

Verification

$$444 \text{ BC to } 33 \text{ AD} = 476 \text{ years}$$

Rationale for 360-Day Years:

1/2 week Daniel 9:27

Time, times and 1/2 time Dan. 7:25, 12:7.

Rev. 12:14.

1,260 days Rev. 12:6, 11:3.

42 months Rev. 11:2, 13:5.

Thus 42 months = 1,260 days = time, times and 1/2 a time
= 1/2 week = 3.5 years.

Therefore, 1 month = 30 days, 1 Year = 360 days.

* Messiah cut off *after* 69 weeks April 3, 33 AD

a) Some people hold to the Continuous view, that the 69th week continues immediately onto the 70th week without any gap or break. Obviously, if this view is correct, the 70th week is past, having ended early in the book of Acts. They believe that Christ appeared as Messiah the Prince at John's Baptism, and that Christ died in the middle of the 70th week, after 3 1/2 years of ministry.

JW's, SDAs, Christadelphians etc. change the 1260 days of the second half of the 70th week into 1260 years.

This view is clearly false because the first 69 weeks amounted to 483 years, yet how can 1 week be 1260 years?

b) The Gap view includes a great parenthesis of time after the 69th week. This gap is the church age.

Then later, after the rapture of the church, the 70th week commences. Hence the 70th week of 7 years is still future.

Amillennialists ask 'What right do we have to break the 70th week off the 69th week?'

Amillennialists teach that:

a) Christ's First Coming ministry was in the 70th week,

b) There was no interval between the 69th and 70th week,

c) The 6 actions predicted in Daniel 9:24 are being fulfilled today in the church.

This amillennial view is false because it ignores the facts that:

a) v.26 says that Christ is cut off after the '7 and 62 sevens', not in the 70th 'seven'.

b) Christ's earthly ministry was 3 1/2 years in length, not 7 years.

c) God's 6 actions in Daniel 9:24 pertain to Daniel's people (Israel) and His 'Holy City' (Jerusalem), not the church.

Consider these reasons for a GAP between the 69th and 70th week:

1. To view the 6 actions in Daniel 9:24 as being fulfilled at Christ's first coming is impossible. Was everlasting righteousness brought in then? Not at all.

These only refer to Israel, as the context states, and none of these have happened to Israel as yet.

Paul sees Israel's conversion as in the future, as seen by these statements in Romans 11:25-27.

a) Blindness in part is happened to Israel, until the fullness of the Gentiles be come in. Romans 11:25,

b) The Deliverer shall turn away ungodliness from Jacob v26,

c) This is my covenant unto them, when I shall take away their sins. v27.

The 'most holy' to be anointed is always the 'Holy of Holies' in Hebrew, never does it refer to Christ.

2. The Messiah was 'cut off' or crucified AFTER the 69th week, and not during the 70th week as the passage would have stated had it been the case. See v.27 where the sacrifices are to be stopped 'in the midst of the week'.

3. An unseen time gap is common in Old Testament prophecy, such as:

a) **Isaiah 9:6** 'Unto us a child is born... and the government shall be upon his shoulder..'

Between these 2 events are at least 2000 years of time.

b) **Zechariah 9:9,10** 'Thy King cometh upon a colt, he shall speak peace unto the heathen, his dominion shall be from sea to sea.'

Between these 2 predictions are at least 2000 years of time.

c) **Isaiah 61:1,2** is an example approved by Christ: 'To proclaim the acceptable year of the Lord (first coming) and the day of vengeance of our God (Second coming)'.

Jesus in Luke 4:16-21 read this in a Nazareth synagogue, stopping at the comma after "acceptable year of the Lord", stating that "This day is this scripture fulfilled in your ears". Why did Jesus stop in the middle of a sentence? Because the next part, "the day of vengeance of our God" has not yet been fulfilled after 1970 years.

Therefore Jesus laid down the principle of the "Gap interpretation".

4. Time gaps are quite acceptable to the Oriental mind, which are little concerned with a continuous chronology.

Orientals are more interested in the next important event, not in the time which might intervene. The Bible is an Oriental book, humanly speaking. Old Testament prophets often saw events predicted as mountain tops, without knowing the ground between them. We Anglo-Saxons have a passion for a continuous chronology that the Orientals do not possess.

5. The person who confirms the covenant in Daniel 9:27 cannot refer to Christ because:

a) The nearest antecedent is 'the prince that shall come' v.26.

b) At no time in Christ's earthly ministry did He confirm an already existing covenant.

c) If Christ did confirm a covenant at His first coming, when did He break it? **Would Christ break a covenant that He has made?** Therefore the covenant-confirming is not Christ, but the 'prince that shall come' (Antichrist).

6. **Christ's death did not cause the animal sacrifices and oblation to cease immediately**, as v.27 demands.

The Jews continued to sacrifice animals until Jerusalem's destruction in 70 AD, which was 37 years later, well after the Amillennials 3.5 years expired.

7. The person in Daniel 9:27 correlates very well with the wicked person in 7:25, and the Antichrist in Rev. 12,13. The Antichrist has not yet appeared and been judged as described in Daniel 9:27 and Revelation 19.

8. The **events of Daniel 9:27b** refer to the last half of the 70th week. These fit well into the last 3 1/2 years of the Tribulation described in Revelation 6-19, which is yet future.

9. The **abomination of desolation** has **not yet happened**. In Matthew 24:15, Jesus said that it would occur **after** His earthly ministry. It would start the great tribulation (the last 3 1/2 years), which would be followed immediately by Christ's second coming in glory. Christ did not return in 70 AD. The book of Revelation (written in 96AD) speaks of Jerusalem's destruction as yet future (Rev.11:1,2 and 16:19), and not as something fulfilled in the past in 70AD.

10. A time gap is demanded by the **historical fulfilment** of Messiah being cut off and Jerusalem being destroyed in v.26, which take place **after** the 69th week and **before** the 70th week in v.27. This was 37 years after Christ's death in 33 AD. By the Amillennials' theory, the 70 weeks should have finished 3 1/2 years later, by 37 AD. The historical fulfilment of Jerusalem's destruction in 70 AD **demands a gap of at least 37 years**.

11. If the 70 weeks are continuous, as Amillennials believe, then the 70th week must have ended by 7 years after Christ's crucifixion, or sometime early in the book of Acts.

Why does the history of the book of **Acts contain nothing that corresponds with Daniel 9:27?**

Where in Acts are the Jewish transgressions finished, or the end made of the Jews' sins? Nowhere! Instead, Israel's sins increase to Acts 28 where Paul turns to the Gentiles.

12. A time gap after the 69th week is the **most natural reading** of the passage. It also fits well with all other Bible passages on prophecy. Christ's future second coming is in the 70th week.

(12) FOUR DANGERS THAT RECOGNISING THIS GAP PROTECTS US FROM.

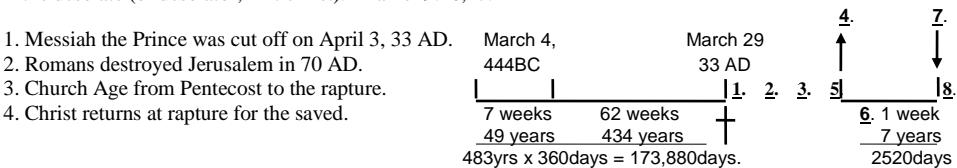
1. The efforts to connect the 69th week with the 70th week has led many scholars to confusion, **despair** and **frustration** in their attempts to find a **historical fulfilment of Daniel 9:27**. Their great error was their failure to see the great time interval between the 69th and 70th weeks.
2. This **gap principle** of Bible interpretation explains the **whole of our present church age**. It is passed over by the prophets with comparative silence.
3. By understanding that the 70th week is future, we will be saved from the **Amillennial error that God is finished with Israel**. "70 weeks are determined upon **thy people**" (9:24), said the angel to Daniel.
If the last week is yet future, there is still a place for national Israel in God's plan.
4. This unknown time gap before the 70th week makes it utterly impossible to set a date for Christ's second coming. Every date setting scheme for Christ's return requires a continuous prophetic chronology covering the present age. Without this, date-setters are helpless. Hence no man knows which day Christ will return.

(13) WHAT THIS PROPHECY TEACHES US OF THIS PRESENT AGE.

- i) "The end thereof shall be with a **flood**." (9:26). This flood will be a tsunami flood caused by the greatest earthquake ever, described in Rev 16:18-20.
- ii) "Unto the end of this church age, **war** and desolations are determined" is a literal translation of Daniel 9:26b. True, the last 2000 years have been characterised by **continuous wars all over earth**.
- iii) God is in control over the events of this sinful age.

(14) TWO PRINCES: MESSIAH the JEWISH PRINCE and ANTICHRIST the ROMAN PRINCE. 9:26,27

- a) **Christ:** "From the going forth of the commandment to restore and to build Jerusalem unto **Messiah the Prince** shall be 7 weeks and 62 weeks." (v.26).
- b) **Antichrist:** "After 62 weeks shall Messiah be cut off, but not for himself: and the **people of the prince that shall come** shall destroy the city and the sanctuary;
And **he** shall confirm the covenant with many for one week: and in the midst of the week **he** shall cause the sacrifice and the oblation to cease, and for the overspreading of abominations **he** shall make it desolate, even until the consummation (end of 7 year tribulation), and that determined (Antichrist's punishment) shall be poured upon the desolate (or desolator, Antichrist)." Daniel 9:26,27.



5. The prince that shall come (antichrist) confirms a 7 year covenant with Israel.
6. Antichrist breaks this covenant after 3 1/2 years or 1260 days, by causing Jewish sacrifices to cease. He then persecutes Israel.
7. Christ returns in person at the end of 70th week to destroy the European Antichrist and to rescue and save Israel.
8. Christ sets up His 1000 year Kingdom of peace on earth. This present church age is the interval between the 69th and 70th week. This was predicted by Christ in Matthew 16:18 "I will build my church." In this gap, Israel was set aside temporarily, which Christ prophesied in Matthew 21:43,

"The Kingdom of God shall be taken from you, and given to a nation bringing forth the fruits thereof."

Note: 2 different princes are "**Messiah the Prince**" and "**the prince that shall come**." They cannot both be Christ because it is 'the **people** of the **prince that shall come**' who **destroy Jerusalem** after Christ's crucifixion in 33 AD. Jerusalem was destroyed by **Roman** people, **not by Jewish people**. Hence the 'prince that shall come' cannot be the Jewish Messiah, but must be a **future leader of the Roman Empire**.

This future Roman prince is:

1. The little horn- Daniel 7:8. (Daniel 7:20.)
2. That horn that had eyes, and a mouth that spake very great things, whose look was more stout than his fellows-
3. The king of fierce countenance- Daniel 8:23.
4. The wilful king- Daniel 11:36.
5. The man of sin- II Thessalonians 2:3.
6. The beast out of the sea- Revelation 13:1.
7. The antichrist- I John 2:18.

Question: In Dan. 9:27 who does the '**he**' refer back to? ("He shall confirm the covenant with many for one week").

Answer: "He" refers back to the "**prince that shall come**" because:

1. This is the antecedent.
2. "He" will make a covenant with the Jews for 7 years. There is absolutely nothing recorded in Christ's earthly ministry that remotely resembles a 7 year covenant. Produce evidence from history to show where it began and when it ended. Such evidence cannot be found.
3. The theory that "Christ made this covenant when He started His earthly ministry, and that by His death He caused the Jewish sacrifices to cease", breaks down because:
 - a) There is no reference in the Gospels to such a covenant.
 - b) The death of Christ did not stop Jewish sacrifices. They continued until Jerusalem's destruction in 70 AD.
 - c) According to this theory, Christ died "in the midst of the week", the sacrifices should have ceased then immediately. But they did not.
4. To insist that Messiah made the 7 year covenant, puts the 70th week in the past (from 30-37 AD) immediately following the 69th week. This is wrong because Christ in Matthew 24:15 states that the **70th week is still future**.

5. The maker of this 7 year covenant cannot be Christ, because **His covenants** with Jews and Christians are **everlasting** (Psalm 89:30-37), not limited to 7 years.

Therefore the Roman prince, or antichrist, makes the 7 year covenant with the Jews. Christ foretold this in John 5:43. "If another (antichrist) shall come in his own name, him ye will receive" (as your Messiah) John 5:43.

Question: What does it mean "Messiah shall be cut off; but not for himself"?

Answer:i) "Cut off" means executing the death penalty on a criminal. This is a prediction of Christ's crucifixion.

- ii) 'But not for himself' means that He would at this time have nothing for Himself, since Israel rejected Christ, the kingdom that He offered could not be instituted at that time. Hence Christ did not receive the royal glory as King on David's throne over Israel. This prophecy predicted:
- Christ's offer of Himself to Israel as her Messiah,
- Israel as a nation rejecting Christ as her Messiah, and
- Christ's crucifixion.

9:26b. Four events that will happen in the gap period of the church age are mentioned:

- 1) **Messiah** would be cut off. This happened on April 3, 33 AD.
- 2) The **people** of the prince that shall come shall destroy the city & the sanctuary (Temple). This happened in 70AD.
- 3) The end of the gap period will see a unification of Europe as we have the EU of today, the antichrist's empire.
- 4) **Wars and desolations** are determined to happen all through the gap period of the church age.

The generation that rejected the Messiah would be judged by the **people** of the ruler to come, destroying the city (Jerusalem) which contained the sanctuary (Temple). The ruler to come is that final head of the Roman Empire, the little horn of Daniel 7:8.

It is important to understand that the **PEOPLE** of the ruler, **NOT the RULER HIMSELF**, will destroy Jerusalem.

This proves 2 points:

- 1) The future Antichrist prince will come from a last days **Roman empire**, since his people are the Romans who destroyed Jerusalem in 70 AD, and
- 2) The future prince is not Messiah the prince, because Christ's people are the Jews. **Antichrist's people** are **Romans**.

When Israel's leaders rejected Christ by attributing His power to Beelzebul, the prince of demons (Matt. 12:24), Christ said that this sin if persisted in would find no forgiveness (Matthew 12:31-32). Jesus also warned that the Gentiles would destroy Jerusalem (Luke 21:24), that Jerusalem would be desolate (Matthew 23:38), and that its destruction would be so complete that not one stone would be left on another (Matt. 24:2). This destruction came in 70 AD at the hands of Titus who killed, according to Josephus, about 1 million Jews and took about 100,000 Jews captive as slaves. Israel's sufferings would continue until the end of the 70 weeks at Christ's second coming.

(15) EVENTS OF THE 70TH WEEK

1. Rapture of the church occurs. The 70th week lasts from Antichrist's covenant to Christ's glorious return.

The 70th week is future because Christ places the abomination of desolation of the 70th week just before His glorious return (Matthew 24:15-30).

The true church must first be caught up to heaven, then the 70th week can start. In II Thessalonians 2:1-9, esp. v.6-8, “And now ye know what withholdeth (Holy Spirit in the church) that he (antichrist) might be revealed in his time... only he (Holy Spirit in believers) who now letteth (restrains) will let (restrain), until he (Holy Spirit in the church) be taken out of the way. And then shall that Wicked (antichrist) be revealed...”.

Since the restraining power is the true church indwelt by the Holy Spirit, it is clear that the coming Roman prince cannot be revealed as long as the true church remains on earth. Once the church is caught away to heaven, the Roman prince is revealed when **he confirms his 7 year covenant** with the Jewish people. This starts the 70th week. The 70th week will end at Christ’s glorious return because:

- i) The Messiah brings to Israel the blessings of Daniel 9:24.
- ii) Christ, on returning, destroys the Antichrist’s great power.

2. The 70th week provides the exact time framework for the events of Revelation 6-19.

The only time information given in Revelation 6-19 is:

- i) 42 months (11:2; 13:3),
- ii) 1260 days (11:3; 12:6),
- iii) A time, and times, and half a time (12:14).

Each of these specify 3.5 prophetic years of 360 days each. These passages have three schools of interpretation:

- i) Some regard all prophetic numbers as symbolic, and therefore meaningless for chronology.
- ii) Some hold the unbiblical “year-day” theory. These regard the 69 weeks as 173,880 literal days, but then change their interpretation so that the last 1260 days become 1260 years. Let us be consistent. If the first 173,880 days are days, so the last 1260 days must also be days.
- iii) Some, correctly, have understood that the 3 1/2 years are exactly one-half of 7 years. The 70th week is divided into 2 halves.

This is the key to the interpretation of the books of Revelation and Daniel.

The **key passage** is **Revelation 11:2,3** thus:

“But the court which is without (outside) the temple leave out, and measure it not; for it is given unto the Gentiles: and the holy city (Jerusalem) shall they tread under foot 42 months.

And I will give power unto my two witnesses, and they shall prophesy 1260 days, clothed in sackcloth.”

Notice 2 important things here:

- i) Since the 42 months of verse 2 is a 3 1/2 year period during which **Gentile powers tread under foot Jerusalem**, this must refer to the LAST HALF of the 70th week, because it is in the middle of the 70th week that the Roman prince **stops the Jewish sacrifices** and becomes their persecutor (Daniel 9:27).
- ii) It is also clear that the 1260 days of verse 3 is a 3 1/2 year period that must refer to the FIRST HALF of the 70th week, because the 2 witnesses testify during this period, and they cannot be killed until the Roman prince reaches the height of his power in the middle of the week, when it is “given to him to make war with the saints, and to overcome them.” (Revelation 11:7 and 13:7).

Therefore we have the entire 70th week events as:

1. 70th week begins in Revelation 6:1,2 with the revelation of the Roman prince. (Day 1).
2. Rising power of the Roman prince. } (Days
3. Testimony of the 2 witnesses. } 1-1260).
4. Killing of the 2 witnesses, and } (Day
5. 7th angel sounding (Rev. 11:1-15). } 1260).
6. Roman prince’s absolute world control. } (Days
7. Roman prince terribly persecutes Israel. } 1260- 2520).
8. 70th week ends in Rev. 19:11-21 with the revelation of the Lord Jesus Christ. (Day 2520).

3. The 70th week begins with the Roman prince making a firm covenant with Israel. Daniel 9:27.

One thing involved in this covenant will be the re-establishing of the Jewish sacrifices in a rebuilt temple in Jerusalem.. The present Middle-east peace talks may lead to an agreement for Europe to guarantee Israel’s protection and a Temple in return for peace.

4. In the middle of the 70th week, the Roman prince will reverse his friendly attitude to the Jews and “cause the sacrifice and oblation to cease.” Daniel 9:27.

Today's world involves "power politics", where force has taken the place of morality, where treaties are made and often broken. The Roman prince will only honor a "god of forces." Daniel 11:38.

Why will the Roman prince break his treaty with Israel?

- i) Being the devil's man, he will hate Israel.
- ii) After using Israel's wealth and influence to reach the top of world power, having no further need for them, he will persecute them. As the **Jew** will pay dearly for her treaty with the Roman beast, so will the **great harlot** (apostate church) pay dearly for her ride (Rev. 17:16) in seeking to advance her cause along with Antichrist.
- iii) From II Thessalonians 2:4 and Revelation 13:8-15, he will take his seat in the temple of God in Jerusalem, and demand to be worshipped as God. To the Jew, this will be the "abomination of desolation" (Matthew 24:13), and many will refuse to worship him. This refusal will be the antichrist's pretext for breaking the treaty and causing the Jewish temple sacrifices to cease. His treaty with the "many" (9:27) means that some Jews will reject the treaty. The 2 witnesses will denounce this treaty throughout their ministry.

5. The breaking of the covenant will start great desolations for the Jewish people.

This trouble lasts from the middle to the end of the 70th week (3 1/2 years). This is exactly the time specified in:

- i) Daniel 7:25, during which the antichrist "shall wear out the saints of the most high" for a "time, times and dividing of a time".
- ii) Rev. 13:5-7, when the antichrist "shall make war with the saints....and overcome them", for 42 months.
- iii) Rev. 11:2, during which the Gentiles shall tread down Jerusalem for 42 months.
- iv) Rev. 12:6,14, where the woman (Israel) will be protected by God for 1260 days (v.6) and "a time, times and half a time." (v.14).

Hence all these prophecies fit together perfectly: the same persecutor, the same nation being persecuted, and exactly the same length of time of persecution. This refutes converting the 1260 days into 1260 years. This is the "time of Jacob's trouble." (Jeremiah 30:7).

6. The end of this 7 years will conclude the 70 week prophecy and usher in the blessings of Daniel 9:24.

Remember, all these blessings refer to the Jewish people and the city of Jerusalem. This is the context.

- 1.2. It is Jewish transgression and sin that is brought to an end (1,2). No more after the 70th week will Israel rebel against God and her Messiah.
3. To "make reconciliation for iniquity" does not refer to Christ's death, but refers to God reconciling Israel unto Himself at Christ's glorious appearing on the basis of His sacrifice on Calvary.
4. To "seal up the vision and prophecy", means not that all prophecies will be fulfilled, but that the fountain of prophecy will be sealed because, with Christ personally on earth, His word will go forth directly, and no longer through prophets.
5. To "anoint the most holy" refers to consecrating the millennial temple as a place of worship and prayer for all nations at the start of the Millennium, by the personal presence of Christ there.

Conclusion:

The covenant in Daniel 9:27 could not have been made or confirmed by Christ at His first coming, as Amillennials teach, because:

- a) Christ's ministry did not last 7 years,
- b) Christ's death did not stop the Jewish sacrifices and offerings,
- c) Christ did not set up the abomination that causes desolation (Matthew 24:15).

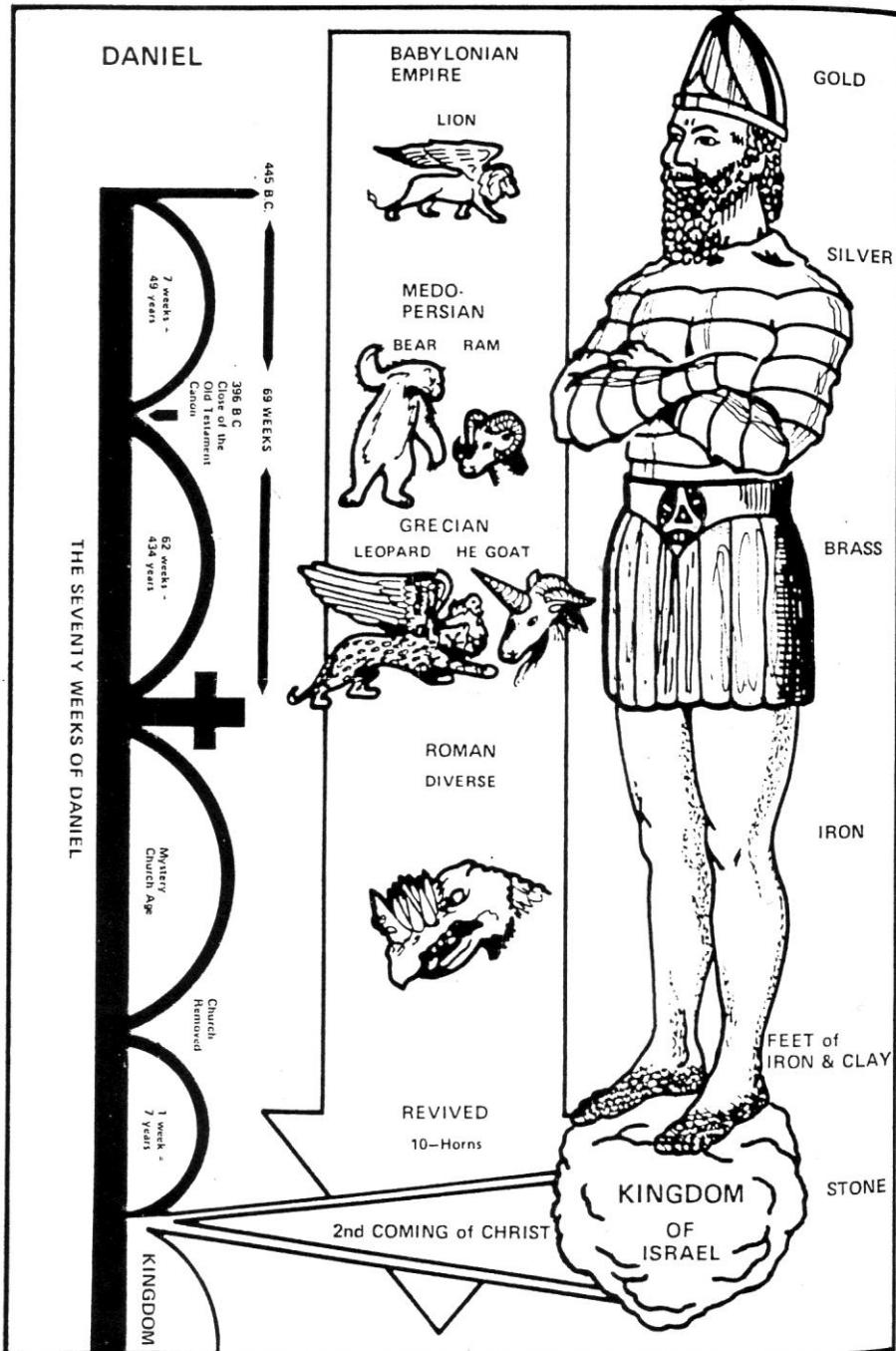
Amillennials suggest that Christ confirmed (in the sense of fulfilling) the Abrahamic covenant, but the Gospels nowhere indicate Christ did that at His first coming.

Since the events in the 69 weeks were fulfilled literally in 173,880 days (v.24-26), the 70th week must likewise be fulfilled literally in 2520 days. A correct understanding of this 70 week prophecy will refute the false ideas of:

- a) Amillennials, who spiritualize prophecy, reject any future for national Israel, and reject a literal future 7 year tribulation and future 1000 year rule of Christ on earth.
- b) Seventh Day Adventists, who accept a literal 173,880 days for the first 69 weeks, but falsely think that 2520 years make up the last 1 week.
- c) Jehovah's Witnesses, who mistakenly use the 70th week prophecy to predict the date of Christ's second coming. The 70th week prophecy, correctly understood, forms the basis of the pre-millennial, literal interpretation of prophecy based on mathematically accurately fulfilled prophecies.

Let us strongly uphold the pre-millennial faith in a time of apostasy and unbelief in churches today.

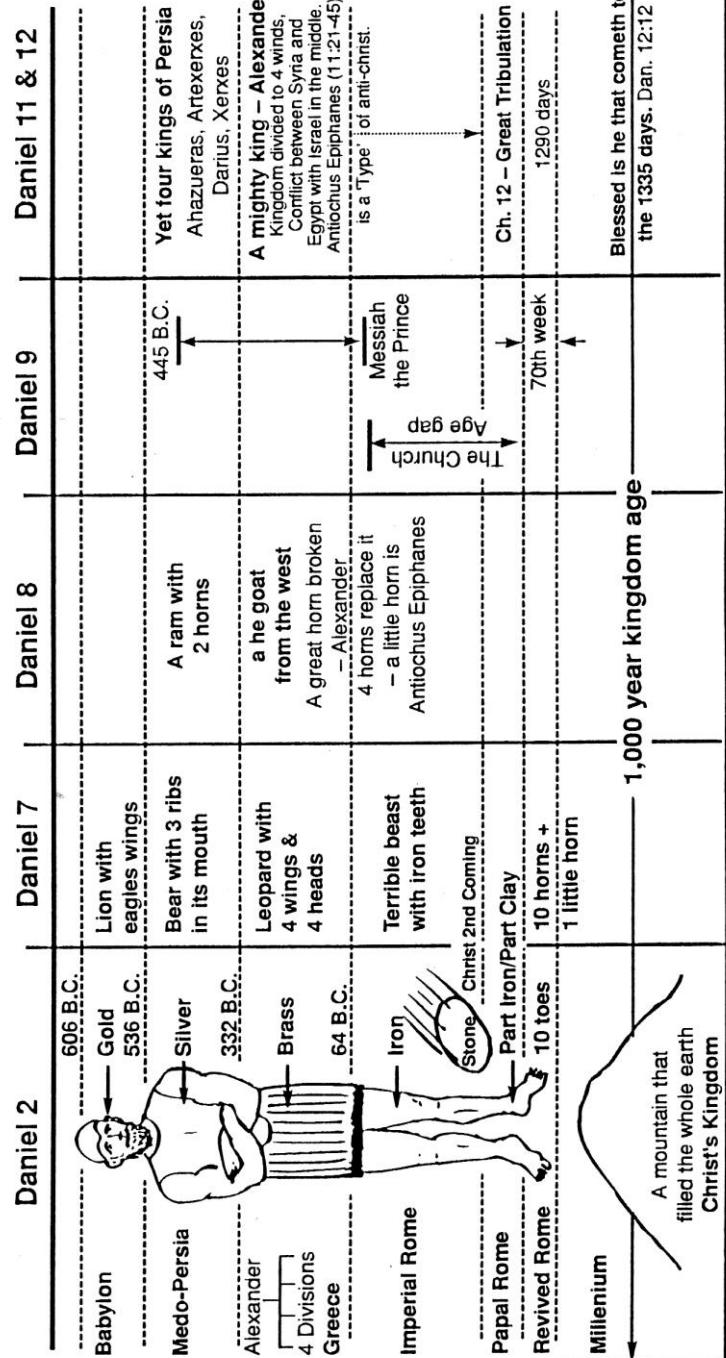
56. Second Coming Charts



“The Times of the Gentiles”

“Jerusalem shall be trodden down of the Gentiles until the times of the Gentiles is fulfilled”

Luke 21:24



The “70 Weeks Prophecy” of Daniel 9:24-27

Start Date:
 10pm 4th March 444 BC
 Decree of Artaxerxes I
 (Ardeshir 464-424 BC)
 to Rebuild Jerusalem.
 Nehemiah 2:1-8

70 weeks (sevens) = 490 years

3pm 29 March 33 AD

69 weeks = 483 years

62 weeks = 434 years

536 B.C.
 Temple finished

7 weeks = 49 years

Birth of Christ
 17 June, 2 BC

The city built in
 troublous times.

536 B.C. Decree
 of Cyrus to
 rebuild the
 Temple

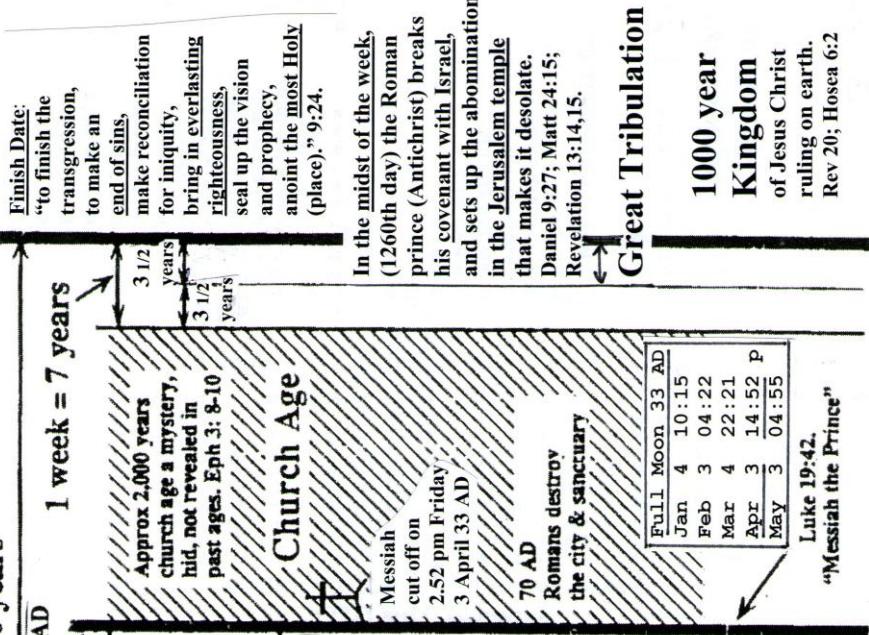
70 years
 Babylonian
 captivity
 Jer 25:11.

Capture of
 Jerusalem by
 Nebuchadnezzar
 in 606 BC

69 x 7 = 483 prophetic years
 $483 \times 360 = 173,880$ days

From 4 March 444 BC to Sun 29 March 33 AD
 EXACT!

$\frac{173,880 \text{ days}}{365.2422 \text{ days/yr}} = 476.06766 \text{ years}$



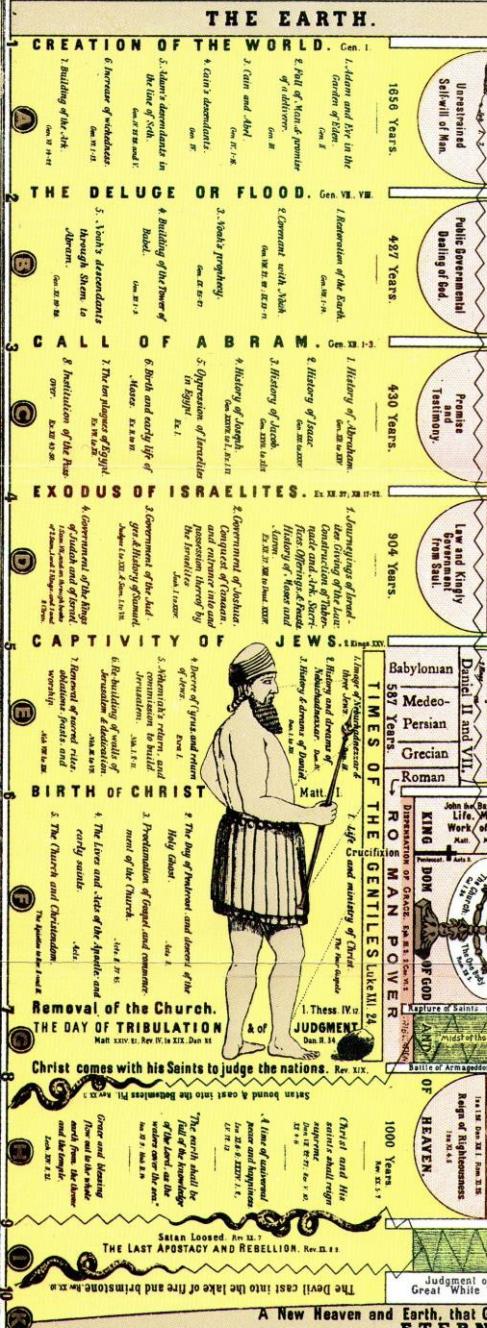
THE EPOCHS AND DISPENSATIONS OF SCRIPTURE.

The HEAVEN or HEAVENLIES.



"THE PRINCE OF THE POWER OF THE AIR." Eph. 2:2, Job 1.

Satan the Devil cast into the lake of fire and brimstone for ever and ever.

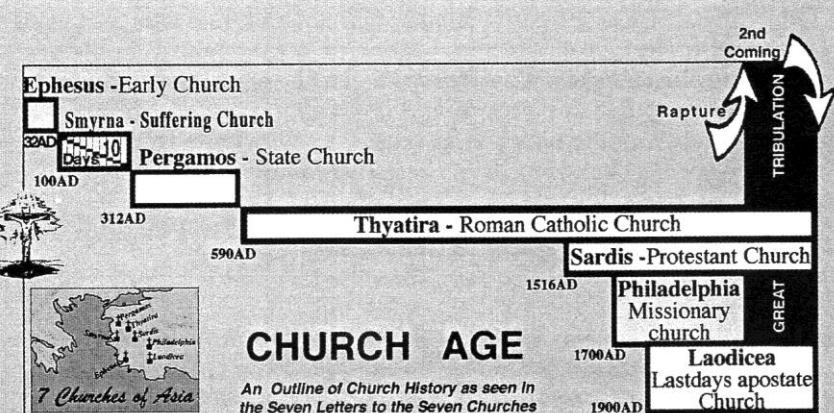
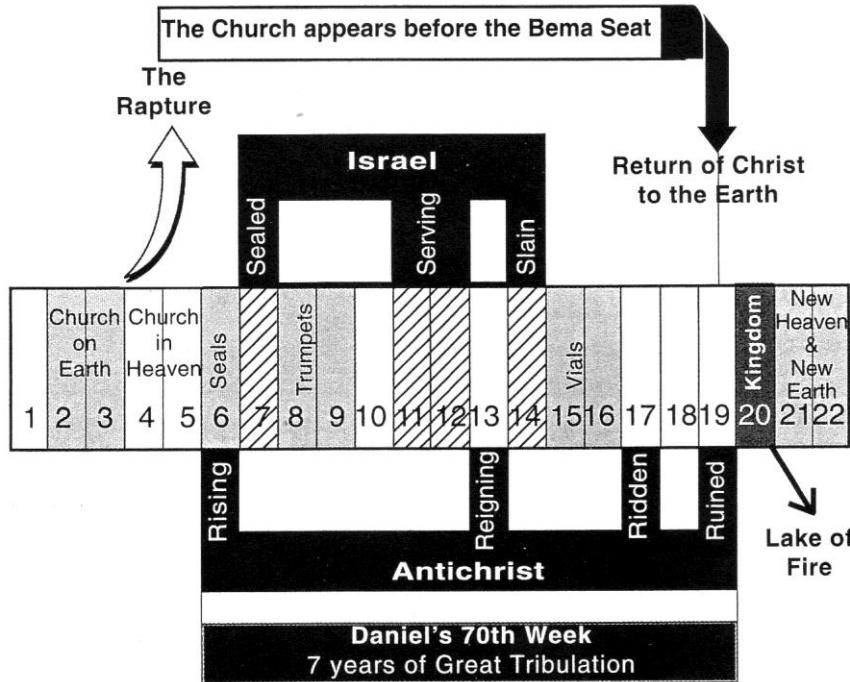


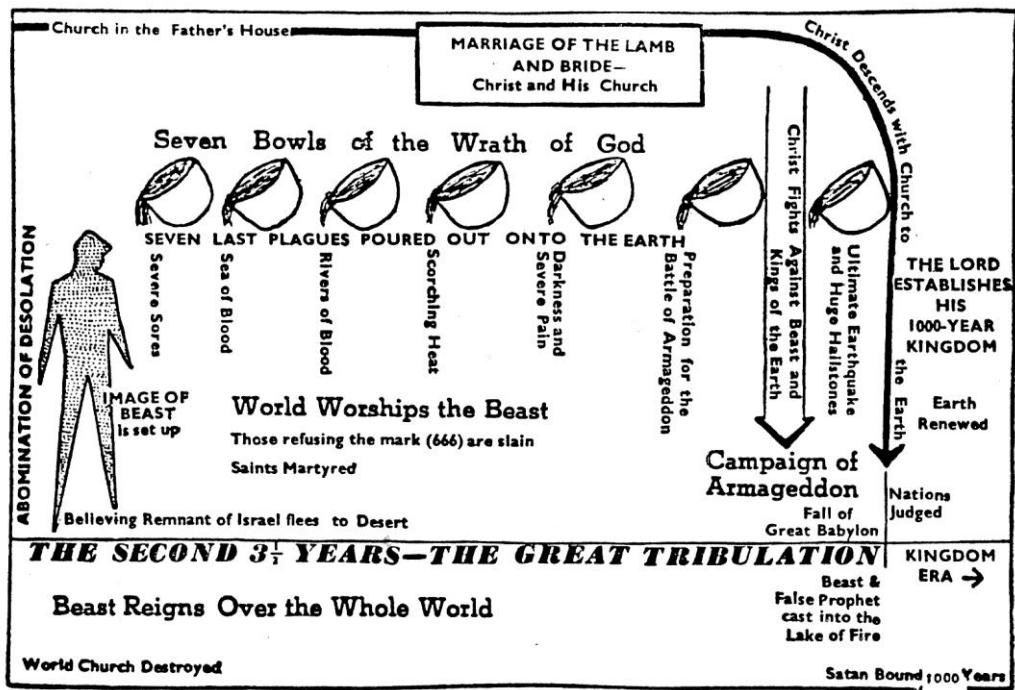
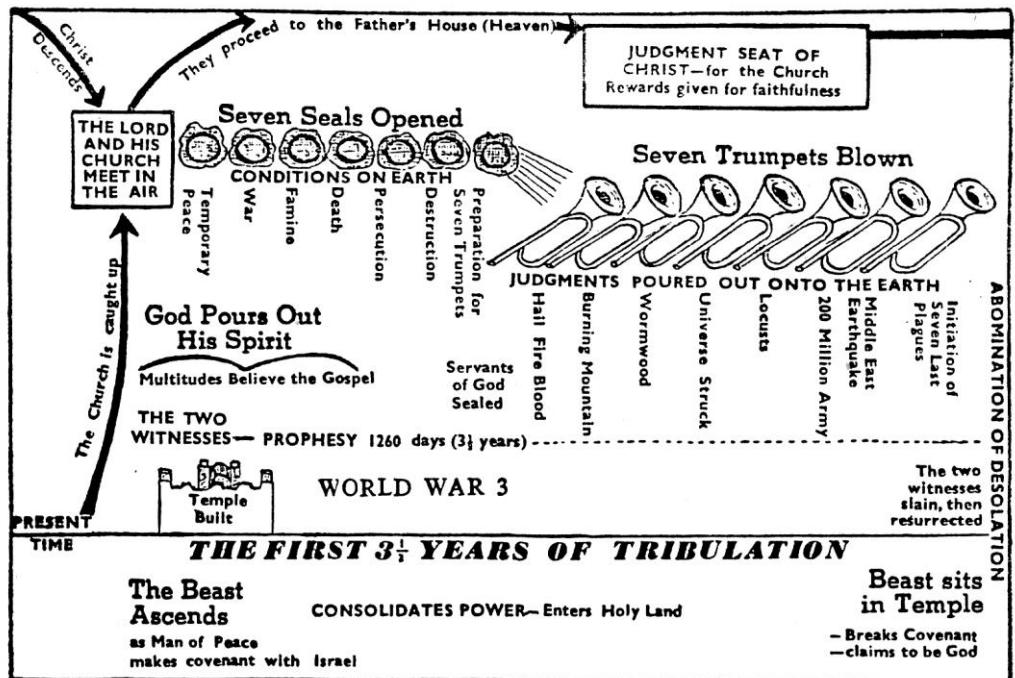
Resurrection and Ascension of Christ. Luke 24:51.

Jesus Christ came down from Heaven, and He is.

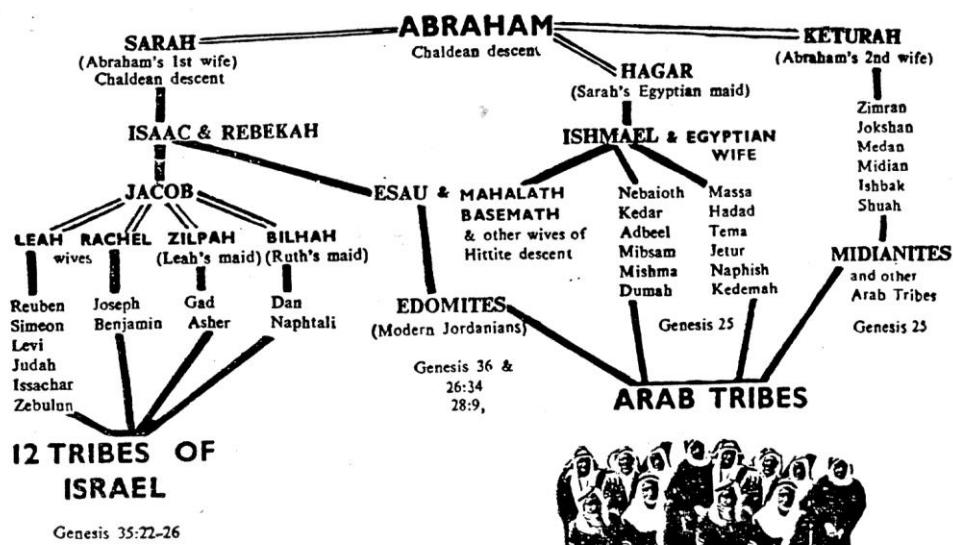
John 3:13.

The Revelation of Jesus Christ





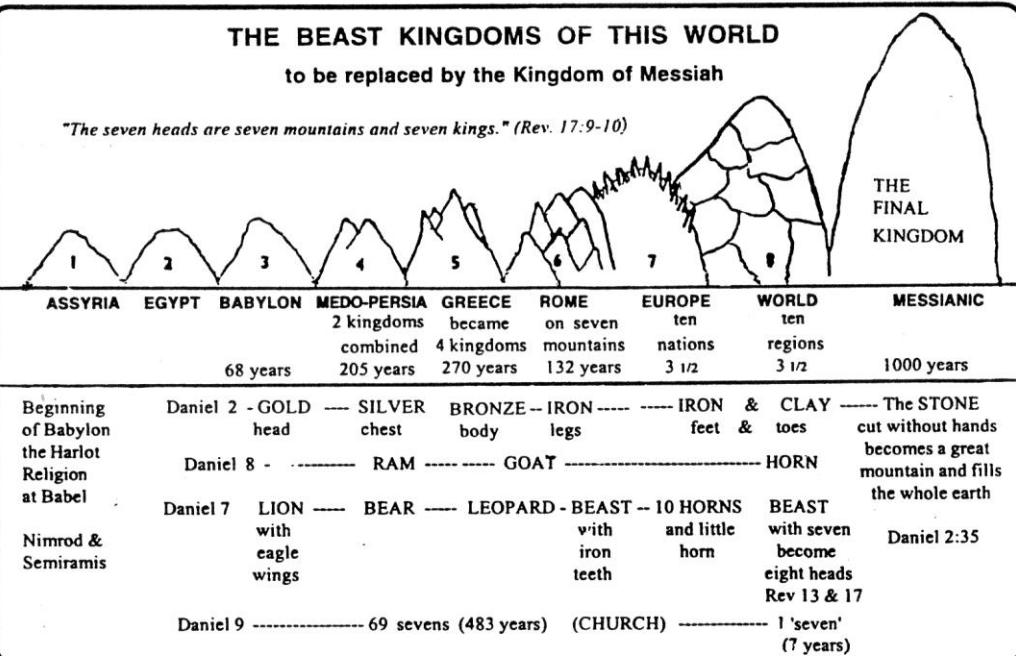
Beginnings of the Jewish and Arab Races



THE BEAST KINGDOMS OF THIS WORLD

to be replaced by the Kingdom of Messiah

"The seven heads are seven mountains and seven kings." (Rev. 17:9-10)



THE SEVEN CHURCHES OF REVELATION

	EPHESUS The Apostolic Church Rev 1:1-7	SMYRNA Persecuted Church Rev 2:8-11	PERGAMOS The Indulged Church Rev 2:12-17	THYATIRA The Pagan Church Rev 2:18-29	SARDIS The Dead Church Rev 3:1-6	PHILADELPHIA The Church Christ Loved Rev 3:7-13	LAODICEA The Lukewarm Church Rev 3:14-22
	30-100 1 st Century Early Church	100-312 Persecuted by pagan Rome	312-606 Union of Church and State (Constantine)	606-Tribulation Development of Church of Rome	606-Tribulation Protestant Reformation	1750-Rapture Great Evangelical Awakening	1900-Tribulation Apostasy of Last Days
The Revelation of Jesus Christ (Character of Christ)	SOVEREIGN LORD (2:1) Holding 7 stars walking in midst	RISEN LORD (2:8) First and Last Dead and Now Alive	WARNING LORD (2:12-17) He that hath sharp sword.	JUDGING LORD (2:18) Eyes like a flame of fire. Feet like brass	OMNISCIENT LORD (3:1) Seven spirits Seven stars	AUTHORITATIVE LORD (3:7) Holy, true, key of David. Opens and shuts	DIVINE LORD (3:14) Amen, faithful and true witness. The beginner of Creation
Commendation I know thy ...	Good works, labour, patience, faithful to truth, hated deeds of Nicolaitans	Works, tribulation, poverty, suffering (10 days)	Works. Held fast my name. Has not denied my faith - martyry.	Love, service, faith, patience.	Works. Missions, a little strength, kept my word, not denied my name.	Works.	
Condemnation	Thou has left thy first love		False teaching of Balaam and Nicolaitans (2:14,15)	Thou allowest the false prophetess Jezebel to teach: idolatry; compromise; immorality.	Dead (spiritually)		
Counsel. I counsel thee	Remember from where thou art fallen, repent, repeat first works.	Fear not, be faithful unto death	Repent (2:16)	Repent. Hold fast (2:22,25)	Watch, strengthen the things that remain, remember, repent, hold fast. (3:2,3)	Hold fast (3:11) Invasion (3:3)	
Caution	Removal (2:5)		War (2:16)	Death (2:23)			Separation (3:16)
Challenge Promise to overcomers. <i>To him that overcometh...</i>	Eat of the tree of life (2:7)	Crown of Life. Not hurt of the 2 nd death.	Will I give hidden manna, white stone, new name (2:17)	Will I give millennial rulership over the nations. The morning star (2:26-28)	White raiment, I will not blot out his name out of the Book of Life, I will confess his name before Father and angels (3:5)	I will make him a pillar in the temple, new name. Kept from the hour of temptation coming on the whole world [Great Tribulation] (3:10,12)	I will grant to sit with me in my throne. (3:21)



Jesus Christ, the Good Samaritan, came to bind up the sinner's wounds. (Luke 10:25-37). Jesus Christ tells believers to help new Christians grow. "Take care of him; and whatsoever thou spendest more, when I come again, I will repay thee." (v.35). This book helps you do this.

THE WAY TO GOD and HEAVEN

1. We have sinned by breaking God's laws, the 10 commandments. We have been selfish, putting ourselves first, taking God's good gifts of creation without thanking Him as Provider. We have broken the chief commandment of not loving God with all our heart, soul, mind and strength. We have not loved others as we love ourselves. This is sin. We are all big sinners compared to God.
2. God's Law demands that we receive the penalty for our sin in hell forever. This is bad news. God loves us and is offering everybody the free gift of eternal life which we get through Jesus Christ.
3. Jesus Christ, who is God the Son, came to earth, lived a sinless life, and at the age of 33 died on the cross to take the full punishment due for everybody's past, present and future sins. Having received the full penalty for our sins, He died, was buried and rose from the dead three days later. He is now available to be our Saviour from sin if we want Him to be.
4. If you believe that Jesus Christ is:
 - a) God the Son.
 - b) Died for your sins in your place; and
 - c) Rose again bodily from the dead, then

Receive or ask Jesus Christ to be your Saviour from sin,
then God will forgive all your sins and give you eternal life immediately.

Question: Will you receive Jesus Christ as your Saviour? If Yes, then tell this to God right now:

"Almighty God. I know that I have sinned against you. I believe that Jesus Christ died on the cross to pay the penalty for my sins to be my Saviour. I now receive you, Lord Jesus Christ, as my Saviour and my God. I now call on you, Lord Jesus, to save me from my sins, take me to heaven when I die, and give me the gift of eternal life right now. I now open the door of my heart and life for You, Lord Jesus, to come in to be my Saviour, my Friend and my God forever. In Jesus Christ's name, I pray. Amen."